# Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response

Impacts of the Role of the BIA Under its Authority to Assist with the Development of the 2018-2019 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan, Salmon Fishing Activities Authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and Fisheries Authorized by the U.S. Fraser Panel in 2018

NMFS Consultation Number: F/WCR-2018-9134

**Action Agency:** Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA)
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS)
National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)

**Affected Species and NMFS' Determinations:**

| ESA-Listed Species | Status | Is Action Likely to Adversely Affect Species? | Is Action Likely To Jeopardize the Species? | Is Action Likely to Adversely Affect Critical Habitat? | Is Action Likely To Destroy or Adversely Modify Critical Habitat? |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Puget Sound Chinook Salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) | Threatened | Yes | No | No | No |
| Puget Sound Steelhead (*O. mykiss*) | Threatened | Yes | No | No | No |
| Puget Sound/Georgia Basin (PS/GB) bocaccio (*Sebastes paucispinis*) | Endangered | Yes | No | No | No |
| PS/GB yelloweye rockfish (*S. ruberrimus*) | Threatened | Yes | No | No | No |
| Southern Resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) | Threatened | Yes | No | Yes | No |
| Eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) | Threatened | No | No | No | No |
| Green Sturgeon (*Acipenser medirostris)* | Threatened | No | No | No | No |
| Humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae)* | Threatened/ Endangered | No | No | No Designated Critical Habitat | No Designated Critical Habitat |

| Fishery Management Plan That Identifies EFH in the Project Area | Does Action Have an Adverse Effect on EFH? | Are EFH Conservation Recommendations Provided? |
|---|---|---|
| Pacific Coast Salmon | No | No |
| Coastal Pelagic Species | No | No |
| Pacific Coast Groundfish | Yes | Yes |

Consultation Conducted By: National Marine Fisheries Service, West Coast Region

**Issued by:** ______________________________
Ryan J. Wulff
Assistant Regional Administrator
for Sustainable Fisheries

**Date:** __5/9/2018______________ (***Date expires: April 30, 2019***)

*This page intentionally left blank*

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

## Table of Figures

## Table of Tables

## LIST OF ACRONYMS

| | |
|---|---|
| BIA | Bureau of Indian Affairs |
| BRT | Biological Review Team |
| C&S | Ceremonial and Subsistence |
| CHART | Critical Habitat Analytical Review Team |
| $CO_2$ | Carbon Dioxide |
| CPS | Coastal Pelagic Species |
| CWT | Coded Wire Tag |
| DIP | Demographically Independent Population |
| DFO | Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada |
| DPS | Distinct Population Segment |
| EFH | Essential Fish Habitat |
| ER | Exploitation Rate |
| ESA | Endangered Species Act |
| ESS | Early summer steelhead |
| EWS | Early winter steelhead |
| ESU | Evolutionarily Significant Unit |
| FRAM | Fishery Regulation and Assessment Model |
| HCSMP | Hood Canal Salmon Management Plan |
| HOR | Hatchery Origin Recruit |
| HR | Harvest Rate |
| HUC | Hydrologic Unit Code |
| ITS | Incidental Take Statement |
| MIT | Muckleshoot Indian Tribe |
| MPG | Major Population Group |
| MSA | Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act |
| MSY | Maximum Sustainable Yield |
| NMFS | National Marine Fisheries Service |
| NOR | Natural Origin Recruit |
| NWFSC | Northwest Fisheries Science Center |
| NWIFC | Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission |
| NWR | [NMFS] Northwest Region |
| OA | Ocean Acidification |
| PBDE | Polybrominated diphenyl ethers |
| PCB | Polychlorinated biphenyls |
| PCE | Primary Constituent Element(s) |

| | |
|---|---|
| PBF | Physical or Biological Feature(s) |
| PFMC | Pacific Fishery Management Council |
| PRA | Population Recovery Approach |
| PSA | Puget Sound Anglers |
| PSIT | Puget Sound Indian Tribes |
| PSTIT | Puget Sound Treaty Indian Tribes |
| PSTRT | Puget Sound Technical Recovery Team |
| PSSMP | Puget Sound Salmon Management Plan |
| PSSTRT | Puget Sound Steelhead Technical Recovery Team |
| PST | Pacific Salmon Treaty |
| PVA | Population Viability Assessment |
| QET | Quasi-extinction Threshold |
| RCA | Rockfish Conservation Area |
| RER | Rebuilding Exploitation Rate |
| RMP(s) | Resource Management Plan(s) |
| RPA | Reasonable and Prudent Alternative |
| ROV | Remotely Operated Vehicle |
| SaSI | Salmonid Stock Inventory |
| SUS | Southern United States |
| USFWS | U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service |
| VRAP | Viable Risk Assessment Procedure |
| VSP | Viable Salmonid Populations |
| WCA | Washington Conservation Area |
| WCR | [NMFS] West Coast Region |
| WDFW | Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife |

# 1. INTRODUCTION

This Introduction section provides information relevant to the other sections of this document and is incorporated by reference into Sections 2 and 3 below.

## 1.1 Background

The National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) prepared the biological opinion (opinion) and incidental take statement portions of this document in accordance with section 7(b) of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973, as amended (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.), and implementing regulations at 50 CFR 402.

We also completed an essential fish habitat (EFH) consultation on the proposed actions, in accordance with section 305(b)(2) of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA) (16 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.) and implementing regulations at 50 CFR 600.

We completed pre-dissemination review of this document using standards for utility, integrity, and objectivity in compliance with applicable guidelines issued under the Data Quality Act (section 515 of the Treasury and General Government Appropriations Act for Fiscal Year 2001, Public Law 106-554). The document will be available through NMFS' Public Consultation Tracking System https://pcts.nmfs.noaa.gov/pcts-web/homepage.pcts. A complete record of this consultation is on file at the Seattle NMFS West Coast Regional office.

This document constitutes the NMFS' biological opinion under section 7 of the ESA and MSA Essential Fish Habitat consultation for federal actions proposed by NMFS, the Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA), and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). The federal actions include:

(1) The BIA's authority to assist with the development and implementation of the co-managers 2018-2019 Plan as reflected in BIA's April 17, 2018 request for consultation to NMFS and BIA's Environmental Assessment.

(2) The proposed USFWS authorization of fisheries, as party to the Hood Canal Salmon Management Plan (*U.S. v. Washington*, Civil No. 9213, Ph. I (Proc. 83-8)), from May 1, 2018-April 30, 2019.

(3) Two actions associated with the management of the 2018 U. S. Fraser Panel sockeye and pink fisheries under the Pacific Salmon Treaty (PST):
    (a) the U.S. government's relinquishment of regulatory control to the bilateral Fraser Panel within specified time periods and,
    (b) the issuance of orders by the Secretary of Commerce that establish fishing times and areas consistent with the in-season implementing regulations of the U.S. Fraser River Panel. This regulatory authority has been delegated to the Regional Administrator of NMFS' West Coast Region.

NMFS is grouping these proposed Federal actions in this consultation pursuant to 50 CFR 402.14(c) because they are similar actions occurring within the same geographical area. Puget Sound non-treaty salmon fisheries and related enforcement, research, and monitoring projects associated with fisheries other than those governed by the U.S. Fraser Panel, are included as interrelated and interdependent actions, because the state of Washington and the Puget Sound treaty tribes have submitted a joint proposal for management of the 2018-19 Puget Sound salmon fisheries, as provided under the Puget Sound Salmon Management Plan, implementation plan for *U.S. v Washington* (see 384 F. Supp. 312 (W.D. Wash. 1974)).

This opinion considers impacts of the proposed actions on the Puget Sound Chinook salmon Evolutionarily Significant Unit (ESU), the Puget Sound Steelhead Distinct Population Segment (DPS), the Southern Resident killer whale DPS, and two listed Puget Sound rockfish DPSs. Other listed species occurring in the action area are either covered under existing, long-term ESA opinions or 4(d) determinations as shown in Table 1, or NMFS has determined that the proposed actions are not likely to adversely affect the species (Section 2.12).

### 1.2 Consultation History

On July 10, 2000, NMFS issued the ESA 4(d) Rule establishing take prohibitions for 14 threatened salmon ESUs and steelhead DPSs, including the Puget Sound Chinook Salmon ESU (65 Fed. Reg. 42422, July 10, 2000). The ESA 4(d) Rule provides limits on the application of the take prohibitions, i.e., take prohibitions would not apply to the plans and activities set out in the rule if those plans and activities met the rule's criteria. One of those limits (Limit 6, 50 CFR 223.203(b)(6)) applies to joint tribal and state resource management plans. In 2005, as part of the final listing determinations for 16 ESUs of West Coast salmon, NMFS amended and streamlined the previously promulgated 4(d) protective regulations for threatened salmon and steelhead (70 Fed. Reg. 37160, June 28, 2005). Under these regulations, the same set of 14 limits was applied to all threatened Pacific salmon and steelhead ESUs or DPSs. As a result of the Federal listing of the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS in 2007 (72 Fed. Reg. 26722, May 11, 2007), NMFS applied the 4(d) protective regulations adopted for the other Pacific salmonids (70 Fed. Reg. 37160, June 28, 2005) to Puget Sound steelhead (73 Fed. Reg. 55451, September 25, 2008).

Since 2001, NMFS has received, evaluated, and approved a series of jointly developed resource management plans (RMP) from the Puget Sound Treaty Indian Tribes (PSIT) and the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW) (collectively the co-managers) under Limit 6 of the 4(d) Rule. These RMPs provided the framework within which the tribal and state jurisdictions jointly managed all recreational, commercial, ceremonial, subsistence and take-home salmon fisheries, and steelhead gillnet fisheries impacting listed Chinook salmon within the greater Puget Sound area. The most recent RMP approved in 2011 expired April 30, 2014 (NMFS 2011b). The Federal actions consulted on in the associated biological opinions included NMFS' 4(d) determinations, BIA program oversight and USFWS Hood Canal Salmon Plan related actions. Since 2014, NMFS has consulted under section 7 of the ESA on single year actions by the BIA, USFWS and NMFS similar to those described above. The consultations considered the effects of Puget Sound salmon fisheries on listed species based on the general management framework described in the 2010-2014 RMP as amended for stock specific management changes. NMFS issued one-year biological opinions for the 2014, 2015, 2016, and 2017 fishery cycles (May 1, 2014 through April 30, 2018) that considered actions based on this framework including similar actions by the BIA and USFWS (NMFS 2014a, NMFS 2015b, NMFS 2016a, NMFS 2017d). In each of these biological opinions NMFS concluded that the proposed fisheries were not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed Puget Sound Chinook salmon, Southern Resident killer whales, Puget Sound steelhead, Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Boccaccio and Puget Sound/Georgia Basin yelloweye rockfish. NMFS is currently reviewing a new RMP submitted in December 2017 for consideration under Limit 6 of the ESA 4(d) Rule and the National Environmental Policy Act but that review is not yet complete. For 2018, NMFS will complete a one-year consultation under section 7 of the ESA on the effects of Puget Sound salmon fisheries on ESA listed species.

On April 16, 2018, the BIA formally requested consultation, regarding its role in providing assistance to the Treaty Tribes and pursuant to obligations in *United States v. Washington*, on the co-manager jointly-submitted 2018-2019 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan, as described in Shaw (2018). The request relies on, as its basis:

- the information and commitments of the 2010-2014 RMP as amended by the Summary of Modifications to Management Objectives of the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan for the 2018-2019 Season;
- the 2018-2019 List of Agreed Fisheries (LOAF), which provides specific details about individual anticipated fisheries by location, gear, time and management entity;
- an addendum related to on-going management of the late-timed fall Chinook hatchery program in the Skokomish River;
- 2018 Green River Management actions;
- a description of actions to be taken in the WDFW managed fishery season for 2018-2019; beneficial for Southern Resident Killer Whales;
- the co-managers' anticipated steelhead impacts;
- Pacific Salmon Chum Technical Committee genetic stock composition research study;
- Pisciverous predator removal fishery and research study (Muckleshoot Tribe), and;
- Pisciverous predator assessment research study (WDFW).

The information was provided as part of the consultation request from the BIA (Shaw 2018). This Plan provides the framework within which the tribal and state jurisdictions jointly manage all recreational, commercial, ceremonial, subsistence and take-home salmon fisheries, and considers the total fishery-related impacts on Puget Sound Chinook Salmon from trout/char-, spiny-ray, and hatchery steelhead-directed fisheries within the greater Puget Sound area.

This opinion is based on information provided in the letter from the BIA requesting consultation to NMFS and associated documents as described above (Shaw 2018), , the Environmental Assessment on the 2018 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan (Shaw 2018), discussions with Puget Sound tribal, WDFW and Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission staffs, consultations with Puget Sound treaty tribes, published and unpublished scientific information on the biology and ecology of the listed species in the action area, and other sources of information.

We have previously considered the effects of Puget Sound salmon fisheries on listed species under NMFS' jurisdiction for ESA compliance through completion of biological opinions or the ESA 4(d) Rule evaluation and determination processes. **Table 1** identifies those opinions and determinations still in effect that address impacts to salmonids species that are affected by the Puget Sound salmon fisheries considered in this opinion. In each determination listed in **Table 1**, NMFS concluded that the proposed actions were not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any of the listed species. NMFS also concluded that the actions were not likely to destroy or adversely modify designated critical habitat for any of the listed species. The **Table 1** determinations take into account the anticipated effects of the Puget Sound salmon fisheries each year through pre-season planning and modeling. Because any impacts to the species listed in **Table 1** from the proposed actions under consultation here were accounted for and within the scope of the associated Table 1 determinations, those species are not discussed further in this opinion.

**Table 1.** NMFS ESA determinations regarding listed species that may be affected by Puget Sound salmon fisheries and duration of the decision (4(d) Limit or biological opinion (BO)). Only the decisions currently in effect and the listed species represented by those decisions are included.

| Date (Coverage) | Duration | Citation | ESU considered |
|---|---|---|---|
| April 1999 (BO) * | until reinitiated | (NMFS 1999) | S. Oregon/N. California Coast coho<br>Central California Coast coho<br>Oregon Coast coho |
| April 2000 (BO) * | until reinitiated | (NMFS 2000a) | California Central Valley spring-run Chinook |
| April 2001 (4(d) Limit) | until withdrawn | (NMFS 2001a) | Hood Canal summer-run Chum |
| April 2001 (BO) * | until reinitiated | (NMFS 2001b) | Upper Willamette River Chinook<br>Columbia River chum<br>Ozette Lake sockeye<br>Upper Columbia River spring-run Chinook<br>Ten listed steelhead ESUs |
| June 13, 2005* | until reinitiated | (NMFS 2005d) | California Coastal Chinook |
| December 2008 (BO) (affirmed March 1996 (BO))* | until reinitiated | (NMFS 2008a) | Snake River spring/summer and fall Chinook and sockeye |
| April 2012 (BO)* | until reinitiated | (NMFS 2012d) | Lower Columbia River Chinook |
| April 9, 2015 (BO) * | until reinitiated | (NMFS 2015a) | Lower Columbia River coho |

* Focus is fisheries under PFMC and US Fraser Panel jurisdiction. For ESUs and DPSs from outside the Puget Sound area, the effects assessment incorporates impacts in Puget Sound, and fisheries are managed for management objectives that include impacts that occur in Puget Sound salmon fisheries.

### 1.3 Proposed Federal Action

"Action" means all activities or programs of any kind authorized, funded, or carried out, in whole or in part, by Federal agencies (50 CFR 402.2). Under the MSA Essential Fish Habitat consultation, Federal Action means any action authorized funded, or undertaken, or proposed to be authorized, funded, or undertaken by a Federal Agency (50 CFR 600.910). The actions that are subject of this opinion require consultation with NMFS because Federal agencies (BIA, USFWS, NMFS) are authorizing, funding, or carrying out actions that may adversely affect listed species (section 7(a)(2) of the ESA). NMFS is grouping these three proposed Federal actions in this consultation pursuant to 50 CFR 402.14 (c) because they are similar actions occurring within the same geographical area.

***BIA**:* The BIA has requested consultation on its authority to assist with the development and implementation of the co-managers 2018-2019 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan (Plan) occurring from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019 as reflected in BIA's April 16,2018 request for consultation to NMFS and BIA's Environmental Assessment (Shaw 2018). The Plan encompasses:

- the information and commitments of the 2010-2014 Puget Sound Salmon Resource Management Plan (RMP) as amended by the Summary of Modifications to Management Objectives of the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan for the 2018-2019 Season;
- the 2018-2019 List of Agreed Fisheries (LOAF), which provides specific details about individual anticipated fisheries by location, gear, time and management entity;
- an addendum related to on-going management of the late-timed fall Chinook hatchery program in the Skokomish River;
- 2018 Green River Management actions,
- a description of actions to be taken in the WDFW managed fishery season for 2018-2019 beneficial for Southern Resident Killer Whales;
- the co-managers' anticipated steelhead impacts,
- Pacific Salmon Chum Technical Committee genetic stock composition research study;
- Pisciverous predator removal fishery and research study (Muckleshoot Tribe), and;
- Pisciverous predator assessment research study (WDFW).

The BIA is the lead agency on this consultation.

The Puget Sound Salmon and Steelhead Management Plan (PSSMP), which establishes guidelines for management of all marine and freshwater salmon fisheries from the Strait of Juan de Fuca eastward, was adopted by court order in a sub-proceeding under *U.S. v. Washington*, Civ. No. C70-9213 (W.D. Wash.) (see 384 F. Supp. 312 (W.D. Wash. 1974)). This opinion focuses on Puget Sound salmon and steelhead fisheries managed in accordance with the PSSMP that may impact listed species under NMFS' jurisdiction not addressed in the opinions listed in the introductory table, above, from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019. More detailed information about the fisheries proposed to occur during this period and associated conservation objectives are included in the documents provided in the consultation request as described in Section 1.2 above.

***USFWS**:*

The USFWS proposes to authorize fisheries that are consistent with the implementation of the Hood Canal Salmon Management Plan (HCSMP 1985) from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019. The USFWS, along with the State of Washington and the treaty tribes within the Hood

Canal, is party to the HCSMP, which is a regional plan and stipulated order related to the PSSMP. The state, tribal, and federal parties to the Hood Canal Plan establish management objectives for stocks originating in Hood Canal including listed Chinook and summer-run chum stocks. Any change in management objectives under the HCSMP requires authorization by the USFWS, as a party to the plan. Management under the HCSMP affects those fisheries where Hood Canal salmon stocks are caught. This opinion focuses on Puget Sound salmon and steelhead fisheries that may impact listed species under NMFS' jurisdiction from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019 (see Shaw 2018 for fisheries proposed to occur during this period).

***NMFS****:*
The Fraser Panel controls sockeye and pink fisheries conducted in the Strait of Juan de Fuca and San Juan Island regions in the U.S., the southern Georgia Strait in the U.S. and Canada, and the Fraser River in Canada, and certain high seas and territorial waters westward from the western coasts of Canada and the U.S. between 48 and 49 degrees N. latitude. The Fraser Panel assumes control of fisheries from July 1 through September, although the exact date depends on the fishing schedule in each year. Fisheries in recent years have occurred in late July into August in non-pink salmon years and into September in pink years. These fisheries are commercial and subsistence net fisheries using gillnet, reef net, and purse seine gear to target on Fraser River-origin sockeye and, in odd-numbered years (e.g., 2013, 2015, 2017), pink salmon. Other salmon species are caught incidentally in these fisheries. The U.S. Fraser Panel fisheries are managed in-season to meet the objectives described in Chapter 4 of the PST (the Fraser Annex). The season structure and catches are modified in-season in response to changes in projected salmon abundance, fishing effort or environmental conditions in order to assure achievement of the management objectives, and in consideration of safety concerns. U.S. Fraser Panel fisheries are also managed together with the suite of other Puget Sound and Pacific Fisheries Management Council (PFMC) fisheries to meet conservation and harvest management objectives for Chinook, coho, and chum salmon.

Two Federal actions will be taken during the 2018 fishing season (May 1, 2018 – April 30, 2019) to allow the Fraser Panel to manage Fraser River sockeye and pink fisheries in Fraser Panel Waters. One action grants regulatory control of the Fraser Panel Area Waters by the U.S. and Canadian governments to the Panel for in-season management. The other action is the issuance of in-season orders by NMFS that give effect to Fraser Panel actions in the U.S. portion of the Fraser Panel Area. The Pacific Salmon Treaty Act of 1985 (16 U.S.C. 3631 et seq.) grants to the Secretary of Commerce authority to issue regulations implementing the Pacific Salmon Treaty. Implementing regulations at 50 CFR 300.97 authorize the Secretary to issue orders that establish fishing times and areas consistent with the annual Pacific Salmon Commission regime and in-season orders of the Fraser River Panel. This authority has been delegated to the Regional Administrator of NMFS' West Coast Region.

Interrelated actions are those that are part of a larger action and depend on the larger action for their justification. Interdependent actions are those that have no independent utility apart from the action under consideration (50 CFR 402.02). Puget Sound non-treaty salmon fisheries and related enforcement, research and monitoring projects associated with fisheries other than those governed by the U.S. Fraser Panel, are included as interrelated and interdependent actions, because the state of Washington and the Puget Sound treaty tribes have submitted a joint proposal for management of the 2018-2019 Puget Sound salmon fisheries, as provided under the Puget Sound Salmon Management Plan, implementation plan for *U.S. v Washington* (see 384 F. Supp. 312 (W.D. Wash. 1974)). (50 CFR 402.02).

# 2 ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT: BIOLOGICAL OPINION AND INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT

The ESA establishes a national program for conserving threatened and endangered species of fish, wildlife, plants, and the habitat upon which they depend. As required by section 7(a)(2) of the ESA, Federal agencies must ensure that their actions are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of endangered or threatened species or adversely modify or destroy their designated critical habitat. Per the requirements of the ESA, Federal action agencies consult with NMFS and section 7(b)(3) requires that, at the conclusion of consultation, NMFS provides an opinion stating how the agencies' actions would affect listed species and their critical habitat. If incidental take is expected, section 7(b)(4) requires NMFS to provide an incidental take statement (ITS) that specifies the impact of any incidental taking and includes non-discretionary reasonable and prudent measures to minimize such impacts.

This opinion considers impacts of the proposed actions under the ESA on the Puget Sound Chinook salmon ESU, the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS, the Southern Resident killer whale DPS, and the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin bocaccio and yelloweye rockfish DPSs. The NMFS concluded that the proposed actions are not likely to adversely affect southern green sturgeon, southern eulachon, humpback whale or their critical habitat. Those findings are documented in the "Not Likely to Adversely Affect" Determinations section (2.12).

## 2.1 Analytical Approach

This biological opinion includes both a jeopardy analysis and an adverse modification analysis. The jeopardy analysis relies upon the regulatory definition of "to jeopardize the continued existence of a listed species," which is "to engage in an action that would be expected, directly or indirectly, to reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of a listed species in the wild by reducing the reproduction, numbers, or distribution of that species" (50 CFR 402.02). Therefore, the jeopardy analysis considers both survival and recovery of the species.

This biological opinion relies on the definition of "destruction or adverse modification," which means "a direct or indirect alteration that appreciably diminishes the value of critical habitat for the conservation of a listed species. Such alterations may include, but are not limited to, those that alter the physical or biological features essential to the conservation of a species or that preclude or significantly delay development of such features" (81 FR 7214).

The designation(s) of critical habitat for (species) use(s) the term primary constituent element (PCE) or essential features. The new critical habitat regulations (81 FR 7414) replace this term with physical or biological features (PBFs). The shift in terminology does not change the approach used in conducting a ''destruction or adverse modification'' analysis, which is the same regardless of whether the original designation identified PCEs, PBFs, or essential features. In this biological opinion, we use the term PBF to mean PCE or essential feature, as appropriate for the specific critical habitat.

We use the following approach to determine whether a proposed action is likely to jeopardize listed species or destroy or adversely modify critical habitat:

- *Identify the rangewide status of the species and critical habitat likely to be adversely affected by the proposed action.* Section 2.2 describes the current status of each listed species and its critical habitat relative to the conditions needed for recovery. For listed salmon and steelhead, NMFS has developed specific guidance for analyzing the status of the listed species' component populations in a "viable salmonid populations" paper (VSP; McElhany et al. 2000). Similar criteria are used to analyze the status of ESA-listed rockfish because these parameters are applicable for a wide variety of species. The VSP approach considers the abundance, productivity, spatial structure, and diversity of each population as part of the overall review of a species' status. For listed salmon and steelhead, the VSP criteria therefore encompass the species' "reproduction, numbers, or distribution" (50 CFR 402.02). In describing the rangewide status of listed species, we rely on viability assessments and criteria in technical recovery team documents and recovery plans, and other information where available, that describe how VSP criteria are applied to specific populations, major population groups, and species. We determine the rangewide status of critical habitat by examining the condition of its physical or biological features (also called "primary constituent elements" or PBFs in some designations) which were identified when the critical habitat was designated.

- *Describe the environmental baseline in the action area.* The environmental baseline (Section 2.3 and 2.4) includes the past and present impacts of Federal, state, or private actions and other human activities in the action area. It includes the anticipated impacts of proposed Federal projects that have already undergone formal or early section 7 consultation and the impacts of state or private actions that are contemporaneous with the consultation in process.

- *Analyze the effects of the proposed action on both species and their habitat using an "exposure-response-risk" approach.* In this step (Section 2.5), NMFS considers how the proposed action would affect the species' reproduction, numbers, and distribution or, in the case of salmon and steelhead, their VSP and other relevant characteristics. NMFS also evaluates the proposed action's effects on critical habitat features.

- *Describe any cumulative effects in the action area.* Cumulative effects (Section 2.6), as defined in our implementing regulations (50 CFR 402.02), are the effects of future state or private activities, not involving Federal activities, that are reasonably certain to occur within the action area. Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered because they require separate section 7 consultation.

- *Integrate and synthesize the above factors* by: (1) Reviewing the status of the species and critical habitat; and (2) adding the effects of the action, the environmental baseline, and cumulative effects to assess the risk that the proposed action poses to species and critical habitat. (Section 2.7).

- *Reach a conclusion about whether species are jeopardized or critical habitat is adversely modified.* These conclusions (Section 2.8) flow from the logic and rationale presented in the Integration and Synthesis section (2.7).

- *If necessary, define a reasonable and prudent alternative to the proposed action.* If, in completing the last step in the analysis, we determine that the action under consultation is likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed species or destroy or adversely modify designated critical habitat, we must identify a reasonable and prudent alternative (RPA) to the action in Section 2.9. The RPA must not be likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed species nor adversely modify their designated critical habitat and it must meet other regulatory requirements.

## 2.2 Range-wide Status of the Species and Critical Habitat

This opinion examines the status of each species that would be affected by the proposed actions. The status is determined by the level of extinction risk that the listed species face, based on parameters considered in documents such as recovery plans, status reviews, listing decisions, and other relevant information. This informs the description of the species' likelihood of both survival and recovery. The species status section also helps to inform the description of the species' current "reproduction, numbers, or distribution" as described in 50 CFR 402.02. The opinion also examines the condition of critical habitat throughout the designated area, evaluates the conservation value of the various watersheds and coastal and marine environments that make up the designated area, and discusses the current function of the essential physical and biological features that help to form that conservation value.

### 2.2.1 Status of Listed Species

For Pacific salmon and steelhead, NMFS commonly uses four parameters to assess the viability of the populations that, together, constitute the species: spatial structure, diversity, abundance, and productivity (McElhany et al. 2000). These "viable salmonid population" (VSP) criteria therefore encompass the species' "reproduction, numbers, or distribution" as described in 50 CFR 402.02. When these parameters are collectively at appropriate levels, they maintain a population's capacity to adapt to various environmental conditions and allow it to sustain itself in the natural environment. These attributes are influenced by survival, behavior, and experiences throughout a species' entire life cycle, and these characteristics, in turn, are influenced by habitat and other environmental conditions.

"Spatial structure" refers both to the spatial distributions of individuals in the population and the processes that generate that distribution. A population's spatial structure depends fundamentally on habitat quality and spatial configuration and the dynamics and dispersal characteristics of individuals in the population.

"Diversity" refers to the distribution of traits within and among populations. These range in scale from DNA sequence variation at single genes to complex life history traits (McElhany et al. 2000).

"Abundance" generally refers to the number of naturally-produced adults (i.e., the progeny of naturally-spawning parents) in the natural environment (e.g., on spawning grounds).

“Productivity,” as applied to viability factors, refers to the entire life cycle or portions of a life cycle; i.e., the number of progeny or naturally-spawning adults produced per parent. When progeny replace or exceed the number of parents, a population is stable or increasing. When progeny fail to replace the number of parents, the population is declining. McElhany et al. (2000) use the terms “population growth rate” and “productivity” interchangeably when referring to production over the entire life cycle. They also refer to “trend in abundance,” which is the manifestation of long-term population growth rate.

For species with multiple populations, once the biological status of a species’ populations has been determined, NMFS assesses the status of the entire species using criteria for groups of populations, as described in recovery plans, guidance documents from technical recovery teams and regional guidance. Considerations for species viability include having multiple populations that are viable, ensuring that populations with unique life histories and phenotypes are viable, and that some viable populations are both widespread to avoid concurrent extinctions from mass catastrophes and spatially close to allow functioning as metapopulations (McElhany et al. 2000).

NMFS has convened recovery planning efforts across the Pacific Northwest to identify what actions are needed to recover listed salmon and steelhead. A recovery plan for the Puget Sound Chinook ESU was completed in 2007 and a recovery plan for the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS is under development.

One factor affecting the status of salmonids and Puget Sound rockfish, and aquatic habitat at large, is climate change. The following section describes climate change and other ecosystem effects on Puget Sound Chinook salmon and steelhead. It precedes the status discussion of these species because it applies to both. A similar discussion for listed Puget Sound rockfish is included in the status discussion on those species. Climate change effects on Southern Resident killer whales are incorporated in the status discussion on that species and primarily addresses how it is anticipated to affect its primary prey species, salmon.

***Climate change and other ecosystem effects***

One factor affecting the rangewide status of listed Puget Sound salmon and steelhead, and aquatic habitat at large, is climate change. Changes in climate and ocean conditions happen on several different time scales and have had a profound influence on distributions and abundances of marine and anadromous fishes. Salmon and steelhead throughout Washington are also likely affected by climate change. Several studies have revealed that climate change has the potential to affect ecosystems in nearly all tributaries throughout the state (Battin et al. 2007; ISAB 2007). While the intensity of effects will vary by region (ISAB 2007), climate change is generally expected to alter aquatic habitat (water yield, peak flows, and stream temperature). As climate change alters the structure and distribution of rainfall, snowpack, and glaciations, each factor will in turn alter riverine hydrographs. Given the increasing certainty that climate change is occurring and is accelerating (Battin et al. 2007), NMFS anticipates salmonid habitats will be affected and this in turn is likely to affect the distribution and productivity of salmon populations in the region (Beechie et al. 2006). Climate and hydrology models project significant reductions in both total snow pack and low-elevation snow pack in the Pacific Northwest over the next 50 years (Mote and Salathé 2009)—changes that will shrink the extent of the snowmelt-dominated habitat available to salmon. Such changes may restrict our ability to conserve diverse salmon and steelhead life histories and make recovery targets for these salmon populations more difficult to achieve.

In Washington State, most models project warmer air temperatures, increases in winter precipitation, and decreases in summer precipitation. Average temperatures in Washington State are likely to increase 0.1-0.6ºC per decade (Mote and Salathé 2009). Warmer air temperatures will lead to more precipitation falling as rain rather than snow. As the snow pack diminishes, seasonal hydrology will shift to more frequent and severe early large storms, changing stream flow timing and increasing peak river flows, which may limit salmon survival (Mantua et al. 2009). The largest driver of climate-induced decline in salmon and steelhead populations is projected to be the impact of increased winter peak flows, which scour the streambed and destroy salmonid eggs (Battin et al. 2007, Mantua et al. 2009).

Higher water temperatures and lower spawning flows, together with increased magnitude of winter peak flows are all likely to increase salmonid mortality. Higher ambient air temperatures will likely cause water temperatures to rise (ISAB 2007). Salmonids require cold water for spawning and incubation. As climate change progresses and stream temperatures warm, thermal refugia will be essential to persistence of many salmonid populations. Thermal refugia are important for providing salmonids with patches of suitable habitat while allowing them to undertake migrations through or to make foraging forays into areas with greater than optimal temperatures. To avoid waters above summer maximum temperatures, juvenile rearing may be increasingly found only in the confluence of colder tributaries or other areas of cold water refugia (Mantua et al. 2009). Summer steelhead stocks within the Puget Sound DPS may be more vulnerable to climate change since there are few summer run populations that reside in the DPS as compared to winter run populations, they exhibit relatively small abundances, and they occupy limited upper river tributary habitat.

In marine habitat, scientists are not certain of all the factors impacting salmon and steelhead survival but several ocean-climate events are linked with fluctuations in steelhead health and abundance such as El Niño/La Niña, the Aleutian Low, and coastal upwelling (Pearcy and Mantua 1999). Steelhead, along with Chinook and coho salmon, have experienced tenfold declines in survival during the marine phase of their lifecycle, and their total abundance remains well below what it was 30 years ago (LLTK 2015). The marine survival of coastal steelhead, as well as Columbia River Chinook and coho, do not exhibit the same declining trend as the Salish Sea populations. Specifically, marine survival rates for steelhead in Washington State have declined in the last 25 years with the Puget Sound steelhead populations declining to a greater extent than other regions (i.e., Washington Coast and Lower Columbia River) and are at near historic lows (Moore et al. 2014). Climate changes have included increasing water temperatures, increasing acidity, more harmful algae, the loss of forage fish and some marine commercial fishes, changes in marine plants, increased populations of seals and porpoises, etc. (LLTK 2015). Climate change plays a part in steelhead mortality but more studies are being conducted to determine the specific causes of this marine survival decline in Puget Sound.

NWFSC (2015) reported that climate conditions affecting Puget Sound salmonids were not optimistic; recent and unfavorable environmental trends are expected to continue. A positive pattern in the Pacific Decadal Oscillation[1] is anticipated to continue. This and other similar environmental indicators suggest the continuation of warming ocean temperatures; fragmented or degraded freshwater spawning and rearing habitat; reduced snowpack; altered hydrographs producing reduced summer river flows and warmer water; and low marine survival for salmonids in the Salish Sea (NWFSC 2015). Specifically, the exceptionally warm marine water conditions in 2014 and 2015 combined with warm freshwater stream temperatures lowered steelhead marine and freshwater survival (NWFSC 2015) in the most recent years. Any rebound in VSP parameters for Puget Sound steelhead are likely to be constrained under these conditions (NWFSC 2015).

Variation in fish populations in Puget Sound may reflect broad-scale shifts in natural limiting conditions, such as predator abundances and food resources in ocean rearing areas. NMFS has noted that predation by marine mammals has increased as marine mammal numbers, especially harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina*) and California sea lions (*Zalophus californianus*) increase on the Pacific Coast (Myers et al. 1998; Jeffries et al. 2003; Pitcher et al. 2007; DFO 2010; Jeffries 2011, Chasco et al. 2017). In addition to predation by marine mammals, Fresh (1997) reported that 33 fish species and 13 bird species are predators of juvenile and adult salmon, particularly during freshwater rearing and migration stages.

#### 2.2.1.1 Status of Puget Sound Chinook

This ESU was listed as a threatened species in 1999; its threatened status was reaffirmed June 28, 2005 (70 FR 37160). The NMFS issued results of a five-year review on May 26, 2016 (81 FR 33469), and concluded that this species should remain listed as threatened. As part of the review, NOAA's Northwest Fisheries Science Center evaluated the viability of the listed species undergoing 5-year reviews and issued a status review update providing updated information and analysis of the biological status of the listed species (NWFSC 2015). The status review incorporated the findings of the Science Center's report, summarized new information concerning the delineation of the ESU and inclusion of closely related salmonid hatchery programs, and included an evaluation of the listing factors (NMFS 2017a). Where possible, particularly as new material becomes available, the status review information is supplemented with more recent information and other population specific data that may not have been considered during the status review so that NMFS is assured of using the best available information.

The NMFS adopted the recovery plan for Puget Sound Chinook on January 19, 2007 (72 FR 2493). The recovery plan consists of two documents: the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan prepared by the Shared Strategy for Puget Sound (Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan (SSPS 2007) http://www.nwr.noaa.gov/Salmon-Recovery-Planning/Recovery-Domains/Puget-

[1] A positive pattern in the PDO has been in place since 2014.

Sound/PS-Recovery-Plan.cfm and Final Supplement to the Shared Strategy's Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan (NMFS 2006c) http://www.nwr.noaa.gov/Salmon-Recovery-Planning/Recovery-Domains/Puget-Sound/upload/PS-Supplement.pdf).. The recovery plan adopts ESU and population level viability criteria recommended by the Puget Sound Technical Recovery Team (PSTRT) (Ruckelshaus et al. 2002, Ruckleshaus et al. 2006). The PSTRT's Biological Recovery Criteria will be met when the following conditions are achieved:

1. All watersheds improve from current conditions, resulting in improved status for the species;

2. At least two to four Chinook salmon populations in each of the five biogeographical regions of Puget Sound attain a low risk status over the long-term[2];

3. At least one or more populations from major diversity groups historically present in each of the five Puget Sound regions attain a low risk status;

4. Tributaries to Puget Sound not identified as primary freshwater habitat for any of the 22 identified populations are functioning in a manner that is sufficient to support an ESU-wide recovery scenario;

5. Production of Chinook salmon from tributaries to Puget Sound not identified as primary freshwater habitat for any of the 22 identified populations occurs in a manner consistent with ESU recovery.

***Spatial Structure and Diversity***

The PSTRT determined that 22 historical populations currently contain Chinook salmon and grouped them into five major geographic regions, based on consideration of historical distribution, geographic isolation, dispersal rates, genetic data, life history information, population dynamics, and environmental and ecological diversity (**Table 2**). Based on genetic and historical evidence reported in the literature, the PSTRT also determined that there were 16 additional spawning aggregations or populations in the Puget Sound Chinook Salmon ESU that are now putatively extinct[3] (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006). This ESU includes all naturally spawned Chinook salmon originating from rivers flowing into Puget Sound from the Elwha River (inclusive) eastward, including rivers in Hood Canal, South Sound, North Sound and the Strait of Georgia. Also, Chinook salmon from 26 artificial propagation programs: the Kendall Creek Hatchery Program; Marblemount Hatchery Program (spring subyearlings and summer-run); Harvey Creek Hatchery Program (summer-run and fall-run); Whitehorse Springs Pond Program; Wallace River Hatchery Program (yearlings and subyearlings); Tulalip Bay Program; Issaquah Hatchery Program; Soos Creek Hatchery Program; Icy Creek Hatchery Program; Keta Creek Hatchery Program; White River Hatchery Program; White Acclimation Pond Program; Hupp

---

[2] The number of populations required depends on the number of diversity groups in the region. For example, three of the regions only have two populations generally of one diversity type; the Central Sound Region has two major diversity groups; the Whidbey/Main Region has four major diversity groups.

[3] It was not possible in most cases to determine whether these Chinook salmon spawning groups historically represented independent populations or were distinct spawning aggregations within larger populations.

Springs Hatchery Program; Voights Creek Hatchery Program; Diru Creek Program; Clear Creek Program; Kalama Creek Program; George Adams Hatchery Program; Rick's Pond Hatchery Program; Hamma Hamma Hatchery Program; Dungeness/Hurd Creek Hatchery Program; Elwha Channel Hatchery Program; and the Skookum Creek Hatchery Spring-run Program (79 FR 20802).

**Table 2.** Extant PS Chinook salmon populations in each geographic region (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006).

| Geographic Region | Population (Watershed) |
|---|---|
| Strait of Georgia | **North Fork Nooksack River** |
| | **South Fork Nooksack River** |
| Strait of Juan de Fuca | **Elwha River** |
| | **Dungeness River** |
| Hood Canal | **Skokomish River** |
| | **Mid Hood Canal River** |
| Whidbey Basin | Skykomish River (late) |
| | Snoqualmie River (late) |
| | North Fork Stillaguamish River (early) |
| | South Fork Stillaguamish River (moderately early) |
| | Upper Skagit River (moderately early) |
| | Lower Skagit River (late) |
| | Upper Sauk River (early) |
| | Lower Sauk River (moderately early) |
| | **Suiattle River (very early)** |
| | Cascade River (moderately early) |
| Central/South Puget Sound Basin | Cedar River |
| | North Lake Washington/ Sammamish River |
| | Green/Duwamish River |
| | Puyallup River |
| | **White River** |
| | **Nisqually River** |

NOTE: NMFS has determined that the bolded populations in particular are essential to recovery of the Puget Sound ESU. In addition, at least one other population within the Whidbey Basin and Central/South Puget Sound Basin regions would need to be viable for recovery of the ESU. The PSTRT noted that the Nisqually watershed is in comparatively good condition, and thus the certainty that the population could be recovered is among the highest in the Central/South Region. NMFS concluded in its supplement to the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan that protecting the existing habitat and working toward a viable population in the Nisqually watershed would help to buffer the entire region against further risk (NMFS 2006c).

Three of the five regions (Strait of Juan de Fuca, Georgia Basin, and Hood Canal) contain only two populations, both of which must be recovered to viability to recover the ESU (NMFS 2006c). Under the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan, the Suiattle and one each of the early, moderately early, and late run-timing populations in the Whidbey Basin Region, as well as the White and Nisqually (or other late-timed) populations in the Central/South Sound Region must also achieve viability (NMFS 2006c).

The TRT did not define the relative roles of the remaining populations in the Whidbey and Central/South Sound Basins to ESU viability. Therefore, NMFS developed additional guidance which considers distinctions in genetic legacy and watershed condition among other factors in assessing the risks to survival and recovery of the listed species by the proposed actions across all populations within the Puget Sound Chinook ESU. In doing so it is important to take into account whether the genetic legacy of the population is intact or if it is no longer distinct. Populations are defined by their relative isolation from each other, and by the unique genetic characteristics that evolve as a result of that isolation to adapt to their specific habitats. If these are populations that still retain their historic genetic legacy, then the appropriate course to insure their survival and recovery is to preserve that genetic legacy and rebuild those populations. Preserving that legacy requires both a sense of urgency and the actions necessary and appropriate to preserve the legacy that remains. However, if the genetic legacy is gone, then the appropriate course is to recover the populations using the individuals that best approximate the genetic legacy of the original population, reduce the effects of the factors that have limited their production, and provide the opportunity for them to readapt to the existing conditions.

In keeping with this approach, NMFS further classified Puget Sound Chinook populations into three tiers based on a systematic framework that considers the population's life history and production and watershed characteristics (Puget Sound Domain Team 2010) (**Figure 1**). This framework, termed the *Population Recovery Approach*, carries forward the biological viability and delisting criteria described in the Supplement to the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan (Ruckelshaus et al. 2002, NMFS 2006c). The assigned tier indicates the relative role of each of the 22 populations comprising the ESU to the viability of the ESU and its recovery. Tier 1 populations are most important for preservation, restoration, and ESU recovery. Tier 2 populations play a less important role in recovery of the ESU. Tier 3 populations play the least important role. When we analyze proposed actions, we evaluate impacts at the individual population scale for their effects on the viability of the ESU. We expect that impacts to Tier 1 populations would be more likely to affect the viability of the ESU as a whole than similar impacts to Tier 2 or 3 populations, because of the relatively greater importance of Tier 1 populations to overall ESU viability. NMFS has incorporated this and similar approaches in previous ESA section 4(d) determinations and opinions on Puget Sound salmon fisheries and regional recovery planning (NMFS 2005b, 2005c, 2008a, 2008d, 2010a, 2011b, 2013b, 2014a, 2015c, 2016b, 2017).

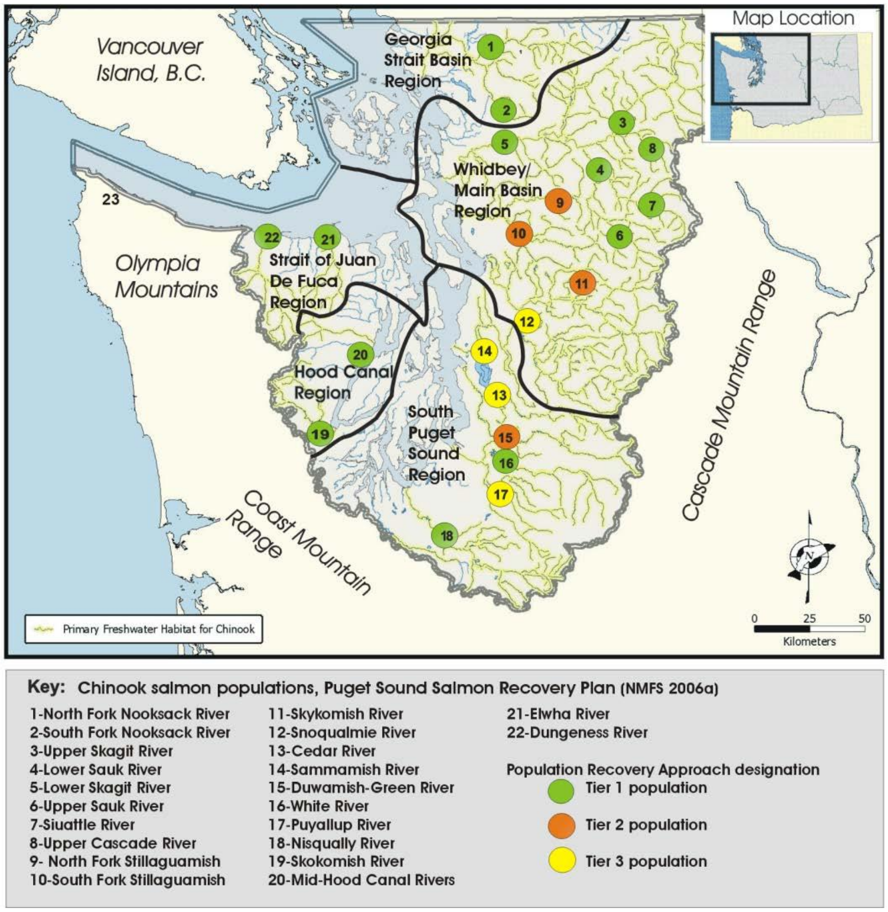



**Figure 1.** Puget Sound Chinook populations.

Indices of spatial distribution and diversity have not been developed at the population level, though diversity at the ESU level is declining. Abundance is becoming more concentrated in fewer populations and regions within the ESU. The Whidbey Basin Region is the only region with consistently high fraction natural-origin spawner abundance, in six of the 10 populations within the Region. All other regions have moderate to high proportions of hatchery-origin spawners (**Table 3**).

In general, the Strait of Juan de Fuca, Georgia Basin, and Hood Canal regions are at greater risk than the other regions due to critically low natural abundance and/or declining growth rates of the populations in these regions. In addition, spatial structure, or geographic distribution, of the White, Skagit, Elwha and Skokomish populations has been substantially reduced or impeded by the loss of access to the upper portions of those tributary basins due to flood control activities and hydropower development. Habitat conditions conducive to salmon survival in most other watersheds have been reduced significantly by the effects of land use, including urbanization, forestry, agriculture, and development (NMFS 2005a; 2006a; 2008b; 2008c; SSPS 2007). It is likely that genetic and life history diversity has been significantly adversely affected by this habitat loss.

### *Abundance and Productivity*

Most Puget Sound Chinook populations are well below escapement levels identified as required for recovery to low extinction risk (**Table 3**). All populations are consistently below productivity goals identified in the recovery plan (**Table 3**). Although trends vary for individual populations across the ESU, currently 20 populations exhibit a stable or increasing trend in natural escapement (**Table 4**). 14 of 22 populations show a growth rate in the 17-year geometric mean natural-origin spawner abundances that is greater or equal to 1.00. Both the previous status review in 2015 (NWFSC 2015), and the 2016 Pacific Salmon Commission Chinook Technical Committee's Evaluation Report had similarly concluded there was a widespread negative trend for the total ESU. Both reports were based on data through 2013 or 2014 when available, and was the best available information at the time of the completion of previous opinions (NMFS 2016b, NMFS 2017, CTC 2016). The results of this analysis incorporated an updated long term data series, and three additional years of escapement data (2015-2017). Incorporation of this information indicates a more positive picture of trends in natural-origin Chinook salmon spawner population across the ESU (Table 4).[4] For populations which did experience increased escapements, when the average natural-origin escapements for 2010-2014 are compared to the average natural-origin escapements reported in 2015-2017, these recent average escapements represent an 8-53% increase in natural-origin escapement (for the Lower and Upper Sauk, Upper Skagit, NF and SF Stillaguamish, Skykomish, Snoqualmie, Cedar, Green, Puyallup, Nisqually and Dungeness populations). Additionally, for some populations the updated long-term data series reflects the use of newer technologies or methodologies. For example in the Stillaguamish River escapement estimates are now generated using genetic mark-recapture estimation methods.

Natural-origin escapements for eight populations are at or below their critical thresholds[5]. Both

---

[4] This is a synopsis of information provided in the recent five-year status review and supplemental data and complementary analysis from other sources, including the NWFCS Abundance and Productivity Tables. Differences in results reported in Tables 3 and 4 from those in the status review are related to the data source, method, and time period analyzed (e.g., 15 vs 25 years).

[5] After taking into account uncertainty, the critical threshold is defined as a point below which: (1) depensatory

populations in three of the five biogeographical regions are below or near their critical threshold: Georgia Strait, Hood Canal and Strait of Juan de Fuca (**Table 3**). When hatchery spawners are included, aggregate average escapement is over 1,000 for one of the two populations in each of these three regions; reducing the demographic risk to the populations in these regions. Nine populations are above their rebuilding thresholds[6]; eight of them in the Whidbey/Main Basin Region. This appears to reflect modest improvements in population status since these previous opinions (NMFS 2016b, NMFS 2017) were completed. However, in 2017 NMFS updated the rebuilding thresholds which are the Maximum Sustained Yield estimate of spawners based on available habitat. The new spawner-recruit analyses for several populations indicated a significant reduction in the number of spawners that can be supported by the available habitat when compared to analyses conducted 10-15 years ago. This may be due to further habitat degradation or improved productivity assessment or, more likely, a combination of the two. For example, the updated rebuilding escapement threshold for the Green River is 2,200 spawners compared to the previous rebuilding escapement threshold of 5,523 spawners. So although several populations are above the updated rebuilding thresholds, indicating that escapement is sufficient for the available habitat in many cases, the overall abundance has declined.

Trends in growth rate of natural-origin escapement are generally higher than growth rate of natural-origin recruitment (i.e., abundance prior to fishing) indicating some stabilizing influence on escapement, possibly from past reductions in fishing-related mortality (**Table 4**). Since 1990, 14 populations show productivity that is at or above replacement for natural-origin escapement including populations in all regions. Ten populations in four of the five regions demonstrate positive growth rates in natural-origin recruitment (**Table 4**). Survival and recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook Salmon ESU will depend, over the long term, on remedial actions related to all harvest, hatchery, and habitat related activities. Many of the habitat and hatchery actions identified in the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan are likely to take years or decades to be implemented and to produce significant improvements in natural population attributes, and current trends are consistent with these expectations (NWFSC 2015).

Life history traits such as size at age can also affect growth rate of recruitment. Studies examining those variables responsible for influencing the fecundity of female salmonids indicate that as the average body size at maturation is reduced, the productivity of the population also exhibits a reduction. This reduction is related to the production of fewer and smaller eggs, and the reduced ability to dig redds deep enough to withstand scouring (Healey & Heard 1984; Healy 1991; Hixon et al. 2014). Because Puget Sound Chinook salmon populations are not exhibiting a reduction in body size at age of maturation (Ohlberger et al. 2018), the productivity estimates reported (**Table 4**) for many of the populations continue to demonstrate stable levels of

---

processes are likely to reduce the population below replacement; (2) the population is at risk from inbreeding depression or fixation of deleterious mutations; or (3) productivity variation due to demographic stochasticity becomes a substantial source of risk (NMFS 2000b).

[6] The rebuilding threshold is defined as the escapement that will achieve Maximum Sustainable Yield (MSY) under current environmental and habitat conditions (NMFS 2000b), and is based on an updated spawner-recruit assessment in the Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan, December 1, 2018. Thresholds were based on population-specific data, where available.

recruitment.

**Table 3.** Estimates of escapement and productivity (recruits/spawner) for Puget Sound Chinook populations. Natural origin escapement information is provided where available. Populations at or below their critical escapement threshold are **bolded**. For several populations, hatchery contribution to natural spawning data are limited or unavailable.

| Region | Population | 1999 to 2017 Geometric mean Escapement (Spawners) | | NMFS Escapement Thresholds | | Recovery Planning Abundance Target in Spawners (productivity)[2] | Average % hatchery fish in escapement 1999-2017 (min-max)[5] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Natural [1] | Natural-Origin (Productivity[2]) | Critical[3] | Rebuilding[4] | | |
| **Georgia Basin** | Nooksack MU | 2,233 | 262 | 400 | 500 | | |
| | NF Nooksack | 1,537 | **203**[9] (0.3) | *200*[6] | - | 3,800 (3.4) | 85 (63-94) |
| | SF Nooksack | 43 | **24**[9] (1.0) | *200*[6] | - | 2,000 (3.6) | 85 (62-96) |
| **Whidbey/Main Basin** | Skagit Summer/Fall MU | | | | | | |
| | Upper Skagit River | 9,390 | 8,188[9] (1.7) | 738 | 5,836 | 5,380 (3.8) | 3 (1-8) |
| | Lower Sauk River | 572 | 504[9] (1.5) | *200*[6] | 371 | 1,400 (3.0) | 1 (0-10) |
| | Lower Skagit River | 2,098 | 1,800[9] (1.6) | 281 | 2,475 | 3,900 (3.0) | 4 (2-8) |
| | Skagit Spring MU | | | | | | |
| | Upper Sauk River | 603 | 530[9] (2.4) | 170 | 484 | 750 (3.0) | 2 (0-5) |
| | Suiattle River | 368 | 332[9] (2.1) | 170 | 250 | 160 (2.8) | 2 (0-7) |
| | Upper Cascade River | 301 | 266[9] (1.5) | 130 | 196 | 290 (3.0) | 9 (0-50) |
| | Stillaguamish MU | | | | | | |
| | NF Stillaguamish R. | 1,147 | 565 (0.8) | 300 | 550 | 4,000 (3.4) | 48 (28-71) |
| | SF Stillaguamish R. | 111 | **98** (1.1) | *200*[6] | 300 | 3,600 (3.3) | 10 (0-49) |
| | Snohomish MU | | | | | | |
| | Skykomish River | 3,409 | 2,040[9] (1.3) | 400 | 1,500 | 8,700 (3.4) | 34 (17-62) |
| | Snoqualmie River | 1,526 | 1,110[9] (1.1) | 400 | 900 | 5,500 (3.6) | 19 (8-35) |
| **Central/South Sound** | Cedar River | 931 | 837[9] (1.8) | *200*[6] | *200-500*[7] | 2,000 (3.1) | 25 (10-46) |
| | Sammamish River | 1,164 | **183**[9] (0.6) | *200*[6] | *1,250*[6] | 1,000 (3.0) | 84 (66-95) |
| | Duwamish-Green R. | 3,964 | 1,175[9] (1.2) | 400 | 2,200 | - | 64 (36-79) |
| | White River[10] | 1,778 | 720[9] (0.7) | *200*[6] | 380[7] | - | 53 (27-87) |
| | Puyallup River[11] | 1,655 | 695[9] (1.1) | *200*[6] | 797[7] | 5,300 (2.3) | 48 (18-76) |
| | Nisqually River | 1,658 | 533[9] (1.3) | *200*[6] | 1,200[8] | 3,400 (3.0) | 67 (43-87) |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Hood Canal** | Skokomish River | 1,357 | **312** (0.9) | 452 | 1,160 | - | 68 (7-95) |
| | Mid-Hood Canal Rivers[12] | **179** | | *200*[6] | *1,250*[6] | 1,300 (3.0) | 53 (5-90) |
| **Strait of Juan de Fuca** | Dungeness River | 356 | **99**[9] (0.6) | *200*[6] | 925[8] | 1,200 (3.0) | 71 (39-96) |
| | Elwha River[13] | 1,388 | **101**[9] | *200*[6] | *1,250*[6] | 6,900 (4.6) | 92 (82-98) |

[1] Includes naturally spawning hatchery fish.
[2] Source productivity is Abundance and Productivity Tables from NWFSC database; measured as the mean of observed recruits/observed spawners. Sammamish productivity estimate has not been revised to include Issaquah Creek. Source for Recovery Planning productivity target is the final supplement to the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan (NMFS 2006a); measured as recruits/spawner associated with the number of spawners at Maximum Sustained Yield under recovered conditions.
[3] Critical natural-origin escapement thresholds under current habitat and environmental conditions (McElhaney et al. 2000; NMFS 2000b).
[4] Rebuilding natural-origin escapement thresholds under current habitat and environmental conditions (McElhaney et al. 2000; NMFS 2000b).
[5] Estimates of the fraction of hatchery fish in natural spawning escapements are from the Abundance and Productivity Tables and co-manager postseason reports on the Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan (PSIT and WDFW 2013, WDFW and PSTIT 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2014, 2015, 2016), James and Dufault 2018 (preliminary data), and the 2010-2014 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan (PSIT and WDFW 2010a).
[6] Based on generic VSP guidance (McElhaney et al. 2000; NMFS 2000b).
[7]Based on spawner-recruit assessment (Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan, December 1, 2018).
[8] Based on alternative habitat assessment.
[9] Estimates of natural-origin escapement for Nooksack available only for 1999-2015; Skagit springs, Skagit falls available only for 1999-2015; Snohomish for 1999-2001 and 2005-2017; Both Lake Washington populations (Cedar & Sammamish) for 2003-2016; White River 2005-2017; Puyallup for 2002-2017; Nisqually for 2005-2017; Dungeness for 2001-2017; Elwha for 2010-2017.
[10] Captive broodstock program for early run Chinook salmon ended in 2000; estimates of natural spawning escapement include an unknown fraction of naturally spawning hatchery-origin fish from late- and early run hatchery programs in the White and Puyallup River basins.
[11] South Prairie index area provides a more accurate trend in the escapement for the Puyallup River because it is the only area in the Puyallup River for which spawners or redds can be consistently counted (PSIT and WDFW 2010a).
[12] The Puget Sound TRT considers Chinook salmon spawning in the Dosewallips, Duckabush, and Hamma Hamma rivers to be subpopulations of the same historically independent population; annual counts in those three streams are variable due to inconsistent visibility during spawning ground surveys. Data on the contribution of hatchery fish is very limited; primarily based on returns to the Hamma Hamma River.
[13] Estimates of natural escapement do not include volitional returns to the hatchery or those fish gaffed or seined from spawning grounds for broodstock collection.

**Table 4.** Long-term trends in abundance and productivity for Puget Sound Chinook populations. Long-term, reliable data series for natural-origin contribution to escapement are limited in many areas.

| Region | Population | Natural Escapement Trend[1] (1990-2017) | | Natural Origin Growth Rate[2] (1990-2015) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | NMFS | | Recruitment (Recruits) | Escapement (Spawners) |
| Georgia Basin | NF Nooksack (early) | 1.12 | increasing | 1.04 | 1.02 |
| | SF Nooksack (early) | 0.99 | stable | 1.00 | 0.98 |
| Whidbey/Main Basin | Upper Skagit River (moderately early) | 1.02 | stable | 0.99 | 1.02 |
| | Lower Sauk River (moderately early) | 1.00 | stable | 0.96 | 0.99 |
| | Lower Skagit River (late) | 1.02 | stable | 0.98 | 1.01 |
| | Upper Sauk River (early) | 1.05 | increasing | 1.03 | 1.03 |
| | Suiattle River (very early) | 1.01 | stable | 1.02 | 1.01 |
| | Upper Cascade River (moderately early) | 1.02 | stable | 1.01 | 1.02 |
| | NF Stillaguamish R. (early) | 0.99 | stable | 0.97 | 1.00 |
| | SF Stillaguamish R[3] (moderately early) | 0.96 | **declining** | 0.94 | 0.97 |
| | Skykomish River (late) | 1.00 | stable | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | Snoqualmie River (late) | 1.01 | stable | 0.98 | 0.98 |
| Central/South Sound | Cedar River (late) | 1.05 | increasing | 1.01 | 1.04 |
| | Sammamish River[4] (late) | 1.01 | stable | 1.02 | 1.04 |
| | Duwamish-Green R. (late) | 0.97 | stable | 0.94 | 0.97 |
| | White River[5] (early) | 1.10 | increasing | 1.02 | 1.05 |
| | Puyallup River (late) | 0.98 | **declining** | 0.92 | 0.94 |
| | Nisqually River (late) | 1.05 | increasing | 0.93 | 1.00 |
| Hood Canal | Skokomish River (late) | 1.02 | stable | 0.90 | 0.99 |
| | Mid-Hood Canal Rivers[3] (late) | 1.04 | stable | 0.97 | 1.04 |
| Strait of Juan de Fuca | Dungeness River (early) | 1.05 | increasing | 1.03 | 1.06 |
| | Elwha River[3] (late) | 1.04 | increasing | 0.91 | 0.93 |

[1] Escapement Trend is calculated based on all spawners (i.e., including both natural origin spawners and hatchery-origin fish spawning naturally) to assess the total number of spawners passed through the fishery to the spawning ground. Directions of trends defined by statistical tests.

[2] Median growth rate ($\lambda$) is calculated based on natural-origin production. It is calculated assuming the reproductive success of naturally spawning hatchery fish is equivalent to that of natural-origin fish (for those populations where information on the fraction of hatchery fish in natural spawning abundance is available). Source: Abundance and Productivity Tables from NWFSC database.

[3] Estimate of the fraction of hatchery fish in time series is not available for use in $\lambda$ calculation, so trend represents that in hatchery-origin + natural-origin spawners.

[4] Median growth rate estimates for Sammamish has not been revised to include escapement in Issaquah Creek.

[5] Natural spawning escapement includes an unknown % of naturally spawning hatchery-origin fish from late- and early run hatchery programs in the White/Puyallup River basin.

***Limiting factors***

Limiting factors described in SSPS (2007) and reiterated in NMFS (2017a) include:

- Degraded nearshore and estuarine habitat: Residential and commercial development has reduced the amount of functioning nearshore and estuarine habitat available for salmon rearing and migration. The loss of mudflats, eelgrass meadows, and macroalgae further limits salmon foraging and rearing opportunities in nearshore and estuarine areas.
- Degraded freshwater habitat: Floodplain connectivity and function, channel structure and complexity, riparian areas and large wood supply, stream substrate, impaired passage conditions and water quality have been degraded for adult spawning, embryo incubation, and rearing as a result of cumulative impacts of agriculture, forestry, and development. Some improvements have occurred over the last decade for water quality and removal of forest road barriers.
- Anadromous salmonid hatchery programs: Salmon and steelhead released from Puget Sound hatcheries operated for harvest augmentation purposes pose ecological, genetic, and demographic risks to natural-origin Chinook salmon populations. The risk to the species' persistence that may be attributable to hatchery-related effects has decreased since the last Status Review, based on hatchery risk reduction measures that have been implemented, and new scientific information regarding genetic effects noted above (NWFSC 2015). Improvements in hatchery operations associated with on-going ESA review and determination processes are expected to further reduce hatchery-related risks.
- Salmon harvest management: Total fishery exploitation rates have decreased substantially since the late 1990s when compared to years prior to listing (average reduction = -33%, range = -67 to +30%), (New FRAM base period validation results, August 2017) but weak natural-origin Chinook salmon populations in Puget Sound still require enhanced protective measures to reduce the risk of overharvest. The risk to the species' persistence because of harvest remains the same since the last status review. Increased harvest from the Canadian WCVI fisheries has impacted most Puget Sound populations. Further, there is greater uncertainty associated with this threat due to shorter term harvest plans and exceedance of management objectives for some Chinook salmon populations essential to recovery.
- Concerns regarding existing regulatory mechanisms, including: lack of documentation or analysis of the effectiveness of land-use regulatory mechanisms and land-use management plans, lack of reporting and enforcement for some regulatory programs, certain Federal, state, and local land and water use decisions continue to occur without the benefit of ESA review. State and local decisions have no Federal nexus to trigger the ESA Section 7 consultation requirement, and thus certain permitting actions allow direct and indirect species take and/or adverse habitat effects.

### 2.2.1.2 Status of Puget Sound Steelhead

The Puget Sound steelhead Distinct Population Segment (DPS) was listed as threatened on May 11, 2007 (72 Fed. Reg. 26722). NOAA's Northwest Fisheries Science Center evaluated the viability of the listed species and issued a status review update providing new information and analysis on the biological status of the listed species (NWFSC 2015). The status review incorporated the findings of the Science Center's report, summarized new information concerning the delineation of the DPS and inclusion of closely related salmonid hatchery programs, and included an evaluation of the listing factors (NMFS 2017a). Based on this review, NMFS concluded that the species should remain listed as threatened. In this opinion, where possible, the status review information is supplemented with more recent information and other population specific data that may not have been considered during the status review so that NMFS is assured of using the best available information. In 2016 NMFS published a 5-year status review of the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS (NMFS 2016). Using key findings in NWFSC 2015, the status review found no major changes in the status or composition of the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS.

The Puget Sound steelhead populations are aggregated into three extant Major Population Groups (MPGs) containing a total of 32 Demographically Independent Populations (DIPs) based on genetic, environmental, and life history characteristics (PSSTRT 2013a). Populations can include summer steelhead only, winter steelhead only, or a combination of summer and winter run timing (e.g., winter run, summer run or summer/winter run). **Figure 2** illustrates the DPS, MPGs, and DIPs for Puget Sound steelhead.

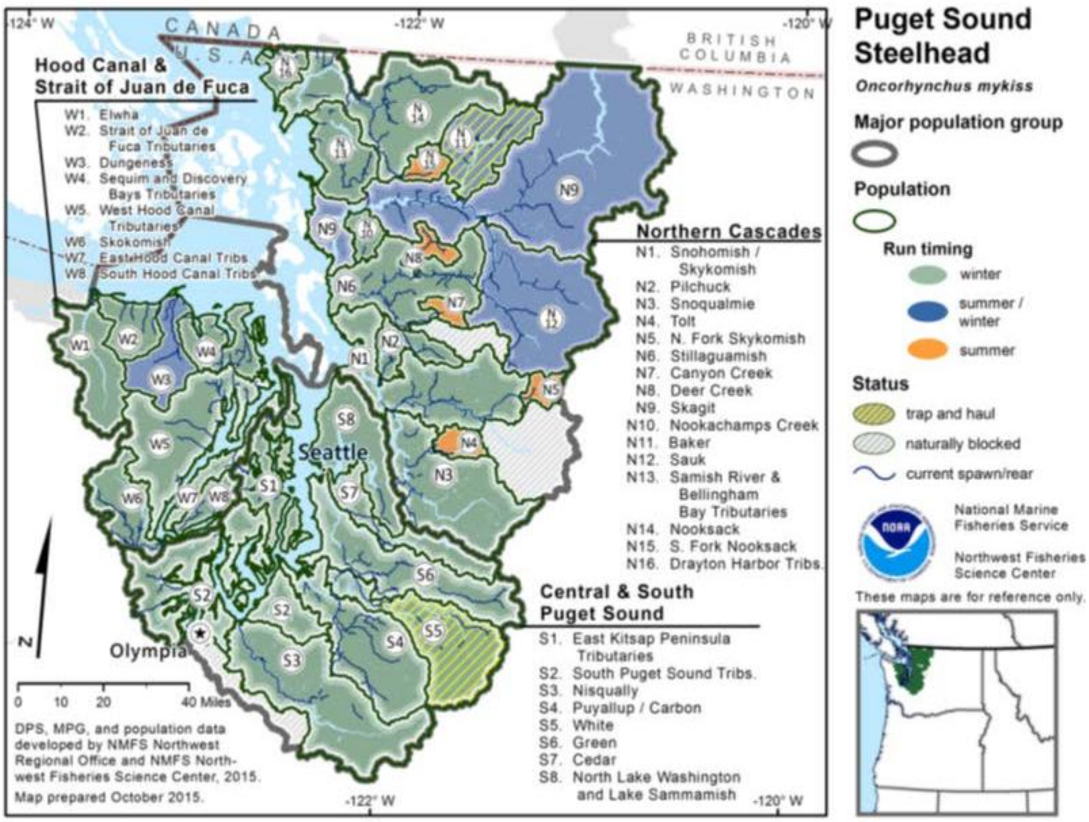



**Figure 2.** The Puget Sound Steelhead DPS showing MPGs and DIPs. The steelhead MPGs include the Northern Cascades, Central & Sound Puget Sound, and the Hood Canal & Strait of Juan de Fuca.

NMFS has convened recovery planning efforts across the Pacific Northwest to identify what actions are needed to recover listed salmon and steelhead. In 2014, a Puget Sound Steelhead Recovery Team was established and recovery planning for Puget Sound steelhead is underway. NMFS anticipates to have a draft Puget Sound steelhead recovery plan available for public review in 2018 with a final plan completed in 2019. More information on the recovery planning process and draft documents for public comment are available at: *http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/salmon_steelhead/recovery_planning_and_implementation/puget_sound/overview_puget_sound_steelhead_recovery_2.html*. NMFS expects that both Federal and State steelhead recovery and management efforts will provide new tools and data and technical analyses to further refine Puget Sound steelhead population structure and viability, if needed, and better define the role of individual populations at the watershed level and in the DPS. Future consultations will incorporate information from the recovery planning process as it becomes available.

As part of the early recovery planning process, NMFS convened a technical recovery team to identify historic populations and develop viability criteria for the recovery plan. The Puget Sound Steelhead Technical Recovery Team (PSSTRT) delineated populations (DIPs) and completed a set of population viability analyses (PVAs) for these DIPs and MPGs within the DPS that are summarized in the 5-year status review and the final draft viability criteria reports (NWFSC 2015, PSSTRT 2013a, 2013b). These documents present the biological viability criteria recommended by the PSSTRT. The framework and the analysis it supports do not set targets for delisting or recovery, nor do they explicitly identify specific populations or groups of populations for recovery priority. Rather, the framework and associated analysis are meant to provide a technical foundation for those charged with recovery of listed steelhead in Puget Sound from which they can develop effective recovery plans at the watershed scale, and higher, that are based on biologically meaningful criteria (PSSTRT 2013a). For example, the PSSTRT developed Major Population Group (MPG) and Distinct Population Segment (DPS) viability criteria for Puget Sound steelhead. For MPGs, the viability criteria includes how many steelhead Demographically Independent Populations (DIPs) must be viable in order for the MPG to be viable (**Table 5**). The DPS is considered viable only if all its component MPGs are viable (PSSTRT 2013a).

**Table 5.** Number of viable DIPs required for DPS viability in each of the Puget Sound steelhead MPGs.

| MPG | Life History Type | Number of DIPs | Number Viable |
|---|---|---|---|
| Northern Cascades | Summer-run | 5 | 2 |
| | Winter-run | 11 | 5 |
| Central and South Puget Sound | Summer-run | 0 | 0 |
| | Winter-run | 8 | 4 |
| Hood Canal & Strait of Juan de Fuca | Summer-run | 0 | 0 |
| | Winter-run | 8 | 4 |

NMFS is in the process of developing a long-term recovery plan with our Federal, state, tribal, local, and private partners. NMFS is planning to have a draft Puget Sound steelhead recovery plan available for public review in winter 2018 with a final plan completed in 2019. More information on the Puget Sound steelhead recovery planning process can be found online at: http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/salmon_steelhead/recovery_planning_and_implementation/puget_sound/overview_puget_sound_steelhead_recovery_2.html.

***Spatial Structure and Diversity***

The Puget Sound Steelhead DPS includes all naturally spawned anadromous *O. mykiss* (steelhead) populations originating below natural and manmade impassable barriers from rivers flowing into Puget Sound from the Elwha River (inclusive) eastward, including rivers in Hood

Canal, South Sound, North Sound and the Strait of Georgia. Also, steelhead from six artificial propagation programs: the Green River Natural Program; White River Winter Steelhead Supplementation Program; Hood Canal Steelhead Supplementation Off-station Projects in the Dewatto, Skokomish, and Duckabush Rivers; and the Lower Elwha Fish Hatchery Wild Steelhead Recovery Program. (79 Fed. Reg. 20802, April 14, 2014). Steelhead included in the listing are the anadromous form of *O. mykiss* that occur in rivers, below natural and man-made impassable barriers to migration, in northwestern Washington State. Non-anadromous ''resident'' *O. mykiss* occur within the range of Puget Sound steelhead but are not part of the DPS due to marked differences in physical, physiological, ecological, and behavioral characteristics (Hard et al. 2007).

The Biological Review Team (BRT) considered the major risk factors associated with spatial structure and diversity of Puget Sound steelhead to be: (1) the low abundance of several summer run populations; (2) the sharply diminishing abundance of some winter steelhead populations, especially in south Puget Sound, Hood Canal, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca; and (3) continued releases of out-of-ESU hatchery fish from Skamania-derived summer run and Chambers Creek-derived winter run stocks (Hard et al. 2007; discussed further in section 2.4.1). Loss of diversity and spatial structure were judged to be "moderate" risk factors (Hard et al. 2007).

In 2013, the PSSTRT completed its evaluation of factors that influence the diversity and spatial structure VSP criteria for steelhead in the DPS. For spatial structure, this included the fraction of available intrinsic potential rearing and spawning habitat that is occupied compared to what is needed for viability.[7] For diversity, these factors included hatchery fish production, contribution of resident fish to anadromous fish production, and run timing of adult steelhead. Quantitative information on spatial structure and connectivity was not available for most Puget Sound steelhead populations, so a Bayesian Network framework was used to assess the influence of these factors on steelhead viability at the population, MPG, and DPS scales (PSSTRT 2013a). The Puget Sound Steelhead Technical Recovery Team concluded that low population viability was widespread throughout the DPS and populations showed evidence of diminished spatial structure and diversity (PSSTRT 2013a). Specifically, population viability associated with spatial structure and diversity was highest in the Northern Cascades MPG and lowest in the Central and South Puget Sound MPG (**Figure 3**). Diversity was generally higher for populations within the Northern Cascades MPG, where more variability in viability was expressed and diversity generally higher, compared to populations in both the Central and South Puget Sound and Hood Canal and Strait of Juan de Fuca MPG, where diversity was depressed and viabilities were generally lower (NWFSC 2015). Most Puget Sound steelhead populations were given intermediate scores for spatial structure and low scores for diversity because of extensive hatchery influence, low breeding population sizes, and freshwater habitat fragmentation or loss (NWFSC 2015).

[7] Where intrinsic potential is the area of habitat suitable for steelhead rearing and spawning, at least under historical conditions (PSSTRT 2013a or 2013b).

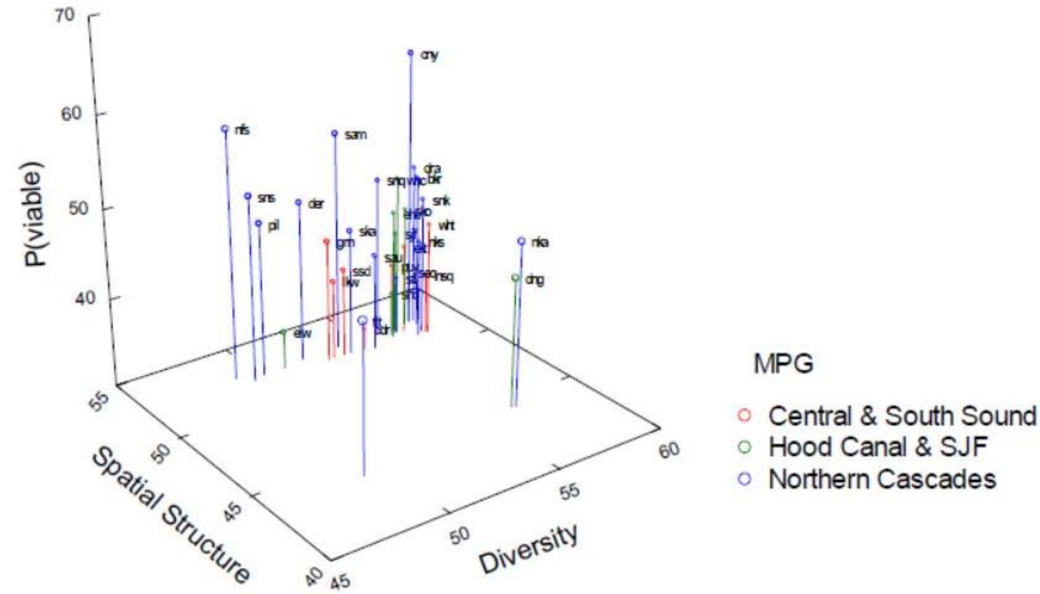



**Figure 3**. Scatter plot of the probabilities of viability for each of the 32 steelhead populations in the Puget Sound DPS as a function of VSP parameter estimates of influence of diversity and spatial structure on viability (PSSTRT 2013a).

Since the Technical Recovery Team completed its review of Puget Sound steelhead, the only spatial structure and diversity data that have become available have been estimates of the fraction of hatchery fish on the spawning grounds (NWFSC 2015). Hatchery production and release of hatchery smolts of both summer-run and winter-run steelhead have declined in recent years for most geographic areas within the DPS (NWFSC 2015). Since publication of the NWFSC report in 2015 even further reductions in hatchery production have occurred and will be discussed in detail in section 2.4.1. In addition, the fraction of hatchery steelhead spawning naturally are low for many rivers (NWFSC 2015). Steelhead hatchery programs are discussed in further detail in the Environmental Baseline section (2.4.1). Steelhead DIPs with the highest estimated proportions of hatchery spawners are the Elwha River, Nisqually River, Puyallup River/Carbon River, and Stillaguamish River winter-run populations. For 17 DIPs across the DPS, the five-year average for the fraction of natural-origin steelhead spawners exceeded 0.75 from 2005 to 2009; this average was near 1.0 for 8 populations, where data were available, from 2010 to 2014 (NWFSC 2015). In some river systems, these estimates are higher than some guidelines recommend (e.g., no more than 5% hatchery-origin spawners on spawning grounds for isolated hatchery programs (HSRG 2009). Overall, the fraction of natural-origin steelhead spawners is 0.9 or greater for the most recent two time periods (i.e., 2005-2009 and 2010-2014) but this fraction could also not be estimated for a substantial number of DIPs especially during the 2010 to 2014 period (**Table 6**) (NWFSC 2015).

**Table 6.** Puget Sound steelhead 5-year mean fraction of natural-origin spawners[1] for 22 of the 32 DIPs in the DPS for which data are available (NWFSC 2015).

| Run Type | DIP | Year 1990-1994 | 1995-1999 | 2000-2004 | 2005-2009 | 2010-2014 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Winter | Cedar River | | | | | |
| | Green River | 0.91 | 0.95 | 0.96 | | |
| | Nisqually River | 0.99 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | N. Lake WA/Lake Sammamish | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | |
| | Puyallup River/Carbon River | 0.95 | 0.92 | 0.91 | 0.91 | |
| | White River | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | Dungeness River | 1.00 | 1.00 | 0.98 | 0.99 | |
| | East Hood Canal Tributaries | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | Elwha River | 0.60 | 0.25 | | | |
| | Sequim/Discovery Bays Tributaries | | | | | |
| | Skokomish River | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | |
| | South Hood Canal Tributaries | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | Strait of Juan de Fuca Tributaries | | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | West Hood Canal Tributaries | | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | |
| | Nooksack River | | | 0.96 | 0.97 | 0.97 |
| | Pilchuck River | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | Samish River/Bellingham Bay Tributaries | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| | Skagit River | 0.94 | 0.95 | 0.96 | 0.95 | |
| | Snohomish/Skykomish Rivers | 0.94 | 0.95 | 0.94 | 0.96 | |
| | Snoqualmie River | 0.79 | 0.76 | 0.58 | 0.66 | |
| | Stillaguamish River | 1.00 | 0.88 | 0.75 | 0.81 | |
| Summer | Tolt River | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |

[1] The 5-year estimates represent the sum of all natural-origin spawner estimates divided by the number of estimates; blank cells indicate that no estimate is available for that 5-year range.

Early winter-run fish produced in isolated hatchery programs are derived from Chambers Creek stock in southern Puget Sound, which has been selected for early spawn timing, a trait known to be inheritable in salmonids.[8] Summer-run fish produced in isolated hatchery programs are derived from the Skamania River summer stock in the lower Columbia River Basin (i.e., from outside the DPS). Thus, the production of hatchery fish of both run types (winter and summer) continue to pose risk to diversity in natural-origin steelhead in the DPS.

More information on Puget Sound steelhead spatial structure and diversity can be found in NMFS's Puget Sound steelhead Technical recovery Team viability report (PSSTRT 2013a) and NMFS's status review update on salmon and steelhead (NWFSC 2015).

[8] The natural Chambers Creek steelhead stock is now extinct.

***Abundance and Productivity***

The 2007 BRT considered the major risk factors associated with abundance and productivity to be: (1) widespread declines in abundance and productivity for most natural steelhead populations in the ESU, including those in Skagit and Snohomish rivers (previously considered to be strongholds); (2) the low abundance of several summer run populations; and (3) the sharply diminishing abundance of some steelhead populations, especially in south Puget Sound, Hood Canal, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca (Hard et al. 2007).

Abundance and productivity estimates have been made available in the NWFSC status review update (NWFSC 2015). Steelhead abundance estimates are available for 7 of the 11 winter-run DIPs and 1 of the 5 summer-run DIPs in the Northern Cascades MPG,[9] 6 of the 8 winter-run DIPs in the Central and South Puget Sound MPG,[10] and 8 of the 8 winter-run DIPs in the Hood Canal and Strait of Juan de Fuca MPG.[11] Little or no data is available on summer run populations to evaluate extinction risk or abundance trends. Because of their small population size and the complexity of monitoring fish in headwater holding areas, summer steelhead have not been broadly monitored. Data were available for only one summer-run DIP, the Tolt River steelhead population in the Northern Cascades MPG. Total abundance of steelhead in these populations (**Figure 4**) has shown a generally declining trend over much of the DPS.

---

[9] Nooksack River, Samish River/Bellingham Bay Tributaries, Skagit River, Pilchuck River, Snohomish/Skykomish River, Snoqualimie River, and Stillaguamish River winter-run DIPs as well as the Tolt River summer-run DIP.

[10] Cedar River, Green River, Nisqually River, North Lake Washington/Lake Sammamish, Puyallup River/Carbon River, and White River winter-run DIPs.

[11] Dungeness River, East Hood Canal Tributaries, Elwha River, Sequim/Discovery Bays Tributaries, Skokomish River, South Hood Canal Tributaries, Strait of Juan de Fuca Tributaries, and West Hood Canal Tributaries winter-run DIPs.

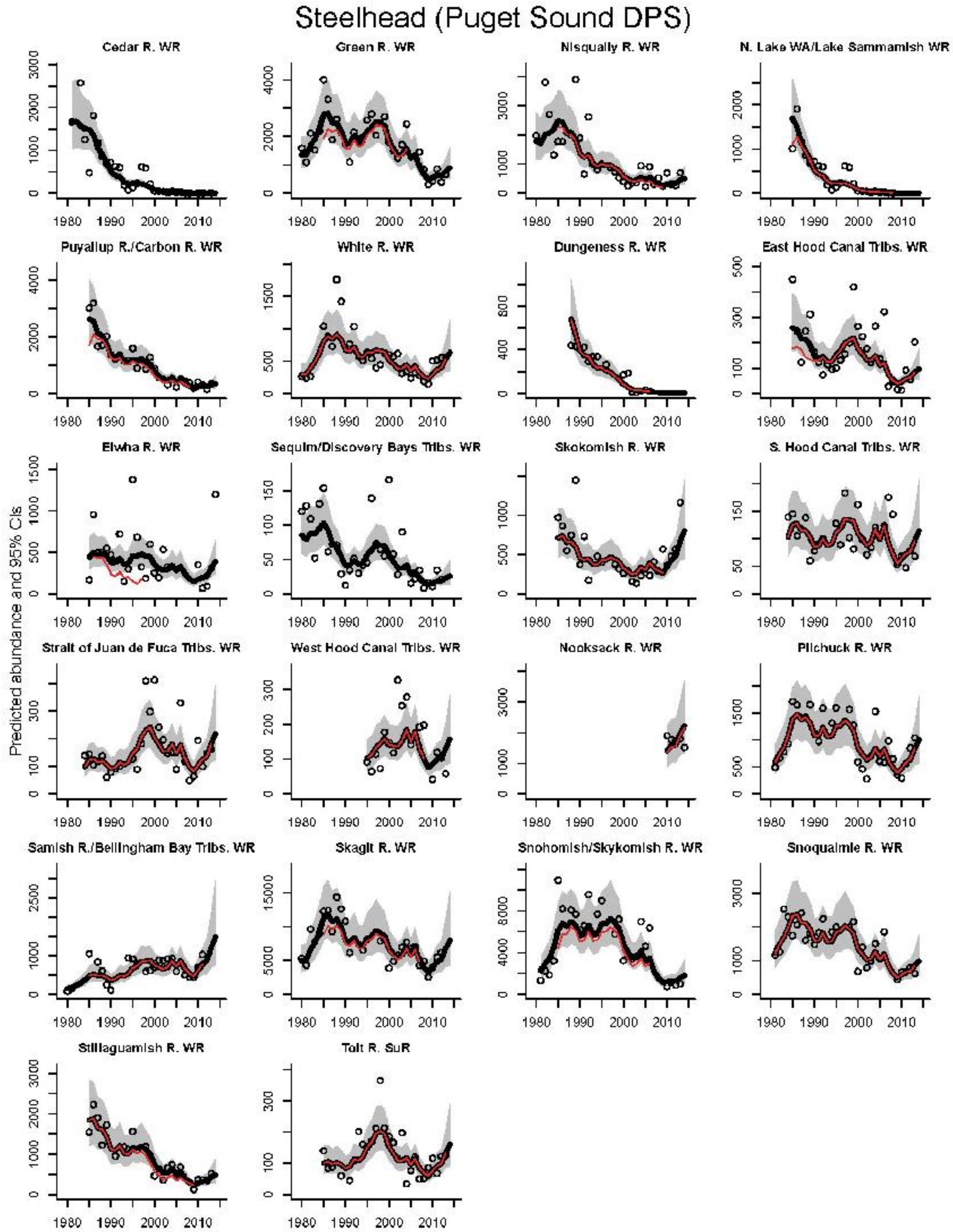



**Figure 4.** Trends in estimated total (black line) and natural (red line) population spawning abundance of Puget Sound steelhead. The circles represent annual raw spawning abundance data and the gray bands represent the 95% confidence intervals around the estimates. (NWFSC 2015)

Since 2009, 10 of the 22 populations indicate small to modest increases in abundance.[12] Most steelhead populations remain small. From 2010 to 2014, 8 of the 22 steelhead populations had fewer than 250 natural spawners annually, and 11 of the 22 steelhead populations had fewer than 500 natural spawners (**Table 7**).

**Table 7.** 5-year geometric mean of raw natural spawner counts for Puget Sound steelhead (raw total spawner counts). This is the raw total spawner count times the fraction natural estimate, if available. A value only in parentheses means that a total spawner count was available but no or only one estimate of natural spawners was available. Percent change between the most recent two 5-year periods is shown on the far right (NWFSC 2015).

| MPG | Run | Population | 1990-1994 | 1995-1999 | 2000-2004 | 2005-2009 | 2010-2014 | % Change |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Northern Cascades | Winter | Nooksack River | -- | -- | (80) | -- | 1779 (1834) | -- |
| | | Pilchuck River | 1300 (1300) | 1465 (1465) | 604 (604) | 597 (597) | 614 (614) | 3 (3) |
| | | Samish River/Bellingham Bay | 316 (316) | 717 (717) | 852 (852) | 534 (534) | 846 (846) | 58 (58) |
| | | Skagit River | 7189 (7650) | 7656 (8059) | 5424 (5675) | 5547 (4767) | (5123) | (7) |
| | | Snohomish/Skykomish River | 3634 (3877) | 4141 (4382) | 2562 (2711) | 2945 (3084) | (930) | (-70) |
| | | Snoqualmie River | 1832 (2328) | 2060 (2739) | 856 (1544) | 1396 (1249) | (680) | (-46) |
| | | Stillaguamish River | 1078 (1078) | 1024 (1166) | 401 (550) | 259 (327) | (392) | (20) |
| | Summer | Tolt River | 112 (112) | 212 (212) | 119 (119) | 73 (73) | 105 (105) | 44 (44) |
| Central/ South PS | Winter | Cedar River | (321) | (298) | (37) | (12) | (4) | (-67) |
| | | Green River | 1566 (1730) | 2379 (2505) | 1618 (1693) | (716) | (552) | (-23) |
| | | Nisqually River | 1201 (1208) | 759 (759) | 413 (413) | 375 (375) | 442 (442) | 18 (18) |
| | | N. Lk WA/Lk Sammamish | 321 (321) | 298 (298) | 37 (37) | 12 (12) | -- | -- |
| | | Puyallup River/Carbon River | 1860 (1954) | 1523 (1660) | 907 (1000) | 641 (476) | (277) | (-42) |
| | | White River | 696 (696) | 519 (519) | 466 (466) | 225 (225) | 531 (531) | 136 (136) |
| Hood Canal/ SJF | Winter | Dungeness River | 356 (356) | -- | 182 (186) | -- | (141) | -- |
| | | East Hood Canal Tribs. | 110 (110) | 176 (176) | 202 (202) | 62 (62) | 60 (60) | -3 (-3) |
| | | Elwha River | 206 (358) | 127 (508) | (303) | -- | -- | -- |
| | | Sequim/Discovery | | | | | | |

[12] Pilchuck River, Samish River/Bellingham Bays Tributaries, Nisqually River, White River, Sequim/Discovery Bay Tributaries, Skokomish River, , and Strait of Juan de Fuca Tributaries winter-run steelhead populations and Tolt River summer-run steelhead population with Skagit River and Stillaguamish River also showing early signs of upward trends..

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Bays | (30) | (69) | (63) | (17) | (19) | (12) |
| | | Skokomish River | 503 (385) | 359 (359) | 259 (205) | 351 (351) | (580) | (65) |
| | | South Hood Canal Tribs. | 89 (89) | 111 (111) | 103 (103) | 113 (113) | 64 (64) | -43 (-43) |
| | | Strait of Juan de Fuca Tribs. | -- | 275 (275) | 212 (212) | 244 (244) | 147 (147) | -40 (-40) |
| | | West Hood Canal Tribs. | -- | 97 (97) | 210 (210) | 174 (149) | (74) | (-50) |

Steelhead productivity has been variable for most populations since the mid-1980s. In the NWFSC status review update, natural productivity was measured as the intrinsic rate of natural increase (r), which has been well below replacement for at least six of the steelhead DIPs (NWFSC 2015). These six steelhead populations include, the Stillaguamish River winter-run in the Northern Cascade MPG, the North Lake Washington and Lake Sammamish, Puyallup River/Carbon River and Nisqually winter-run populations in the Central and South Puget Sound MPG, and the Dungeness and Elwha winter-run populations in the Hood Canal and Strait of Juan de Fuca MPG. Productivity has fluctuated around replacement for the remainder of Puget Sound steelhead populations, but the majority have predominately been below replacement since around 2000 (NWFSC 2015). Some steelhead populations are also showing signs of productivity that has been above replacement in the last two or three years (**Figure 5**). Steelhead populations with productivity estimates above replacement include the Tolt River summer-run, Pilchuck River winter-run, and Nooksack River winter-run in the Northern Cascades MPG, the White River winter-run in the Central and South Puget Sound MPG, and the East Hood Canal Tributaries and Strait of Juan de Fuca Tributaries winter-run steelhead populations in the Hood Canal and Strait of Juan de Fuca MPG.

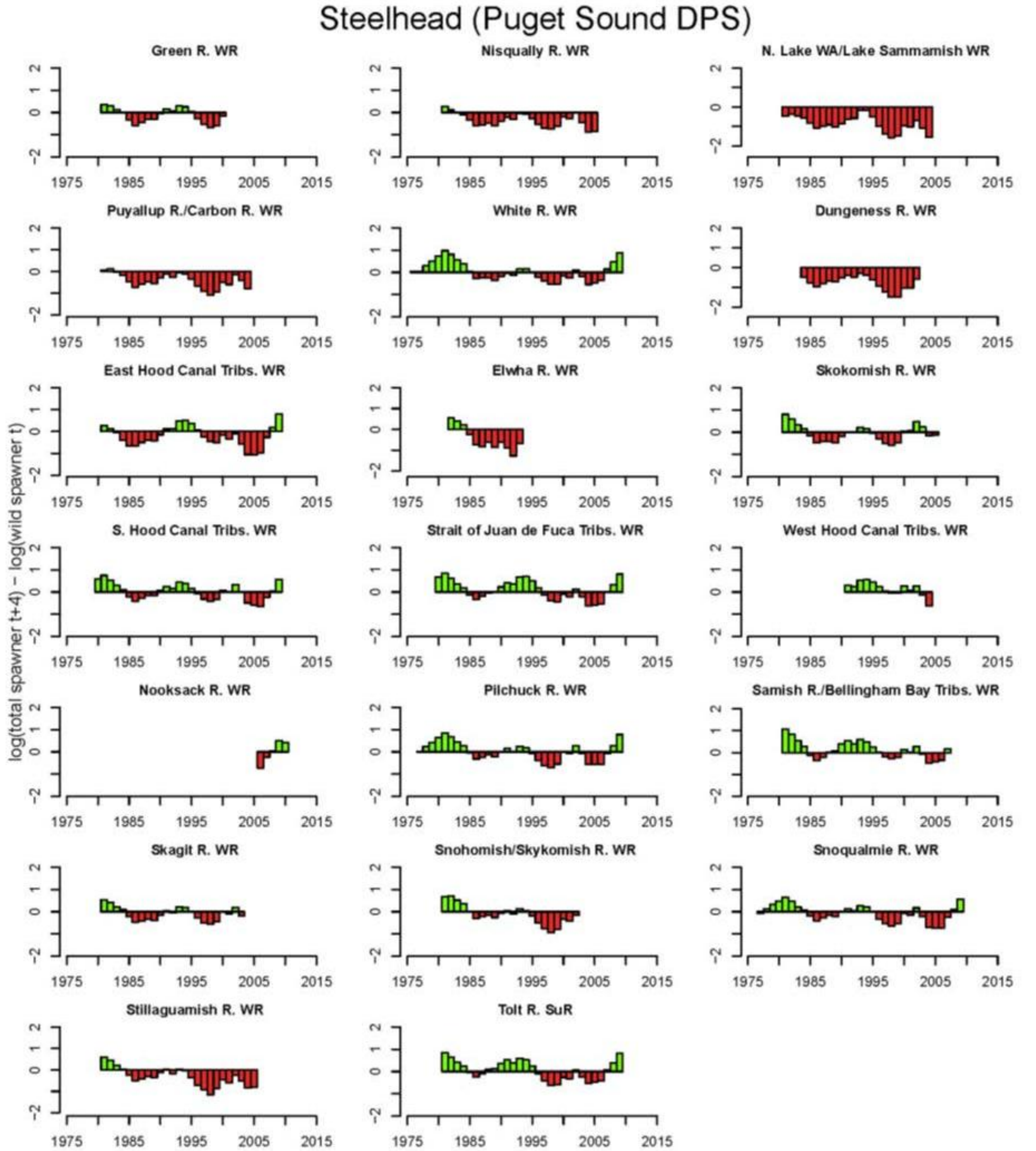



**Figure 5.** Trends in population productivity of Puget Sound steelhead (NWFSC 2015).

Harvest can affect the abundance and overall productivity of Puget Sound steelhead. Since the 1970s and 1980s, harvest rates have differed greatly among various watersheds, but all harvest rates on Puget Sound steelhead in the DPS have declined (NWFSC 2015). From the late 1970s to early 1990s, harvest rates on natural-origin steelhead averaged between 10% and 40%, with some populations in central and south Puget Sound[13] at over 60% (**Figure 6**). Harvest rates on natural-origin steelhead vary widely among watersheds, but have declined since the 1970s and 1980s and are now stable and generally less than 5% (NWFSC 2015; discussed further in Environmental Baseline section 2.4.1). Current harvest rates are low enough that they are unlikely to substantially reduce spawner abundance for most steelhead populations in Puget Sound (NWFSC 2015).

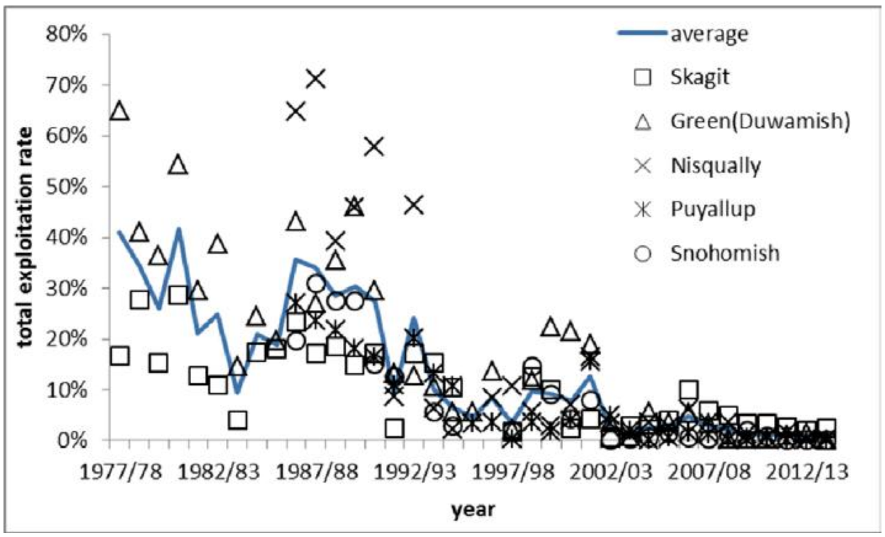



**Figure 6.** Total harvest rates on natural steelhead in Puget Sound Rivers (WDFW 2010 in NWFSC 2015).

Overall, the status of steelhead based on the best available data on spatial structure, diversity, abundance, and productivity has not changed since the last status review (NWFSC 2015). Recent increases in abundance observed for a few steelhead DIPs have been modest and within the range of variability observed in the past several years and trends in abundance remain negative or flat for just over one half of the DIPs in the DPS over the time series examined in the recent status review update (NWFSC 2015). The production of hatchery fish of both run types (winter and summer) continues to pose risk to diversity in natural-origin steelhead in the DPS although hatchery production has declined in recent years across the DPS and the fraction of hatchery spawners are low for many rivers. Recent increasing estimates of productivity for a few steelhead populations are encouraging but include only one to a few years, thus, the patterns of improvement in productivity are not widespread or considered certain to continue at this time. Total harvest rates are low and are unlikely to increase substantially in the foreseeable future and are low enough that they are unlikely to substantially reduce spawner abundance for most Puget Sound steelhead populations (NWFSC 2015).

[13] Green River and Nisqually River populations.

*Limiting factors*

NMFS, in its listing document and designation of critical habitat (77 FR 26722, May 11, 2007; 76 FR 1392, January 10, 2011), noted that the factors for decline for Puget Sound steelhead also persist as limiting factors. Information reviewed by NWFSC 2015 did not identify any new key emergent habitat concerns for the Puget Sound steelhead DPS since the 2011 status review.

- In addition to being a factor that contributed to the present decline of Puget Sound steelhead populations, the continued destruction and modification of steelhead habitat is the principal factor limiting the viability of the Puget Sound steelhead DPS into the foreseeable future.
- Reduced spatial structure for steelhead in the DPS.
- Reduced habitat quality through changes in river hydrology, temperature profile, downstream gravel recruitment, and reduced movement of large woody debris.
- In the lower reaches of many rivers and their tributaries in Puget Sound, urbanization has caused increased flood frequency and peak flows during storms, and reduced groundwater-driven summer flows. Altered stream hydrology has resulted in gravel scour, bank erosion, and sediment deposition.
- Dikes, hardening of banks with riprap, and channelization, which have reduced river braiding and sinuosity, have increased the likelihood of gravel scour and dislocation of rearing juveniles.
- Widespread declines in adult abundance (total run size), despite significant reductions in harvest over the last 25 years. Harvest is not as a significant limiting factor for PS steelhead due to their more limited fisheries.
- Threats to diversity posed by use of two hatchery steelhead stocks (Chambers Creek and Skamania) inconsistent with wild stock diversity throughout the DPS. However, the risk to the species' persistence that may be attributable to hatchery-related effects has decreased since the last Status Review, based on hatchery risk reduction measures that have been implemented, and new scientific information regarding genetic effects noted above (NWFSC 2015). Improvements in hatchery operations associated with on-going ESA review and determination processes are expected to further reduce hatchery-related risks. Further, hatchery releases of PS steelhead have declined.
- Declining diversity in the DPS, including the uncertain, but likely weak, status of summer run fish in the DPS.
- Concerns regarding existing regulatory mechanisms, including: lack of documentation or analysis of the effectiveness of land-use regulatory mechanisms and land-use management plans, lack of reporting and enforcement for some regulatory programs, certain Federal, state, and local land and water use decisions continue to occur without the benefit of ESA review. State and local decisions have no Federal nexus to trigger the ESA Section 7 consultation requirement, and thus certain permitting actions allow direct and indirect species take and/or adverse habitat effects.

#### 2.2.1.3 Status of Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish

Detailed assessments of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio can be found in the recovery plan

(NMFS 2017f) and the 5-year status review (Tonnes et al. 2016), and are summarized here. We describe the status of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio with nomenclature referring to specific areas of Puget Sound. Puget Sound is the second largest estuary in the United States, located in northwest Washington State and covering an area of about 900 square miles (2,330 square km), including 2,500 miles (4,000 km) of shoreline. Puget Sound is part of a larger inland waterway, the Georgia Basin, situated between southern Vancouver Island, British Columbia, Canada, and the mainland coast of Washington State. We subdivide the Puget Sound into five interconnected basins because of the presence of shallow areas called sills: (1) the San Juan/Strait of Juan de Fuca Basin (also referred to as "North Sound"), (2) Main Basin, (3) Whidbey Basin, (4) South Sound, and (5) Hood Canal. We use the term "Puget Sound proper" to refer to all of these basins except the San Juan/Strait of Juan de Fuca Basin.

The Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Distinct Population Segments (DPS) of yelloweye rockfish is listed under the ESA as threatened, and bocaccio are listed as endangered (75 FR 22276, April 28, 2010). On January 23, 2017, we issued a final rule to remove the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin canary rockfish (*Sebastes pinniger*) DPS from the Federal List of Threatened and Endangered Species and remove its critical habitat designation. We proposed these actions based on newly obtained samples and genetic analysis that demonstrates that the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin canary rockfish population does not meet the DPS criteria and therefore does not qualify for listing under the Endangered Species Act. Within the same rule, we extended the yelloweye rockfish DPS area further north in the Johnstone Strait area of Canada, as reflected in **Figure 7**. This extension was also the result of new genetic analysis of yelloweye rockfish. The final rule was effective March 24, 2017.

The DPSs include all yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio found in waters of Puget Sound, the Strait of Georgia, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca east of Victoria Sill (**Figure 7** and **Figure 8**). Yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio are 2 of 28 species of rockfish in Puget Sound (Palsson et al. 2009).

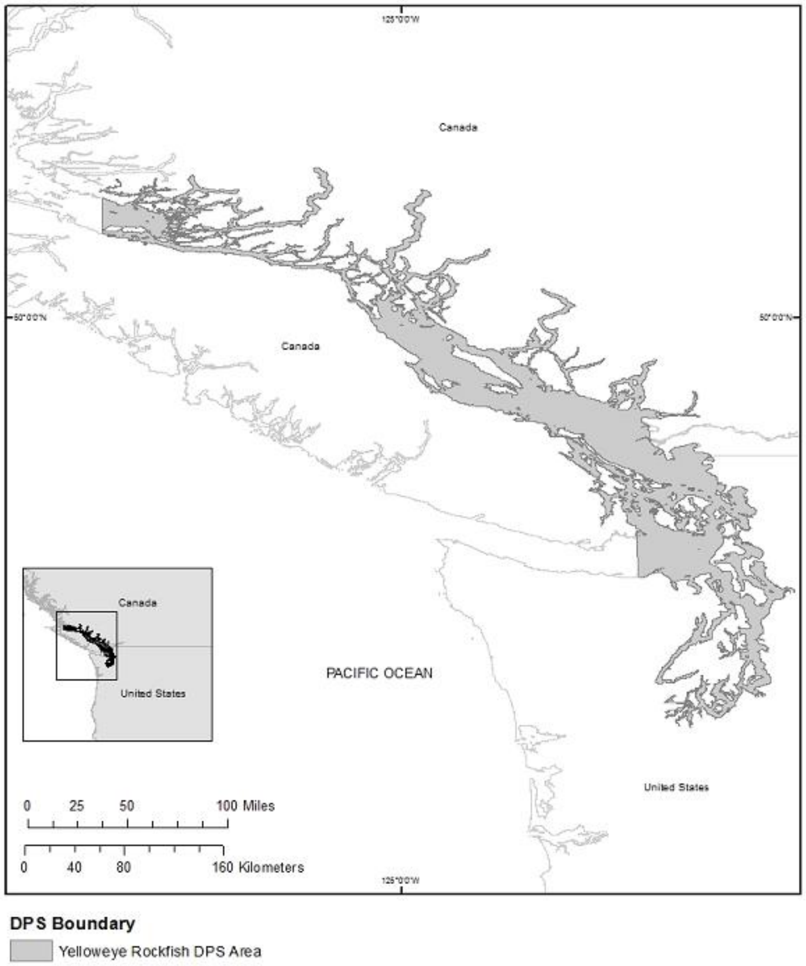



**Figure 7.** Yelloweye rockfish DPS area.


**Figure 8.** Bocaccio DPS area.

The life histories of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio include a larval/pelagic juvenile stage followed by a juvenile stage, and subadult and adult stages. Much of the life history and habitat use for these two species is similar, with important differences noted below. Rockfish fertilize their eggs internally and the young are extruded as larvae. Individual mature female yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio produce from several thousand to over a million eggs each breeding cycle (Love et al. 2002). Larvae can make small local movements to pursue food immediately after birth (Tagal et al. 2002), but are likely initially passively distributed with prevailing currents until they are large enough to progress toward preferred habitats. Larvae are observed under free-floating algae, seagrass, and detached kelp (Love et al. 2002; Shaffer et al. 1995), but are also distributed throughout the water column (Weis 2004). Unique oceanographic conditions within Puget Sound proper likely result in most larvae staying within the basin where they are released (e.g., the South Sound) rather than being broadly dispersed (Drake et al. 2010).

When bocaccio reach sizes of 1 to 3.5 inches (3 to 9 centimeters (cm)) (approximately 3 to 6 months old), they settle onto shallow nearshore waters in rocky or cobble substrates with or without kelp (Love et al. 1991, 2002). These habitat features offer a beneficial mix of warmer temperatures, food, and refuge from predators (Love et al. 1991). Areas with floating and submerged kelp species support the highest densities of most juvenile rockfish (Carr 1983; Halderson and Richards 1987; Hayden-Spear 2006; Matthews 1989). Unlike bocaccio, juvenile yelloweye rockfish do not typically occupy intertidal waters (Love et al. 1991; Studebaker et al. 2009), but settle in 98 to 131 feet (30 to 40 m) of water near the upper depth range of adults (Yamanaka and Lacko 2001).

Subadult and adult yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio typically utilize habitats with moderate to extreme steepness, complex bathymetry, and rock and boulder-cobble complexes (Love et al. 2002). Within Puget Sound proper, each species has been documented in areas of high relief rocky and non-rocky substrates such as sand, mud, and other unconsolidated sediments (Miller and Borton 1980; Washington 1977). Yelloweye rockfish remain near the bottom and have small home ranges, while bocaccio have larger home ranges, move long distances, and spend time suspended in the water column (Love et al. 2002). Adults of each species are most commonly found between 131 to 820 feet (40 to 250 m) (Love et al. 2002; Orr et al. 2000).

Yelloweye rockfish are one of the longest-lived of the rockfishes, with some individuals reaching more than 100 years of age. They reach 50 percent maturity at sizes around 16 to 20 inches (40 to 50 cm) and ages of 15 to 20 years (Rosenthal et al. 1982; Yamanaka and Kronlund 1997). The maximum age of bocaccio is unknown, but may exceed 50 years, and they reach reproductive maturity near age 6 (FishBase 2010).

In the following section, we summarize the condition of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio at the DPS level according to the following demographic viability criteria: abundance and productivity, spatial structure/connectivity, and diversity. These viability criteria are outlined in McElhaney et al. (2000) and reflect concepts that are well founded in conservation biology and are generally applicable to a wide variety of species. These criteria describe demographic risks that individually and collectively provide strong indicators of extinction risk (Drake et al. 2010). There are several common risk factors detailed below at the introduction of each of the viability criteria for each listed rockfish species. Habitat and species limiting factors can affect abundance, spatial structure and diversity parameters, and are described.

*Abundance and Productivity*

There is no single reliable historical or contemporary population estimate for the yelloweye rockfish or bocaccio within the full range of the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin DPSs (Drake et al. 2010). Despite this limitation, there is clear evidence each species' abundance has declined dramatically, largely due to recreational and commercial fisheries that peaked in the early 1980's (Williams et al. 2010a, Drake et al. 2010). Analysis of SCUBA surveys, recreational catch, and WDFW trawl surveys indicated total rockfish populations in the Puget Sound region are estimated to have declined between 3.1 and 3.8 percent per year for the past several decades, which corresponds to a 69 to 76 percent decline from 1977 to 2014 (Tonnes et al. 2016).

Catches of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio have declined as a proportion of the overall rockfish catch (Drake et al. 2010; Palsson et al. 2009). Yelloweye rockfish were 2.4 percent of the harvest in North Sound during the 1960s, occurred in 2.1 percent of the harvest during the 1980s, but then decreased to an average of 1 percent from 1996 to 2002 (Palsson et al. 2009). In Puget Sound proper, yelloweye rockfish were 4.4 percent of the harvest during the 1960s, only 0.4 percent during the 1980s, and 1.4 percent from 1996 to 2002 (Palsson et al. 2009).

Bocaccio consisted of 8 to 9 percent of the overall rockfish catch in the late 1970s and declined in frequency, relative to other species of rockfish, from the 1970s to the 1990s (Drake et al. 2010). From 1975 to 1979, bocaccio averaged 4.6 percent of the catch. From 1980 to 1989, they were 0.2 percent of the 8,430 rockfish identified (Palsson et al. 2009). In the 1990s and early 2000s, bocaccio were not observed by WDFW in the dockside surveys of the recreational catches (Drake et al. 2010).

Productivity is the measurement of a population's growth rate through all or a portion of its life cycle. Life history traits of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio suggest generally low levels of inherent productivity because they are long-lived, mature slowly, and have sporadic episodes of successful reproduction (Drake et al. 2010; Tolimieri and Levin 2005). Overfishing can have dramatic impacts on the size or age structure of the population, with effects that can influence ongoing productivity. When the size and age of females decline, there are negative impacts on reproductive success. These impacts, termed maternal effects, are evident in a number of traits. Larger and older females of various rockfish species have a higher weight-specific fecundity (number of larvae per unit of female weight) (Bobko and Berkeley 2004; Boehlert et al. 1982; Sogard et al. 2008). A consistent maternal effect in rockfishes relates to the timing of parturition. The timing of larval birth can be crucial in terms of corresponding with favorable oceanographic conditions because most larvae are released typically once annually, with a few exceptions in southern coastal populations and in yelloweye rockfish in Puget Sound (Washington et al. 1978). Several studies of rockfish species have shown that larger or older females release larvae earlier in the season compared to smaller or younger females (Nichol and Pikitch 1994; Sogard et al. 2008). Larger or older females provide more nutrients to larvae by developing a larger oil globule released at parturition, which provides energy to the developing larvae (Berkeley et al. 2004; Fisher et al. 2007), and in black rockfish enhances early growth rates (Berkeley et al. 2004).

Contaminants such as polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs), and chlorinated pesticides appear in rockfish collected in urban areas (Palsson et al. 2009). While the highest levels of contamination occur in urban areas, toxins can be found in the tissues of fish throughout Puget Sound (West et al. 2001). Although few studies have investigated the effects of toxins on rockfish ecology or physiology, other fish in the Puget Sound region that have been studied do show a substantial impact, including reproductive dysfunction of some sole species (Landahl et al. 1997). Reproductive function of rockfish is also likely affected by contaminants (Palsson et al. 2009) and other life history stages may be affected as well (Drake et al. 2010).

Future climate-induced changes to rockfish habitat could alter their productivity (Drake et al. 2010). Harvey (2005) created a generic bioenergetic model for rockfish, showing that their productivity is highly influenced by climate conditions. For instance, El Niño-like conditions generally lowered growth rates and increased generation time. The negative effect of the warm water conditions associated with El Niño appear to be common across rockfishes (Moser et al. 2000). Recruitment of all species of rockfish appears to be correlated at large scales. Field and Ralston (2005) hypothesized that such synchrony was the result of large-scale climate forcing. Exactly how climate influences rockfish in Puget Sound is unknown; however, given the general importance of climate to rockfish recruitment, it is likely that climate strongly influences the dynamics of listed rockfish population viability (Drake et al. 2010), although the consequences of climate change to rockfish productivity during the course of the Proposed Action will likely be small.

Yelloweye Rockfish Abundance and Productivity

Yelloweye rockfish within the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin (in U.S. waters) are very likely the most abundant within the San Juan Basin. The San Juan Basin has the most suitable rocky benthic habitat (Palsson et al. 2009) and historically was the area of greatest numbers of angler catches (Moulton and Miller 1987; Olander 1991).

Productivity for yelloweye rockfish is influenced by long generation times that reflect intrinsically low annual reproductive success. Natural mortality rates have been estimated from 2 to 4.6 percent (Yamanaka and Kronlund 1997; Wallace 2007). Productivity may also be particularly impacted by Allee effects, which occur as adults are removed by fishing and the density and proximity of mature fish decreases. Adult yelloweye rockfish typically occupy relatively small ranges (Love et al. 2002) and it is unknown the extent they may move to find suitable mates.

In Canada, yelloweye rockfish biomass is estimated to be 12 percent of the unfished stock size on the inside waters of Vancouver Island (DFO 2011). There are no analogous biomass estimates in the U.S. portion of the yelloweye rockfish DPS. However, WDFW has generated several population estimates of yelloweye rockfish in recent years. Remotely Operated Vehicle (ROV) surveys in the San Juan Island region in 2008 (focused on rocky substrate) and 2010 (across all habitat types) estimated a population of 47,407±11,761 and 114,494±31,036 individuals, respectively. A 2015 ROV survey of that portion of the DPSs south of the entrance to Admiralty Inlet encountered 35 yelloweye rockfish, producing a preliminary population estimate of 66,998±7,370 individuals (final video review is still under way) (WDFW 2017).

Bocaccio Abundance and Productivity

Bocaccio in the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin were historically most common within the South Sound and Main Basin (Drake et al. 2010). Though bocaccio were never a predominant segment of the multi-species rockfish abundance within the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin (Drake et al. 2010), their present-day abundance is likely a fraction of their pre-contemporary fishery abundance. Bocaccio abundance may be very low in large segments of the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin. Productivity is driven by high fecundity and episodic recruitment events, largely correlated with environmental conditions. Thus, bocaccio populations do not follow consistent growth trajectories and sporadic recruitment drives population structure (Drake et al. 2010).

Natural annual mortality is approximately 8 percent (Palsson et. al 2009). Tolimieri and Levin (2005) found that the bocaccio population growth rate is around 1.01, indicating a very low intrinsic growth rate for this species. Demographically, this species demonstrates some of the highest recruitment variability among rockfish species, with many years of failed recruitment being the norm (Tolimieri and Levin 2005). Given their severely reduced abundance, Allee effects may be particularly acute for bocaccio, even considering the propensity of some individuals to move long distances and potentially find mates.

In Canada, the median estimate of bocaccio biomass is 3.5 percent of its unfished stock size (though this included Canadian waters outside of the DPS's area) (Stanley et al. 2012). There are no analogous biomass estimates in the U.S. portion of the bocaccio DPS. However, The ROV survey of the San Juan Islands in 2008 estimated a population of 4,606±4,606 (based on four fish observed along a single transect), but no estimate could be obtained in the 2010 ROV survey because this species was not encountered. A single bocaccio encountered in the 2015 ROV survey produced a statistically invalid population estimate for that portion of the DPS lying south of the entrance to Admiralty Inlet and east of Deception Pass. Several bocaccio have been caught in genetic surveys and by recreational anglers in Puget Sound proper in the past several years.

In summary, though abundance and productivity data for yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio is relatively imprecise, both abundance and productivity have been reduced largely by fishery removals within the range of each Puget Sound/Georgia Basin DPSs.

*Spatial Structure and Connectivity*

Spatial structure consists of a population's geographical distribution and the processes that generate that distribution (McElhaney et al. 2000). A population's spatial structure depends on habitat quality, spatial configuration, and dynamics as well as dispersal characteristics of individuals within the population (McElhaney et al. 2000). Prior to contemporary fishery removals, each of the major basins in the range of the DPSs likely hosted relatively large populations of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio (Moulton and Miller 1987; Washington 1977; Washington et al. 1978). This distribution allowed each species to utilize the full suite of available habitats to maximize their abundance and demographic characteristics, thereby enhancing their resilience (Hamilton 2008). This distribution also enabled each species to potentially exploit ephemerally good habitat conditions, or in turn receive protection from smaller-scale and negative environmental fluctuations. These types of fluctuations may change prey abundance for various life stages and/or may change environmental characteristics that influence the number of annual recruits. Spatial distribution also provides a measure of protection from larger scale anthropogenic changes that damage habitat suitability, such as oil spills or hypoxia that can occur within one basin but not necessarily the other basins. Rockfish population resilience is sensitive to changes in connectivity among various groups of fish (Hamilton 2008). Hydrologic connectivity of the basins of Puget Sound is naturally restricted by relatively shallow sills located at Deception Pass, Admiralty Inlet, the Tacoma Narrows, and in Hood Canal (Burns 1985). The Victoria Sill bisects the Strait of Juan de Fuca and runs from east of Port Angeles north to Victoria, and regulates water exchange (Drake et al. 2010). These sills regulate water exchange from one basin to the next, and thus likely moderate the movement of rockfish larvae (Drake et al. 2010). When localized depletion of rockfish occurs, it can reduce stock resiliency (Hamilton 2008; Hilborn et al. 2003). The effects of localized depletions of rockfish are likely exacerbated by the natural hydrologic constrictions within Puget Sound.

Yelloweye Rockfish Spatial Structure and Connectivity

Yelloweye rockfish spatial structure and connectivity is threatened by the reduction of fish within each basin. This reduction is likely most acute within the basins of Puget Sound proper. Yelloweye rockfish are probably most abundant within the San Juan Basin, but the likelihood of juvenile recruitment from this basin to the adjacent basins of Puget Sound proper is naturally low because of the generally retentive circulation patterns that occur within each of the major basins of Puget Sound proper.

Bocaccio Spatial Structure and Connectivity

Most bocaccio may have been historically spatially limited to several basins. They were historically most abundant in the Main Basin and South Sound (Drake et al. 2010) with no documented occurrences in the San Juan Basin until 2008 (WDFW 2011). Positive signs for spatial structure and connectivity come from the propensity of some adults and pelagic juveniles to migrate long distances, which could re-establish aggregations of fish in formerly occupied habitat (Drake et al. 2010). The apparent reduction of populations of bocaccio in the Main Basin and South Sound represents a further impairment in the historically spatially limited distribution of bocaccio, and adds risk to the viability of the DPS.

In summary, spatial structure and connectivity for each species have been adversely impacted, mostly by fishery removals. These impacts on species viability are likely most acute for yelloweye rockfish because of their sedentary nature as adults.

*Diversity*

Characteristics of diversity for rockfish include fecundity, timing of the release of larvae and their condition, morphology, age at reproductive maturity, physiology, and molecular genetic characteristics. In spatially and temporally varying environments, there are three general reasons why diversity is important for species and population viability: (1) diversity allows a species to use a wider array of environments, (2) diversity protects a species against short-term spatial and temporal changes in the environment, and (3) genetic diversity provides the raw material for surviving long-term environmental changes.

Yelloweye Rockfish Diversity

Yelloweye rockfish size and age distributions have been truncated (**Figure 9**). Recreationally caught yelloweye rockfish in the 1970s spanned a broad range of sizes. By the 2000s, there was some evidence of fewer older fish in the population (Drake et al. 2010). No adult yelloweye rockfish have been observed within the WDFW ROV surveys and all observed fish in 2008 in the San Juan Basin were less than 8 inches long (20 cm) (Pacunski et al 2013). Since these fish were observed several years ago, they are likely bigger. However, (Pacunski et al. (2013) did not report a precise size for these fish; thus, we are unable to provide a precise estimate of their likely size now). As a result, the reproductive burden may be shifted to younger and smaller fish. This shift could alter the timing and condition of larval release, which may be mismatched with habitat conditions within the range of the DPS, potentially reducing the viability of offspring (Drake et al. 2010). Recent genetic information for yelloweye rockfish further confirmed the existence of fish genetically differentiated within the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin compared to the outer coast (NMFS 2016e) and that yelloweye rockfish in Hood Canal are genetically divergent from the rest of the DPS. Yelloweye rockfish in Hood Canal are addressed as a separate population in the recovery plan (NMFS 2017f).

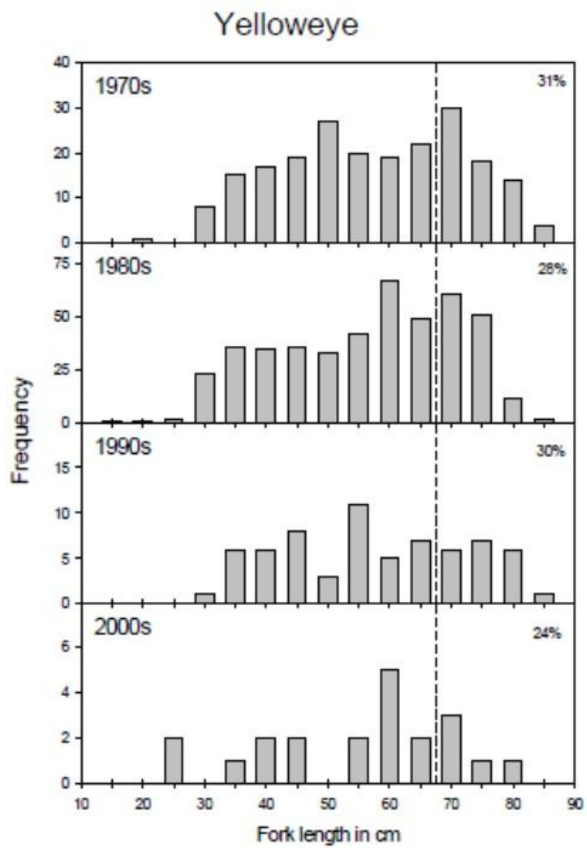



**Figure 9.** Yelloweye rockfish length frequency distributions (cm) binned within four decades.

Bocaccio Diversity

Size-frequency distributions for bocaccio in the 1970s indicate a wide range of sizes, with recreationally caught individuals from 9.8 to 33.5 inches (25 to 85 cm) (**Figure 10**). This broad size distribution suggests a spread of ages, with some successful recruitment over many years. A similar range of sizes is also evident in the 1980s' catch data. The temporal trend in size distributions for bocaccio also suggests size truncation of the population, with larger fish becoming less common over time. By the decade of the 2000s, no size distribution data for bocaccio were available. Bocaccio in the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin may have physiological or behavioral adaptations because of the unique habitat conditions in the range of the DPS. The potential loss of diversity in the bocaccio DPS, in combination with their relatively low productivity, may result in a mismatch with habitat conditions and further reduce population viability (Drake et al. 2010).

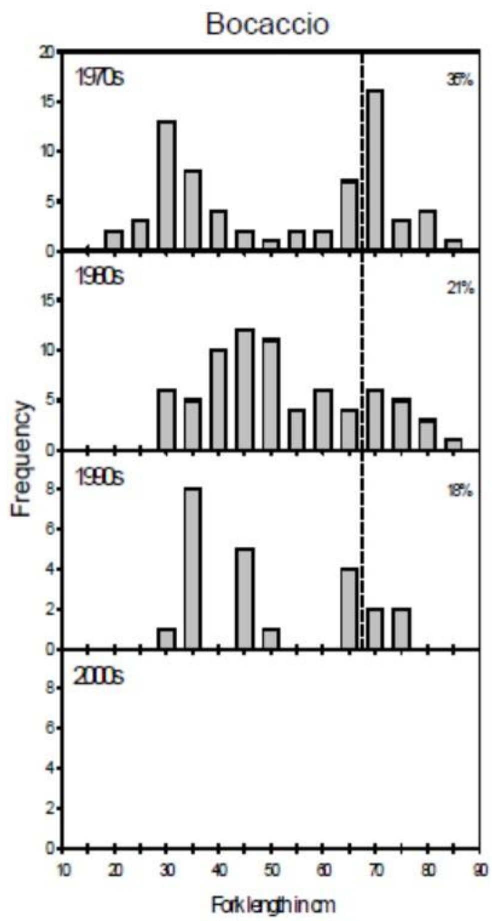



**Figure 10.** Bocaccio length frequency distributions (cm) within four decades. The vertical line depicts the size at which about 30 percent of the population comprised fish larger than the rest of the population in the 1970s, as a reference point for a later decade.

In summary, diversity for each species has likely been adversely impacted by fishery removals. In turn, the ability of each fish to utilize habitats within the action area may be compromised.

*Limiting Factors*

<u>Climate Change and Other Ecosystem Effects</u>

As reviewed in ISAB (2007), average annual Northwest air temperatures have increased by approximately 1.8°F (1°C) since 1900, which is nearly twice that for the previous 100 years, indicating an increasing rate of change. Summer temperatures, under the A1B emissions scenario (a "medium" warming scenario), are expected to increase 3°F (1.7°C) by the 2020s and 8.5°F (4.7°C) by 2080 relative to the 1980s in the Pacific Northwest (Mantua et al. 2010). This change in surface temperature has already modified, and is likely to continue to modify, marine habitats of listed rockfish. There is still a great deal of uncertainty associated with predicting specific changes in timing, location, and magnitude of future climate change.

As described in ISAB (2007), climate change effects that have, and will continue to, influence the habitat, include increased ocean temperature, increased stratification of the water column, and intensity and timing changes of coastal upwelling. These continuing changes will alter primary and secondary productivity, marine community structures, and in turn may alter listed rockfish growth, productivity, survival, and habitat usage. Increased concentration of CO2 (termed Ocean Acidification, or OA) reduces carbonate availability for shell-forming invertebrates. Ocean acidification will adversely affect calcification, or the precipitation of dissolved ions into solid calcium carbonate structures, for a number or marine organisms, which could alter trophic functions and the availability of prey (Feely et al. 2010). Further research is needed to understand the possible implications of OA on trophic functions in Puget Sound to understand how they may affect rockfish. Thus far, studies conducted in other areas have shown that the effects of OA will be variable (Ries et al. 2009) and species-specific (Miller et al. 2009).

There have been very few studies to date on the direct effect OA may have on rockfish. In a laboratory setting OA has been documented to affect rockfish behavior (Hamilton et al. 2014). Fish behavior changed markedly after juvenile Californian rockfish (*Sebastes diploproa*) spent one week in seawater with the OA conditions that are projected for the next century in the California shore. Researchers characterized the behavior as "anxiety" as the fish spent more time in unlighted environments compared to the control group. Research conducted to understand adaptive responses to OA on other marine organisms has shown that although some organisms may be able to adjust to OA to some extent, these adaptations may reduce the organism's overall fitness or survival (Wood et al. 2008). More research is needed to further understand rockfish-specific responses and possible adaptations to OA.

There are natural biological and physical functions in regions of Puget Sound, especially in Hood Canal and South Sound, that cause the water to be corrosive and hypoxic, such as restricted circulation and mixing, respiration, and strong stratification (Newton and Van Voorhis 2002; Feely et al. 2010). However, these natural conditions, typically driven by climate forcing, are exacerbated by anthropogenic sources such as OA, nutrient enrichment, and land-use changes (Feely et al. 2010). By the next century, OA will increasingly reduce pH and saturation states in Puget Sound (Feely et al. 2010). Areas in Puget Sound susceptible to naturally occurring hypoxic and corrosive conditions are also the same areas where low seawater pH occurs, compounding the conditions of these areas (Feely et al. 2010).

Commercial and Recreational Bycatch

Listed rockfish are caught in some recreational and commercial fisheries in Puget Sound. Recreational fishermen targeting bottom fish the shrimp trawl fishery in Puget Sound can incidentally catch listed rockfish. In 2012, we issued an incidental take permit (ITP) to the WDFW for listed rockfish in these fisheries (**Table 8**) and the WDFW is working on a new ITP application (WDFW 2017). If issued, the new permit would be in effect for up to 15 years.

**Table 8.** Anticipated Maximum Annual Takes for Bocaccio, Yelloweye Rockfish by the fisheries within the WDFW ITP (2012 – 2017) (WDFW 2012).

| | Recreational bottom fish | | Shrimp trawl | | Total annual takes | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Lethal** | **Non-lethal** | **Lethal** | **Non-lethal** | **Lethal** | **Non-lethal** |
| Bocaccio | 12 | 26 | 5 | 0 | 17 | 26 |
| Yelloweye Rockfish | 55 | 87 | 10 | 0 | 65 | 87 |

In addition, NMFS permits limited take of listed rockfish for scientific research purposes (section 2.4.4). Listed rockfish can be caught in the recreational and commercial halibut fishery. In 2017 we estimated that these halibut fisheries would result in up to 270 lethal takes (329 total takes) of yelloweye rockfish, and 40 bocaccio (all lethal) (NMFS 2017c).

*Other Limiting Factors*

The yelloweye rockfish DPS abundance is much lower than it was historically. The fish face several threats, including bycatch in some commercial and recreational fisheries, non-native species introductions, and habitat degradation. NMFS has determined that this DPS is likely to be in danger of extinction in the foreseeable future throughout all of its range.

The bocaccio DPS exists at very low abundance and observations are relatively rare. Their low intrinsic productivity, combined with continuing threats from bycatch in commercial and recreational harvest, non-native species introductions, loss and degradation of habitat, and chemical contamination, increase the extinction risk. NMFS has determined that this DPS is currently in danger of extinction throughout all of its range.

In summary, despite some limitations on our knowledge of past abundance and specific current viability parameters, characterizing the viability of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio includes their severely reduced abundance from historical times, which in turn hinders productivity and diversity. Spatial structure for each species has also likely been compromised because of a probable reduction of mature fish of each species distributed throughout their historical range within the DPSs (Drake et al. 2010).

### 2.2.1.4 Status of Southern Resident Killer Whales

The Southern Resident killer whale Distinct Population Segment (DPS), composed of J, K and L pods, was listed as endangered under the ESA on November 18, 2005 (70 FR 69903). A 5-year review under the ESA completed in 2016 concluded that Southern Residents should remain listed as endangered and includes recent information on the population, threats, and new research results and publications (NMFS 2016f).

The limiting factors described in the final recovery plan included reduced prey availability and quality, high levels of contaminants from pollution, and disturbances from vessels and sound (NMFS 2008e). This section summarizes the status of Southern Resident killer whales throughout their range. This section summarizes information taken largely from the recovery plan (NMFS 2008e), recent 5-year review (NMFS 2016f), as well as new data that became available more recently.

***Abundance, Productivity, and Trends***

Southern Resident killer whales are a long-lived species, with late onset of sexual maturity (review in NMFS 2008). Females produce a low number of surviving calves over the course of their reproductive life span (Bain 1990, Olesiuk et al. 1990). Compared to Northern Resident killer whales (a resident killer whale population with a sympatric geographic distribution ranging from coastal waters of Washington State and British Columbia north to Southeast Alaska) Southern Resident females appear to have reduced fecundity (Ward et al. 2013, Vélez-Espino et al. 2014); the average inter-birth interval for reproductive Southern Resident females is 6.1 years, which is longer than the 4.88 years estimated for Northern Resident killer whales (Olesiuk et al. 2005). Recent evidence has indicated pregnancy hormones (progesterone and testosterone) can be detected in Southern Resident killer whale feces and have indicated several miscarriages, particularly in late pregnancy (Wasser et al. 2017). The authors suggest this reduced fecundity is largely due to nutritional limitation. Mothers and offspring maintain highly stable social bonds throughout their lives, which is the basis for the matrilineal social structure in the Southern Resident population (Baird 2000, Bigg et al. 1990, Ford 2000). Groups of related matrilines form pods. Three pods – J, K, and L – make up the Southern Resident community. Clans are composed of pods with similar vocal dialects and all three pods of the Southern Residents are part of J clan.

At present, the Southern Resident population has declined to historically low levels (**Figure 11**). Since censuses began in 1974, J and K pods have steadily increased their sizes. However, the population suffered an almost 20 percent decline from 1996-2001 (from 97 whales in 1996 to 81 whales in 2001), largely driven by lower survival rates in L pod. The overall population had increased slightly from 2002 to 2010 (from 83 whales to 86 whales). During the international science panel review of the effects of salmon fisheries (Hilborn et al. 2012), the Panel stated that during 1974 to 2011, the population experienced a realized growth rate of 0.71%, from 67 individuals to 87 individuals. Since then, the population has decreased to only 76 whales, a historical low in the last 30 years with a current realized growth rate (from 1974 to 2017) at half of the previous estimate described in the Panel report, 0.29%.

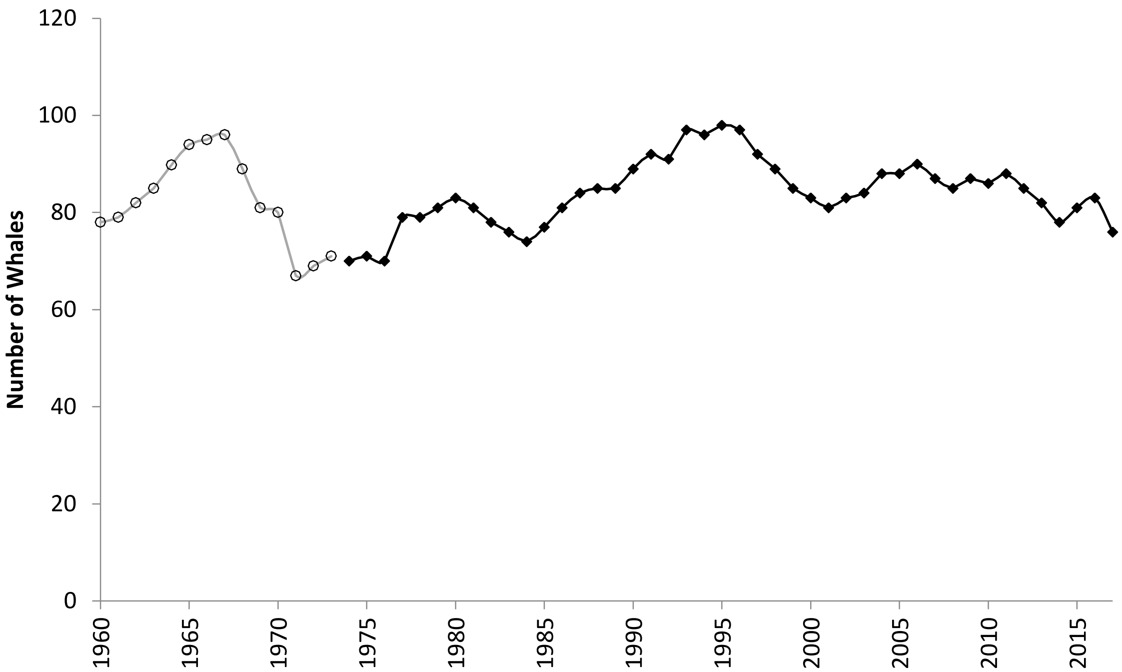



**Figure 11**. Population size and trend of Southern Resident killer whales, 1960-2017. Data from 1960-1973 (open circles, gray line) are number projections from the matrix model of Olesiuk et al. (1990). Data from 1974-2017 (diamonds, black line) were obtained through photo-identification surveys of the three pods (J, K, and L) in this community and were provided by the Center for Whale Research (unpubl. data) and NMFS (2008). Data for these years represent the number of whales present at the end of each calendar year.

There is representation in all three pods, with 23 whales in J pod, 18 whales in K pod and 35 whales in L pod. There are currently 4 reproductively mature males in J pod, 8 in K pod, and 10 mature males in L pod between the ages of 10 and 42 years. Although the age and sex distribution is generally similar to that of Northern Residents that are a stable and increasing population (Olesiuk et al. 2005), there are several demographic factors of the Southern Resident population that are cause for concern, namely reduced fecundity, sub-adult survivorship in L pod, and the total number of individuals in the population (review in NMFS 2008). Based on an updated pedigree from new genetic data, most of the offspring in recent years were sired by two fathers, meaning that less than 30 individuals make up the effective reproducing portion of the population. Because a small number of males were identified as the fathers of many offspring, a smaller number may be sufficient to support population growth than was previously thought (Ford et al. 2011, NWFSC unpublished data). Some offspring were the result of matings within the same pod raising questions and concerns about inbreeding effects. Research into the relationship between genetic diversity, effective breeding population size, and health is currently underway to determine how this metric can inform us about extinction risk and inform recovery (NWFSC unpublished data).

The historical abundance of Southern Resident killer whales is estimated from 140 to an unknown upper bound. The minimum estimate (~140) is the number of whales killed or removed for public display in the 1960s and 1970s added to the remaining population at the time the captures ended. Several lines of evidence (i.e., known kills and removals [Olesiuk et al. 1990], salmon declines [Krahn et al. 2002] and genetics [Krahn et al. 2002, Ford et al. 2011]) all indicate that the population used to be larger than it is now and likely experienced a recent reduction in size, but there is currently no reliable estimate of the upper bound of the historical population size.

Seasonal mortality rates among Southern and Northern Resident whales may be highest during the winter and early spring, based on the numbers of animals missing from pods returning to inland waters each spring. Olesiuk et al. (2005) identified high neonate mortality that occurred outside of the summer season. At least 12 newborn calves (9 in the southern community and 3 in the northern community) were seen outside the summer field season and disappeared by the next field season. Additionally, stranding rates are higher in winter and spring for all killer whale forms in Washington and Oregon (Norman et al. 2004). Data collected from three Southern Resident killer whale strandings in the last five years have contributed to our knowledge of the health of the population and the impact of the threats to which they are exposed. Transboundary partnerships have supported thorough necropsies of L112 in 2012, J32 in 2014, and L95 in 2016, which included testing for contaminant load, disease and pathogens, organ condition, and diet composition[14]. A final necropsy report for J34, who was found dead near Sechelt, British Columbia on December 20, 2016 is still pending[15].

The NWFSC continues to evaluate changes in fecundity and mortality rates, and has updated the work on population viability analyses conducted for the 2004 Status Review for Southern Resident Killer Whales and the science panel review of the effects of salmon fisheries (Krahn et al. 2004; Hilborn et al. 2012; Ward et al. 2013). Following from that work, the data now suggests a downward trend in population growth projected over the next 50 years. As the model projects out over a longer time frame (50 years) there is increased uncertainty around the estimates, however, if all of the parameters in the model remain the same the overall trend shows a decline in later years. This downward trend is in part due to the changing age and sex structure of the population, but also related to the relatively low fecundity rate observed over the period from 2011 to 2016 (**Figure 12**, NMFS 2016f). To explore potential demographic projections, Lacy et al. (2017) constructed a population viability assessment that considered sub-lethal effects and the cumulative impacts of threats (contaminants, acoustic disturbance, and prey abundance). They found that over the range of scenarios tested, the effects of prey abundance on fecundity and survival had the largest impact on the population growth rate. Furthermore, they suggested in order for the population to reach the recovery target of 2.3% growth rate, the acoustic disturbance would need to be reduced in half and the Chinook abundance would need to be

---

[14] Reports for those necropsies are available at: http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/marine_mammals/killer_whal e/rpi_strandings.html
[15] The initial findings can be found at: http://www.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/fm-gp/species-especes/mammalsmammiferes/srkw-eprs-j34-eng.html

increased by 15% (Lacy et al. 2017).

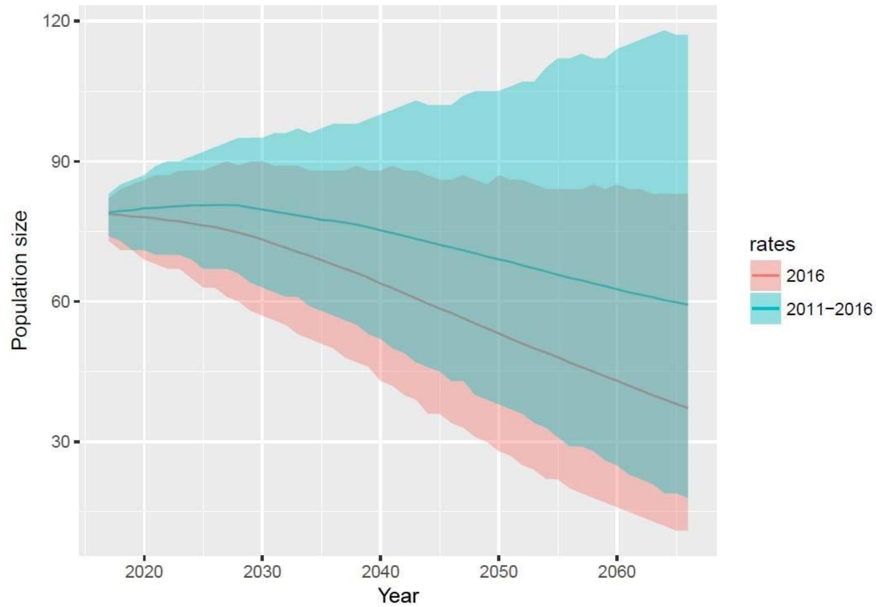



**Figure 12.** Southern Resident killer whale population size projections from 2016 to 2066 using 2 scenarios: (1) projections using demographic rates held at 2016 levels, and (2) projections using demographic rates from 2011 to 2016. The pink line represents the projection assuming future rates are similar to those in 2016, whereas the blue represents the scenario with future rates being similar to 2011 to 2016 (NMFS 2016).

Because of this population's small abundance, it is also susceptible to demographic stochasticity – randomness in the pattern of births and deaths among individuals in a population. Several other sources of stochasticity can affect small populations and contribute to variance in a population's growth and extinction risk. Other sources include environmental stochasticity, or fluctuations in the environment that drive fluctuations in birth and death rates, and demographic heterogeneity, or variation in birth or death rates of individuals because of differences in their individual fitness (including sexual determinations). In combination, these and other sources of random variation combine to amplify the probability of extinction, known as the extinction vortex (Gilpin and Soulé 1986, Fagen and Holmes 2006, Melbourne and Hastings 2008). The larger the population size, the greater the buffer against stochastic events and genetic risks. A delisting criterion for the Southern Resident killer whale DPS is an average growth rate of 2.3% for 28 years (NMFS 2008e). In light of the current average growth rate of 0.29% (from 1974 to present), this recovery criterion reinforces the need to allow the population to grow quickly.

Population growth is also important because of the influence of demographic and individual heterogeneity on a population's long-term viability. Population-wide distribution of lifetime reproductive success can be highly variable, such that some individuals produce more offspring than others to subsequent generations, and male variance in reproductive success can be greater than that of females (i.e., Clutton-Brock 1988, Hochachka 2006). For long-lived vertebrates such as killer whales, some females in the population might contribute less than the number of offspring required to maintain a constant population size (n = 2), while others might produce more offspring. The smaller the population, the more weight an individual's reproductive success has on the population's growth or decline (i.e., Coulson et al. 2006). For example, although there are currently 26 reproductive aged females (ages 11-42) in the Southern Resident killer whale population, only 14 have successfully reproduced in the last 10 years (CWR unpubl. data). This further illustrates the risk of demographic stochasticity for a small population like Southern Resident killer whales – the smaller a population, the greater the chance that random variation will result in too few successful individuals to maintain the population.

***Geographic Range and Distribution***

Southern Residents occur throughout the coastal waters off Washington, Oregon, and Vancouver Island and are known to travel as far south as central California and as far north as Southeast Alaska (NMFS 2008, Hanson et al. 2013, Carretta et al. 2017; **Figure 13**). Southern Residents are highly mobile and can travel up to 86 miles (160 km) in a single day (Baird 2000, Erickson 1978), with seasonal movements likely tied to the migration of their primary prey, salmon. During the spring, summer, and fall months, the whales spend a substantial amount of time in the inland waterways of the Strait of Georgia, Strait of Juan de Fuca, and Puget Sound (Bigg 1982; Ford 2000; Krahn et al. 2002; Hauser et al. 2007). In general, the three pods are increasingly more present in May and June and spend a considerable amount of time in inland waters through September (**Table 9**). Late summer and early fall movements of Southern Residents in the Georgia Basin are consistent, with strong site fidelity shown to the region as a whole and high occurrence in the San Juan Island area (Hanson and Emmons 2010, Hauser et al. 2007). All three pods generally remain in the Georgia Basin through October and make frequent trips to the outer coasts of Washington and southern Vancouver Island and are occasionally sighted as far west as Tofino and Barkley Sound (Ford 2000; Hanson and Emmons 2010, Whale Museum unpubl. data). Sightings in late fall decline as the whales shift to the outer coasts of Vancouver Island and Washington.

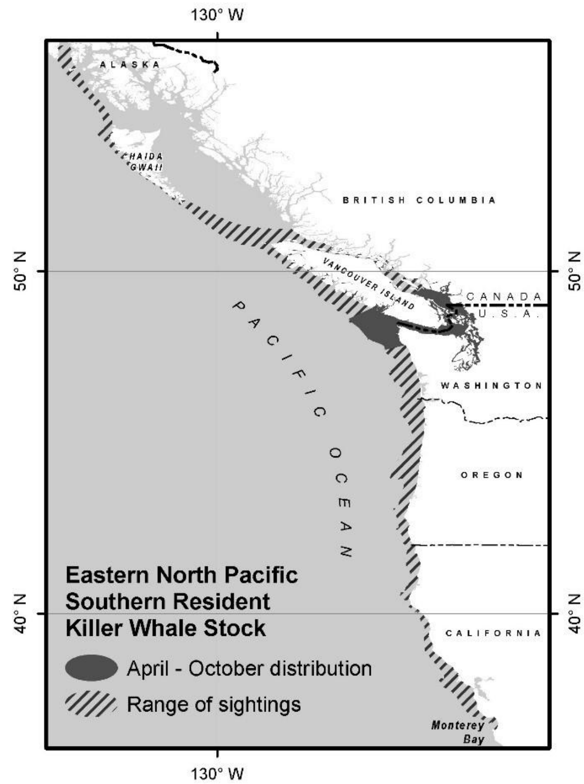



**Figure 13.** Geographic range of Southern Resident killer whales (reprinted from Carretta et al. 2017).

**Table 9.** Average and maximum number of observed days spent by Southern Residents (per pod) in inland waters per month (raw data from The Whale Museum, from 2003-2016).

| MONTH | AVERAGE OBSERVED DAYS | | | MAXIMUM OBSERVED DAYS | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | J | K | L | J | K | L |
| JAN | 6 | 5 | 3 | 16 | 13 | 10 |
| FEB | 6 | 3 | 3 | 15 | 10 | 11 |
| MARCH | 6 | 2 | 2 | 15 | 14 | 6 |
| APRIL | 10 | 2 | 2 | 24 | 9 | 14 |
| MAY | 21 | 5 | 5 | 30 | 20 | 11 |
| JUNE | 24 | 13 | 19 | 30 | 27 | 26 |
| JULY | 27 | 21 | 24 | 31 | 31 | 31 |
| AUG | 24 | 22 | 23 | 30 | 31 | 30 |
| SEPT | 23 | 22 | 22 | 27 | 27 | 28 |
| OCT | 16 | 15 | 14 | 22 | 21 | 22 |
| NOV | 12 | 8 | 6 | 16 | 14 | 12 |
| DEC | 9 | 10 | 5 | 15 | 18 | 10 |

Although seasonal movements are generally predictable, there can be large inter-annual variability in arrival time and days present in inland waters from spring through fall, with late arrivals and fewer days present in recent years (Hanson and Emmons 2010; The Whale Museum unpubl. data). For example, K pod has had variable occurrence in June ranging from 0 days of occurrence in inland waters to over 25 days (**Figure 14**). Fewer observed days in inland waters likely indicates changes in their prey availability (i.e., abundance, distribution and accessibility). During fall and early winter, Southern Resident pods, and J pod in particular, expand their routine movements into Puget Sound, likely to take advantage of chum and Chinook salmon runs (Hanson et al. 2010, Osborne 1999).

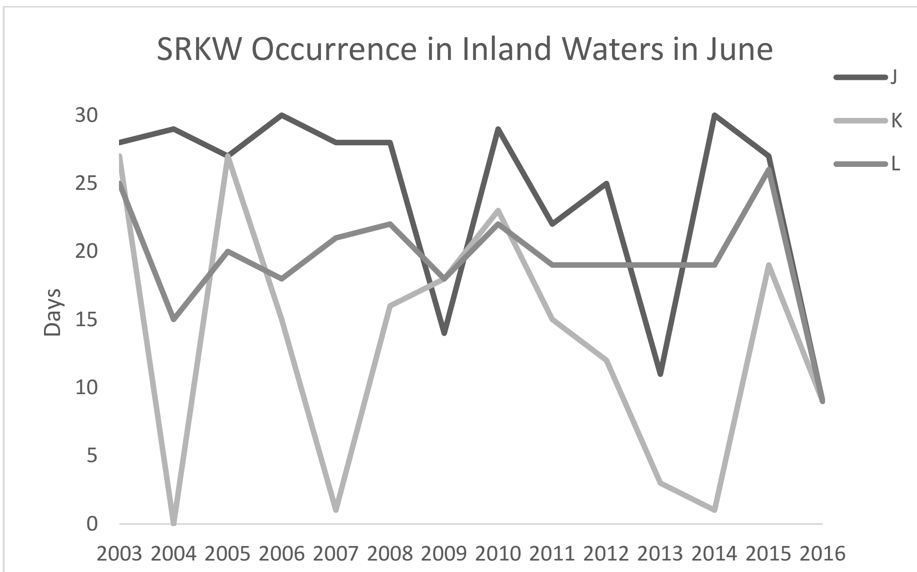



**Figure 14.** Number of days of SRKW occurrence in inland waters number in June for each year from 2003 to 2016 (data from The Whale Museum).

In recent years, several sightings and acoustic detections of Southern Residents have been obtained off the Washington and Oregon coasts in the winter and spring (Hanson et al. 2010, Hanson et al. 2013, NWFSC unpubl. data). Satellite-linked tag deployments have also provided more data on the Southern Resident killer whale movements in the winter indicating that K and L pods use the coastal waters along Washington, Oregon, and California during non-summer months. Detection rates of K and L pods on the passive acoustic recorders indicate Southern Residents occur with greater frequency off the Columbia River and Westport and are most common in March (Hanson et al. 2013). J pod has also only been detected on one of seven passive acoustic recorders positioned along the outer coast (Hanson et al. 2013). The limited range of the sightings/ acoustic detections of J pod in coastal waters, the lack of coincident occurrence during the K and L pod sightings, and the results from satellite tagging in 2012–2016

(NWFSC unpubl. data) indicate J pod's limited occurrence along the outer coast and extensive occurrence in inland waters, particularly in the northern Georgia Strait.

### *Limiting Factors and Threats*

Several factors identified in the final recovery plan for Southern Residents may be limiting recovery. These are quantity and quality of prey, toxic chemicals that accumulate in top predators, and disturbance from sound and vessels. Oil spills are also a risk factor. It is likely that multiple threats are acting together to impact the whales. Modeling exercises have attempted to identify which threats are most significant to survival and recovery (Lacy et al. 2017) and available data suggests that all of the threats are potential limiting factors (NMFS 2008).

*Quantity and Quality of Prey*

Southern Resident killer whales consume a variety of fish species (22 species) and one species of squid (Ford et al. 1998; Ford 2000; Ford and Ellis 2006; Hanson et al. 2010; Ford et al. 2016), but salmon are identified as their primary prey. Southern Residents are the subject of ongoing research, including direct observation, scale and tissue sampling of prey remains, and fecal sampling. The diet data indicate that the whales are consuming mostly larger (i.e., older) Chinook salmon. Chinook salmon is their primary prey despite the much lower abundance in some areas and during certain time periods in comparison to other salmonids, for mechanisms that remain unknown but factors of potential importance include the species' large size, high fat and energy content, and year-round occurrence in the whales' geographic range. Chinook salmon have the highest value of total energy content compared to other salmonids because of their larger body size and higher energy density (kcal/kg) (O'Neill et al. 2014). For example, in order for a killer whale to obtain the total energy value of one Chinook salmon, they would need to consume approximately 2.7 coho, 3.1 chum, 3.1 sockeye, or 6.4 pink salmon (O'Neill et al. 2014). Recent research suggests that killer whales are capable of detecting, localizing and recognizing Chinook salmon through their ability to distinguish Chinook echo structure as different from other salmon (Au et al. 2010).

Scale and tissue sampling from May to September in inland waters of WA and B.C. indicate that their diet consists of a high percentage of Chinook salmon (monthly proportions as high as >90%) (Hanson et al. 2010; Ford et al. 2016). Genetic analysis of the Hanson et al. (2010) samples indicate that when Southern Residents are in inland waters from May to September, they consume Chinook stocks that originate from regions including the Fraser River (including Upper Fraser, Mid Fraser, Lower Fraser, North Thompson, South Thompson and Lower Thompson), Puget Sound (North and South Puget Sound), the Central British Columbia Coast and West and East Vancouver Island.

DNA quantification methods are used to estimate the proportion of different prey species in the diet from fecal samples (Deagle et al. 2005). Recently, Ford et al. (2016) confirmed the importance of Chinook salmon to the Southern Residents in the summer months using DNA sequencing from whale feces. Salmon and steelhead made up to 98% of the inferred diet, of which almost 80% were Chinook salmon. Coho salmon and steelhead are also found in the diet in spring and fall months when Chinook salmon are less abundant. Specifically, coho salmon contribute to over 40% of the diet in late summer, which is evidence of prey shifting at the end of summer towards coho salmon (Ford et al. 1998; Ford and Ellis 2006; Hanson et al. 2010; Ford et al. 2016). Less than 3% each of chum salmon, sockeye salmon, and steelhead were observed in fecal DNA samples collected in the summer months (May through September). Prey remains and fecal samples collected in inland waters during October through December indicate Chinook and chum salmon are primary contributors of the whale's diet (NWFSC unpubl. data).

Observations of whales overlapping with salmon runs (Wiles 2004; Zamon et al. 2007; Krahn et al. 2009) and collection of prey and fecal samples have also occurred in coastal waters in the winter months. Preliminary analysis of prey remains and fecal samples sampled during the winter and spring in coastal waters indicated the majority of prey samples were Chinook salmon, with a smaller number of steelhead, chum salmon, and halibut (NWFSC unpubl. data). The occurrence of K and L pods off the Columbia River in March suggests the importance of Columbia River spring runs of Chinook salmon in their diet (Hanson et al. 2013). Chinook genetic stock identification from samples collected in winter and spring in coastal waters included 12 U.S. west coast stocks, and over half the Chinook salmon consumed originated in the Columbia River (NWFSC unpubl. data). Columbia River, Central Valley, Puget Sound, and Fraser River Chinook salmon comprise over 90% of the whales' coastal Chinook salmon diet (NWFSC unpubl. data).

Over the past decade, some Chinook salmon stocks within the range of the whales have had relatively high abundance (e.g. WA/OR coastal stocks, some Columbia River stocks), whereas other stocks originating in the more northern and southern ends of the whales' range (e.g. most Fraser stocks, Northern and Central B.C. stocks, Georgia Strait, Puget Sound, and Central Valley) have declined. Changing ocean conditions driven by climate change may influence ocean survival of Chinook and other Pacific salmon, further affecting the prey available to Southern Residents.

Currently, hatchery production is a significant component of the salmon prey base returning to watersheds within the range of Southern Resident killer whales (Barnett-Johnson et al. 2007; NMFS 2008e). Although hatchery production has contributed some offset of the historical declines in the abundance of natural-origin salmon within the range of the whales, hatcheries also pose risks to natural-origin salmon populations (Nickelson et al. 1986; Ford 2002; Levin and Williams 2002; Naish et al. 2007). Healthy natural-origin salmon populations are important to the long-term maintenance of prey populations available to Southern Residents because it is uncertain whether a hatchery dominated mix of stocks is sustainable indefinitely and because hatchery fish can differ, relative to natural-origin Chinook salmon, for example, in size and hence caloric value and in availability/migration location and timing. However, the release of hatchery fish has not been identified as a threat to the survival or persistence of Southern Residents. It is possible that hatchery produced fish may benefit this endangered population of whales by enhancing prey availability as scarcity of prey is a primary threat to Southern Resident killer whale survival and hatchery fish often contribute to the salmon stocks consumed (Hanson et al. 2010).

*Nutritional Limitation and Body Condition*

When prey is scarce, Southern Residents likely spend more time foraging than when prey is plentiful. Increased energy expenditure and prey limitation can cause poor body condition and nutritional stress. Nutritional stress is the condition of being unable to acquire adequate energy and nutrients from prey resources and as a chronic condition, can lead to reduced body size of individuals and to lower reproductive and survival rates of a population (Trites and Donnelly 2003). During periods of nutritional stress and poor body condition, cetaceans lose adipose tissue behind the cranium, displaying a condition known as "peanut-head" in extreme cases (Pettis et al. 2004, Bradford et al. 2012, Joblon et al. 2014). Between 1994 and 2008, 13 Southern Resident killer whales were observed from boats to have a pronounced "peanut-head"; and all but two subsequently died (Durban et al. 2009; Center for Whale Research, unpublished data). None of the whales that died were subsequently recovered, and therefore definitive cause of death could not be identified. Both females and males across a range of ages were found in poor body condition.

Since 2008, NOAA's SWFSC has used aerial photogrammetry to assess the body condition and health of Southern Resident killer whales, initially in collaboration with the Center for Whale Research and, more recently, with the Vancouver Aquarium and SR[3]. Aerial photogrammetry studies have provided finer resolution for detecting poor condition, even before it manifests in "peanut heads" that are observable from boats. Annual aerial surveys of the population from 2013-2017 (with exception of 2014) have detected declines in condition before the death of seven Southern Residents (L52 and J8 as reported in Fearnbach et al. 2018; J14, J2, J28, J54, and J52 as reported in Durban et al. 2017), including five of the six most recent mortalities (Trites and Rosen 2018). These data have provided evidence of a general decline in Southern Resident killer whale body condition since 2008, and documented members of J pod being in poorer body condition in May compared to September (at least in 2016 and 2017) (Trites and Rosen 2018).

Although body condition in whales can be influenced by a number of factors, including prey availability, disease, physiological or life history status, and may vary by season and across years, prey limitation is the most likely cause of observed changes in body condition in wild mammalian populations (Matkin et al. 2017). It is possible that poor nutrition could contribute to mortality through a variety of mechanisms. To demonstrate how this is possible, we reference studies that have demonstrated the effects of energetic stress (caused by incremental increases in energy expenditures or incremental reductions in available energy) on adult females and juveniles, which have been studied extensively (e.g., adult females: Gamel et al. 2005, Schaefer et al. 1996, Daan et al. 1996, juveniles: Noren et al. 2009a, Trites and Donnelly 2003). Small, incremental increases in energy demands should have the same effect on an animal's energy budget as small, incremental reductions in available energy, such as one would expect from reductions in prey. Ford and Ellis (2006) report that resident killer whales engage in prey sharing about 76% of the time. Prey sharing presumably would distribute more evenly the effects of prey limitation across individuals of the population than would otherwise be the case (i.e., if the most successful foragers did not share with other individuals). Therefore, although cause of death for most individuals that disappear from the population is unknown, poor nutrition could occur in multiple individuals as opposed to only unsuccessful foragers, contributing to additional mortality in this population.

*Toxic Chemicals*

Various adverse health effects in humans, laboratory animals, and wildlife have been associated with exposures to persistent pollutants. These pollutants have the ability to cause endocrine disruption, reproductive disruption or failure, immunotoxicity, neurotoxicity, neurobehavioral disruption, and cancer (Reijnders 1986, de Swart et al. 1996, Subramanian et al. 1987, de Boer et al. 2000; Reddy et al. 2001, Schwacke et al. 2002; Darnerud 2003; Legler and Brouwer 2003; Viberg et al. 2003; Ylitalo et al. 2005; Fonnum et al. 2006; Viberg et al. 2006; Darnerud 2008; Legler 2008; Bonefeld-Jørgensen et al. 2011). Southern Residents are exposed to a mixture of pollutants, some of which may interact synergistically and enhance toxicity, influencing their health. High levels of these pollutants have been measured in blubber biopsy samples from Southern Residents (Ross et al. 2000; Krahn et al. 2007; Krahn et al. 2009), and more recently, these pollutants were measured in fecal samples collected from Southern Residents providing another potential opportunity to evaluate exposure to these pollutants (Lundin et al. 2015; Lundin et al. 2016).

Killer whales are exposed to persistent pollutants primarily through their diet. For example, Chinook salmon contain higher levels of some persistent pollutants than other salmon species, but only limited information is available for pollutant levels in Chinook salmon (Krahn et al. 2007; O'Neill and West 2009; Veldhoen et al. 2010; Mongillo et al. 2016). These harmful pollutants, through consumption of prey species that contain these pollutants, are stored in the killer whale's blubber and can later be released; when the pollutants are released, they are redistributed to other tissues when the whales metabolize the blubber in response to food shortages or reduced acquisition of food energy that could occur for a variety of other reasons. The release of pollutants can also occur during gestation or lactation. Once the pollutants mobilize in to circulation, they have the potential to cause a toxic response. Therefore, nutritional stress from reduced Chinook salmon populations may act synergistically with high pollutant levels in Southern Residents and result in adverse health effects.

In April 2015, NMFS hosted a 2-day Southern Resident killer whale health workshop to assess the causes of decreased survival and reproduction in the killer whales. Following the workshop, a list of potential action items to better understand what is causing decreased reproduction and increased mortality in this population was generated and then reviewed and prioritized to produce the Priorities Report (NMFS 2015c). The report also provides prioritized opportunities to establish important baseline information on Southern Resident and reference populations to better assess negative impacts of future health risks, as well as positive impacts of mitigation strategies on Southern Resident killer whale health.

*Disturbance from Vessels and Sound*

Vessels have the potential to affect killer whales through the physical presence and activity of the vessel, increased underwater sound levels generated by boat engines, or a combination of these factors. Vessel strikes are rare, but do occur and can result in injury or mortality (Gaydos and Raverty 2007). In addition to vessels, underwater sound can be generated by a variety of other human activities, such as dredging, drilling, construction, seismic testing, and sonar (Richardson et al. 1995; Gordon and Moscrop 1996; National Research Council 2003). Impacts from these sources can range from serious injury and mortality to changes in behavior. In other cetaceans, hormonal changes indicative of stress have been recorded in response to intense sound exposure (Romano et al. 2003). Chronic stress is known to induce harmful physiological conditions including lowered immune function, in terrestrial mammals and likely does so in cetaceans (Gordon and Moscrop 1996).

Killer whales rely on their highly developed acoustic sensory system for navigating, locating prey, and communicating with other individuals. While in inland waters of Washington and British Columbia, Southern Resident killer whales are the principal target species for the commercial whale watch industry (Hoyt 2001; O'Connor et al. 2009) and encounter a variety of other vessels in their urban environment (e.g., recreational, fishing, ferries, military, shipping). Several main threats from vessels include direct vessel strikes, the masking of echolocation and communication signals by anthropogenic sound, and behavioral changes (NMFS 2008). There is a growing body of evidence documenting effects from vessels on small cetaceans and other marine mammals (NMFS 2010c; NMFS 2016f; NMFS in press). Research has shown that the whales spend more time traveling and performing surface active behaviors and less time foraging in the presence of all vessel types, including kayaks, and that noise from motoring vessels up to 400 meters away has the potential to affect the echolocation abilities of foraging whales (Holt 2008; Lusseau et al. 2009; Noren et al. 2009; Williams et al. 2010b). Individual energy balance may be impacted when vessels are present because of the combined increase in energetic costs resulting from changes in whale activity with the decrease in prey consumption resulting from reduced foraging opportunities (Williams et al. 2006; Lusseau et al. 2009; Noren et al. 2009a; Noren et al. 2012).

At the time of the whales' listing under the ESA, NMFS reviewed existing protections for the whales and developed recovery actions, including vessel regulations, to address the threat of vessels to killer whales. NMFS concluded it was necessary and advisable to adopt regulations to protect killer whales from disturbance and sound associated with vessels, to support recovery of Southern Resident killer whales. Federal vessel regulations were established in 2011 to prohibit vessels from approaching killer whales within 200 yards (182.9 m) and from parking in the path of the whales within 400 yards (365.8 m). These regulations apply to all vessels in inland waters of Washington State with exemptions to maintain safe navigation and for government vessels in the course of official duties, ships in the shipping lanes, research vessels under permit, and vessels lawfully engaged in commercial or treaty Indian fishing that are actively setting, retrieving, or closely tending fishing gear (76 FR 20870, April, 14, 2011).

In the final rule, NMFS committed to reviewing the vessel regulations to evaluate effectiveness, and also to study the impact of the regulations on the viability of the local whale watch industry. In March 2013, NMFS held a killer whale protection workshop[16] to review the current vessel regulations, guidelines, and associated analyses; review monitoring, boater education, and enforcement efforts; review available industry and economic information and identify data gaps; and provide a forum for stakeholder input to explore next steps for addressing vessel effects on killer whales.

In December 2017, NOAA Fisheries completed a technical memorandum evaluating the effectiveness of regulations adopted in 2011 to help protect endangered Southern Resident killer whales from the impacts of vessel traffic and noise (Ferrara et al. 2017). In the assessment, Ferrara et al. (2017) used five measures: education and outreach efforts, enforcement, vessel compliance, biological effectiveness, and economic impacts. For each measure, the trends and observations in the 5 years leading up to the regulations (2006-2010) were compared to the trends and observations in the 5 years following the regulations (2011-2015). The memo finds that the regulations have benefited the whales by reducing impacts without causing economic harm to the commercial whale-watching industry or local communities. The authors also find room for improvement in terms of increasing awareness and enforcement of the regulations, which would help improve compliance and further reduce biological impacts to the whales.

*Oil Spills*

In the Northwest, Southern Resident killer whales are the most vulnerable marine mammal population to the risks imposed by an oil spill due to their small population size, strong site fidelity to areas with high oil spill risk, large group size, late reproductive maturity, low reproductive rate, and specialized diet, among other attributes (Jarvela-Rosenberger et al. 2017). Oil spills have occurred in the range of Southern Residents in the past, and there is potential for spills in the future. Oil can be discharged into the marine environment in any number of ways, including shipping accidents, refineries and associated production facilities, and pipelines. Despite many improvements in spill prevention since the late 1980s, much of the region inhabited by Southern Residents remains at risk from serious spills because of the heavy volume of shipping traffic and proximity to petroleum refining centers in inland waters. Numerous oil tankers transit through the inland waters range of Southern Residents throughout the year. The magnitude of risk posed by oil discharges in the action area is difficult to precisely quantify. The total volume of oil spills declined from 2007 to 2013, but then increased from 2013 to 2017 (WDOE 2017). The percent of potential high-risk vessels that were boarded and inspected between 2009 to 2017 also declined (from 26% inspected in 2009 to 12.2% by 2017) (WDOE 2017)

Repeated ingestion of petroleum hydrocarbons by killer whales likely causes adverse effects; however, long-term consequences are poorly understood. In marine mammals, acute exposure to petroleum products can cause changes in behavior and reduced activity, inflammation of the mucous membranes, lung congestion and disease, pneumonia, liver disorders, neurological

[16] The presentations and supporting documents (including workshop notes) can be found at http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/marine_mammals/killer_whale/vessel_regulations.html.

damage, adrenal toxicity, reduced reproductive rates, and changes in immune function (Geraci and St. Aubin 1990; Schwacke et al. 2013; Venn-Watson et al. 2015; de Guise et al. 2017; Kellar et al. 2017), potentially death and long-term effects on population viability (Matkin et al. 2008; Ziccardi et al. 2015). For example, 122 cetaceans stranded or were reported dead within 5 months following the Deepwater Horizon spill in the Gulf of Mexico (Ziccardi et al. 2015). An additional 785 cetaceans were found stranded from November 2010 to June 2013, which was declared an Unusual Mortality Event (Ziccardi et al. 2015). In addition, oil spills have the potential to adversely impact habitat and prey populations, and, therefore, may adversely affect Southern Residents by reducing food availability.

### 2.2.2 Status of Critical Habitat

We review the status of designated critical habitat affected by the proposed actions by examining the condition and trends of essential physical and biological features throughout the designated area. These features are essential to the conservation of the listed species because they support one or more of the species' life stages (e.g., sites with conditions that support spawning, rearing, migration and foraging).

For salmon and steelhead, NMFS ranked watersheds within designated critical habitat at the scale of the fifth-field hydrologic unit code (HUC5) in terms of the conservation value they provide to each listed species they support[17]; the conservation rankings are high, medium, or low. To determine the conservation value of each watershed to species viability, NMFS' critical habitat analytical review teams (CHARTs; NMFS 2005a) evaluated the quantity and quality of habitat features (for example, spawning gravels, wood and water condition, side channels), the relationship of the area compared to other areas within the species' range, and the significance to the species of the population occupying that area. Thus, even a location that has poor quality of habitat could be ranked with a high conservation value if it were essential due to factors such as limited availability (e.g., one of a very few spawning areas), a unique contribution to the population it served (e.g., a population at the extreme end of geographic distribution), or the fact that it serves another important role (e.g., obligate area for migration to upstream spawning areas).

#### 2.2.2.1 Puget Sound Chinook

Critical habitat for the Puget Sound Chinook ESU was designated on September 2, 2005 (70 FR 52630). It includes estuarine areas and specific river reaches associated with the following subbasins: Strait of Georgia, Nooksack, Upper Skagit, Sauk, Lower Skagit, Stillaguamish, Skykomish, Snoqualmie, Snohomish, Lake Washington, Duwamish, Puyallup, Nisqually, Deschutes, Skokomish, Hood Canal, Kitsap, and Dungeness/Elwha (70 FR 52630). The designation also includes some nearshore areas extending from extreme high water out to a depth of 30 meters and adjacent to watersheds occupied by the 22 populations because of their importance to rearing and migration for Chinook salmon and their prey, but does not otherwise

[17] The conservation value of a site depends upon "(1) the importance of the populations associated with a site to the ESU [or DPS] conservation, and (2) the contribution of that site to the conservation of the population through demonstrated or potential productivity of the area" (NOAA Fisheries 2005).

include offshore marine areas. There are 61 watersheds within the range of this ESU. Twelve watersheds received a low rating, nine received a medium rating, and 40 received a high rating of conservation value to the ESU (NMFS 2005a). Nineteen nearshore marine areas also received a rating of high conservation value. Of the 4,597 miles of stream and nearshore habitat eligible for designation, 3,852 miles are designated critical habitat while the remaining 745 miles were excluded because they are lands controlled by the military, overlap with Indian lands, or the benefits of exclusion outweighed the benefits of designation (70 FR 52630). It does not include marine or open ocean waters. http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/fr/fr70-52630.pdf. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/gis_maps/maps/salmon_steelhead/critical_habitat/chin/chinook_pug.pdf.

Physical or biological factors involve those sites and habitat components that support one or more life stages, including general categories of: (1) water quantity, quality, and forage to support spawning, rearing, individual growth, and maturation; (2) areas free of obstruction and excessive predation; and (3) the type and amount of structure and rugosity that supports juvenile growth and mobility.

Major management activities affecting PBFs are forestry, grazing, agriculture, channel/bank modifications, road building/maintenance, urbanization, sand and gravel mining, dams, irrigation impoundments and withdrawals, river, estuary and ocean traffic, wetland loss, and forage fish/species harvest. NMFS has completed several section 7 consultations on large scale habitat projects affecting listed species in Puget Sound. Among these are the Washington State Forest Practices Habitat Conservation Plan (NMFS 2006b), and consultations on Washington State Water Quality Standards (NMFS 2008b), the National Flood Insurance Program (NMFS 2008c), the Washington State Department of Transportation Preservation, Improvement and Maintenance Activities (NMFS 2013a), and the Elwha River Fish Restoration Plan (Ward et al. 2008). These documents provide a more detailed overview of the status of critical habitat in Puget Sound and are incorporated by reference here. Effects of these activities on habitat, including primarily critical habitat, are also addressed in Section 2.3.1 and 2.4.1.

#### 2.2.2.2 Puget Sound Steelhead

Critical habitat for the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS was proposed for designation on January 14, 2013 (78 Fed. Reg. 2726). On February 12, 2016, NMFS announced the final critical habitat designation for Puget Sound steelhead along with the critical habitat designation for Lower Columbia River coho salmon (81 FR 9252, February 24, 2016). The specific areas designated for Puget Sound steelhead include approximately 2,031 miles of freshwater and estuarine habitat in Puget Sound, Washington. NMFS excluded areas where the conservation benefit to the species was relatively low compared to the economic impacts of inclusion. Approximately 138 stream miles were excluded from the designation based on this criterion. Approximately 1,361 stream miles covered by four habitat conservation plans and approximately 70 stream miles on tribal lands were also excluded because the benefits of exclusion outweighed the benefits of designation.

There are 72 HUC5 watersheds occupied by Puget Sound steelhead within the range of this DPS.

NMFS also designated approximately 90 stream miles of critical habitat on the Kitsap Peninsula that were originally proposed for exclusion, but, after considering public comments, determined that the benefits of exclusion did not outweigh the benefits of designation. The final designation also includes areas in the upper Elwha River where the recent removal of two dams now provides access to areas that were previously unoccupied by Puget Sound steelhead at the time of listing but are essential to the conservation of the DPS.

Puget Sound steelhead also occupy marine waters in Puget Sound and vast areas of the Pacific Ocean where they forage during their juvenile and subadult life phases before returning to spawn in their natal streams (NMFS 2012a). The NMFS (NMFS 2012b), could not identify "specific areas" within the marine and ocean range that meet the definition of critical habitat. Instead, NMFS considered the adjacent marine areas in Puget Sound when designating steelhead freshwater and estuarine critical habitat. Critical habitat information can be found online at: http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/protected_species/salmon_steelhead/salmon_and_steelhead_listings/steelhead/puget_sound/puget_sound_steelhead_proposed_critical_habitat_supporting_information.html.

Physical or biological factors for Puget Sound steelhead involve those sites and habitat components that support one or more life stages, including general categories of: (1) water quantity, quality, and forage to support spawning, rearing, individual growth, and maturation; (2) areas free of obstruction and excessive predation; and (3) the type and amount of structure and complexity that supports juvenile growth and mobility.

Major management activities affecting PBFs are forestry, grazing, agriculture, channel/bank modifications, road building/maintenance, urbanization, sand and gravel mining, dams, irrigation impoundments and withdrawals, river, estuary and ocean traffic, wetland loss, and forage fish/species harvest. NMFS has completed several section 7 consultations on large scale habitat projects affecting listed species in Puget Sound. Among these are the Washington State Forest Practices Habitat Conservation Plan (NMFS 2006b), and consultations on Washington State Water Quality Standards (NMFS 2008b), the National Flood Plain Insurance Program (NMFS 2008c), the Washington State Department of Transportation Preservation, Improvement and Maintenance Activities (NMFS 2013a), and the Elwha River Fish Restoration Plan (Ward et al. 2008). In 2012, the Puget Sound Action Plan was also developed and can be found online at: http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/habitat/conservation/puget_sound_action_plan.html. Several federal agencies (e.g., EPA, NOAA Fisheries, the Corps of Engineers, NRCS, USGS, FEMA, and USFWS) are collaborating on an enhanced approach to implement the Puget Sound Action Plan. These documents provide a more detailed overview of the status of critical habitat in Puget Sound and are incorporated by reference here. Effects of these activities on habitat, including primarily critical habitat, are also addressed in Section 2.3.1 and 2.4.1.

#### 2.2.2.3 Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish

Critical habitat was designated for all three species of rockfish in 2014 under section 4(a)(3)(A) of the ESA (79 FR 68041, November 13, 2014), and critical habitat for canary rockfish was removed when the species was delisted on January 23, 2017 (82 FR 7711). The specific areas designated for bocaccio include approximately 1,083.11 square miles (1,743.10 sq. km) of deep water (< 98.4 feet [30 m]) and nearshore (> 98.4 feet [30 m]) marine habitat in Puget Sound. The specific areas designated for yelloweye rockfish include 438.45 square miles (705.62 sq. km) of deepwater marine habitat in Puget Sound, all of which overlap with areas designated for bocaccio. Approximately 46 percent of designated critical habitat for adult yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio overlaps with areas where the halibut fishery in Puget Sound occurs. Section 3(5)(A) of the ESA defines critical habitat as "(i) the specific areas within the geographical area occupied by the species, at the time it is listed . . . on which are found those physical or biological features (I) essential to the conservation of the species and (II) which may require special management considerations or protection; and (ii) specific areas outside the geographical area occupied by the species at the time it is listed . . . upon a determination by the Secretary that such areas are essential for the conservation of the species."

Critical habitat is not designated in areas outside of U.S. jurisdiction; therefore, although waters in Canada are part of the DPSs' ranges for each species, critical habitat was not designated in that area. We also excluded 13 of the 14 Department of Defense Restricted Areas, Operating Areas, and Danger Zones, and waters adjacent to tribal lands from the critical habitat designation.

Based on the best available scientific information regarding natural history and habitat needs, we developed a list of physical and biological features essential to the conservation of adult and juvenile yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio, and relevant to determining whether proposed specific areas are consistent with the above regulations and the ESA section (3)(5)(A) definition of "critical habitat." The physical or biological features essential to the conservation of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio fall into major categories reflecting key life history phases.

Adult bocaccio and adult and juvenile yelloweye rockfish: We designated sites deeper than 98 feet (30 m) that possess (or are adjacent to) areas of complex bathymetry. These features are essential to conservation because they support growth, survival, reproduction, and feeding opportunities by providing the structure to avoid predation, seek food, and persist for decades. Several attributes of these sites affect the quality of the area and are useful in considering the conservation value of the feature in determining whether the feature may require special management considerations or protection, and in evaluating the effects of a Proposed Action in a section 7 consultation if the specific area containing the site is designated as critical habitat. These attributes include: (1) quantity, quality, and availability of prey species to support individual growth, survival, reproduction, and feeding opportunities; (2) water quality and sufficient levels of dissolved oxygen to support growth, survival, reproduction, and feeding opportunities; and (3) structure and rugosity to support feeding opportunities and predator avoidance.

Juvenile bocaccio only: Juvenile settlement sites located in the nearshore with substrates such as sand, rock, and/or cobble compositions that also support kelp. These features are essential for conservation because they enable forage opportunities and refuge from predators, and enable behavioral and physiological changes needed for juveniles to occupy deeper adult habitats. Several attributes of these sites affect the quality of the area and are useful in considering the conservation value of the feature in determining whether the feature may require special management considerations or protection, and in evaluating the effects of a Proposed Action in a section 7 consultation if the specific area containing the site is designated as critical habitat. These attributes include: (1) quantity, quality, and availability of prey species to support individual growth, survival, reproduction, and feeding opportunities; and (2) water quality and sufficient levels of dissolved oxygen to support growth, survival, reproduction, and feeding opportunities.

Regulations for designating critical habitat at 50 C.F.R. § 424.12(b) state that the agencies shall consider physical and biological features essential to the conservation of a given species that "may require special management considerations or protection." Joint NMFS and USFWS regulations at 50 C.F.R. § 424.02(j) define "special management considerations or protection" to mean "any methods or procedures useful in protecting physical and biological features of the environment for the conservation of listed species." We identified a number of activities that may affect the physical and biological features essential to yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio such that special management considerations or protection may be required. Major categories of such activities include: (1) nearshore development and in-water construction (e.g., beach armoring, pier construction, jetty or harbor construction, pile driving construction, residential and commercial construction); (2) dredging and disposal of dredged material; (3) pollution and runoff; (4) underwater construction and operation of alternative energy hydrokinetic projects (tidal or wave energy projects) and cable laying; (5) kelp harvest; (6) fisheries; (7) non-indigenous species introduction and management; (8) artificial habitat creation; (9) research activities; (10) aquaculture, and (11) activities that lead to global climate change.

Overall, the status of critical habitat in the nearshore is impacted in many areas by the degradation from coastal development and pollution. The status of deep water critical habitat is impacted by remaining derelict fishing gear and degraded water quality among other factors. The input of pollutants affects water quality, sediment quality, and food resources in the nearshore and deep water areas of critical habitat.

#### 2.2.2.4 Southern Resident Killer Whale

Critical habitat for the Southern Resident killer whale DPS was designated on November 29, 2006 (71 FR 69054). Critical habitat includes approximately 2,560 square miles of inland waters of Washington in three specific areas: 1) the Summer Core Area in Haro Strait and waters around the San Juan Islands; 2) Puget Sound; and 3) the Strait of Juan de Fuca. On January 21, 2014, NMFS received a petition requesting that we revise critical habitat citing recent information on the whales' habitat use along the West Coast of the United States. Center for Biological Diversity proposes that the critical habitat designation be revised and expanded to include areas of the Pacific Ocean between Cape Flattery, WA, and Point Reyes, CA, extending approximately 47 miles (76 km) offshore. NMFS published a 90 day finding on April 25, 2014 (79 FR 22933) that the petition contained substantial information to support the proposed measure and that NMFS would further consider the action. We also solicited information from the public. Based upon our review of public comments and the available information, NMFS issued a 12 month finding on February 24, 2015 (80 FR 9682) describing how we intended to proceed with the requested revision, which is currently in development.

*Water Quality*

Water quality in Puget Sound, in general, is degraded as described in the Puget Sound Partnership 2016 Action Agenda and Comprehensive Plan (Puget Sound Partnership 2016). For example, toxicants in Puget Sound persist and build up in marine organisms including Southern Residents and their prey resources, despite bans in the 1970s of some harmful substances and cleanup efforts. The primary concern for direct effects on whales from water quality is oil spills, although oil spills can also have long-lasting impacts on other habitat features. The Environmental Protection Agency and U.S. Coast Guard oversee the Oil Pollution Prevention regulations promulgated under the authority of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act. There is a Northwest Area Contingency Plan, developed by the Northwest Area Committee, which serves as the primary guidance document for oil spill response in Washington and Oregon. In 2017, the Washington State Department of Ecology published a new Spill Prevention, Preparedness, and Response Program Annual Report describing the Spills Program as well as the performance measures from 2007 – 2017 (WDOE 2017).

*Prey Quantity, Quality, and Availability*

As discussed above under Limiting Factors and Threats, most wild salmon stocks throughout the Northwest are at fractions of their historic levels. Beginning in the early 1990s, 28 ESUs and DPSs of salmon and steelhead in Washington, Oregon, Idaho, and California were listed as threatened or endangered under the ESA. Historically, overfishing, habitat losses, and hatchery practices were major causes of decline. Poor ocean conditions over the past two decades have reduced populations already weakened by the degradation and loss of freshwater and estuary habitat, fishing, hydropower system management, and hatchery practices. While wild salmon stocks have declined in many areas, hatchery production has been generally strong.

Contaminants and pollution also affect the quality of Southern Resident killer whale prey in Puget Sound. Contaminants enter marine waters and sediment from numerous sources, but are typically concentrated near areas of high human population and industrialization. Once in the environment these substances proceed up the food chain, accumulating in long-lived top predators like Southern Resident killer whales. Chemical contamination of prey is a potential threat to Southern Resident killer whale critical habitat, despite the enactment of modern pollution controls in recent decades, which were successful in reducing, but not eliminating, the presence of many contaminants in the environment. The size of Chinook salmon is also an important aspect of prey quality (i.e., Southern Residents primarily consume large Chinook, as discussed above), and any reduction in Chinook salmon size is therefore a threat to their critical habitat. In addition, vessels and sound may reduce the effective zone of echolocation and reduce availability of fish for the whales in their critical habitat (Holt 2008).

*Passage*

Southern Residents are highly mobile and use a variety of areas for foraging and other activities, as well as for traveling between these areas. Human activities can interfere with movements of the whales and impact their passage. In particular, vessels may present obstacles to whale passage, causing the whales to swim further and change direction more often, which can increase energy expenditure for whales and impacts foraging behavior (review in NMFS 2010, Ferrara et al. 2017).

## 2.3 Action Area

"Action area" means all areas to be affected directly or indirectly by the Federal action and not merely the immediate area involved in the action (50 CFR 402.02). For the purposes of this opinion, the action area (**Figure 15**) includes all marine and freshwater fishing areas in Puget Sound and the western Strait of Juan de Fuca to Cape Flattery within the United States; and certain high seas and territorial waters westward from the U.S. coast between 48 and 49 degrees N. latitude during the period of Fraser Panel control (a detailed description of U.S. Panel Area waters can be found at 50 CFR 300.91, Definitions). Within this area, U.S. Fraser Panel fisheries occur in the Strait of Juan de Fuca region (treaty Indian drift net fisheries) Catch Reporting Areas 4B, 5, and 6C, and in the San Juan Islands region (treaty Indian drift net, set net, and purse seine fisheries; and non-treaty drift net, reef net, and purse seine fisheries) Catch Reporting Areas 6, 6A (treaty only), 7, and 7A. To assess the effects of the proposed actions on the Southern Resident killer whale DPS, we considered the geographic area of overlap in the marine distribution of Chinook salmon affected by the action, and the range of Southern Resident killer whales. The marine range of the salmonids overlaps with the core area of the whales' range in inland marine waters from the southern Strait of Georgia (below Vancouver and Nanaimo B.C.) to southern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca.

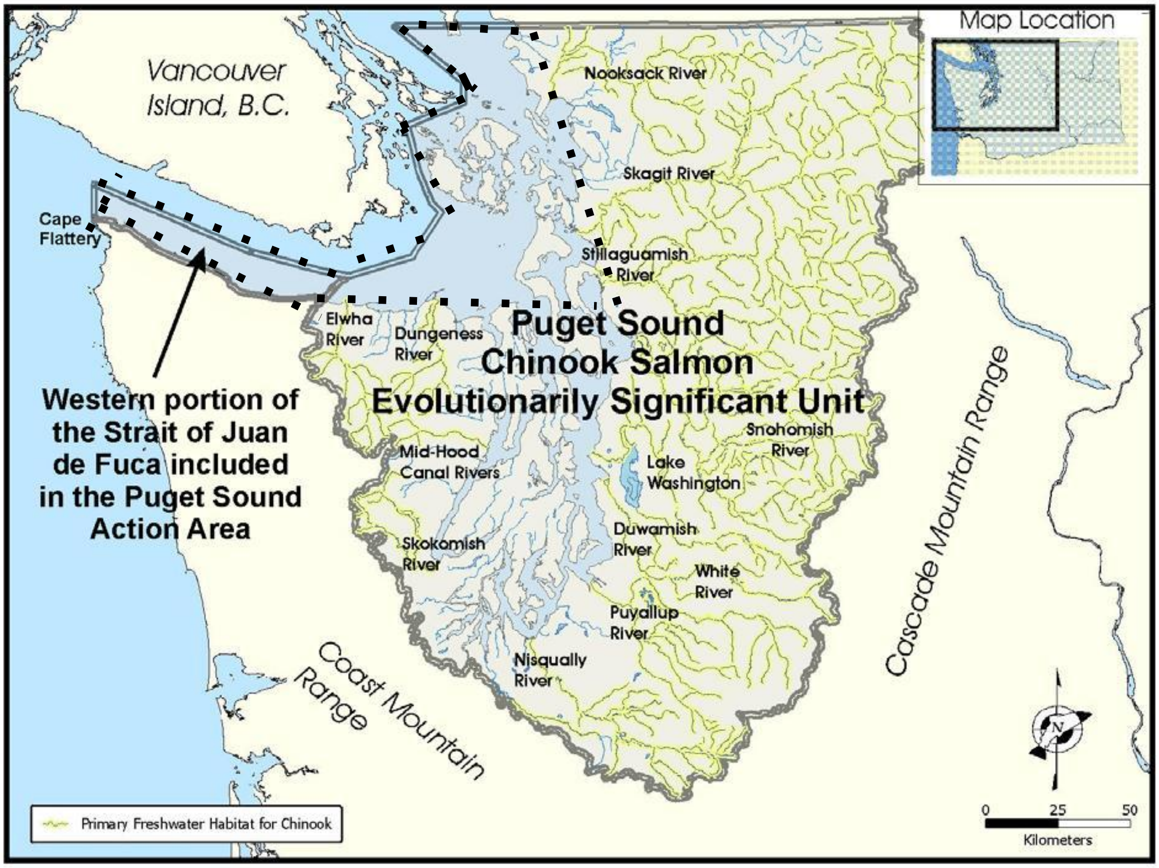



**Figure 15.** Puget Sound Action Area, which includes the Puget Sound Chinook ESU and the western portion of the Strait of Juan de Fuca in the United States. Dashed area denotes waters in U.S. Fraser Panel jurisdiction.

## 2.4 Environmental Baseline

The "environmental baseline" includes the past and present impacts of all Federal, state, or private actions and other human activities in the action area, the anticipated impacts of all proposed Federal projects in the action area that have already undergone formal or early section 7 consultation, and the impact of state or private actions which are contemporaneous with the consultation in process (50 CFR 402.02). The environmental baseline for the species affected by the proposed actions includes the effects of many activities that occur across the broad expanse of the action area considered in this opinion. The status of the species described in Section 2.2 of the biological opinion is a consequence of those effects.

NMFS recognizes the unique status of treaty Indian fisheries and their relation to the environmental baseline. Implementation of treaty Indian fishing rights involves, among other things, application of the sharing principles of *United States v. Washington*, annual calculation of allowable harvest levels and exploitation rates, the application of the "conservation necessity principle" articulated in *United States v. Washington* to the regulation of treaty Indian fisheries, and an understanding of the interaction between treaty rights and the ESA on non-treaty allocations. Exploitation rate calculations and harvest levels to which the sharing principles apply, in turn, are dependent upon various biological parameters, including the estimated run sizes for the particular year, the mix of stocks present, the allowable fisheries and the anticipated fishing effort. The treaty fishing right itself exists and must be accounted for in the environmental baseline, although the precise quantification of treaty Indian fishing rights during a particular fishing season cannot be established by a rigid formula.

If, after completing this ESA consultation, circumstances change or unexpected consequences arise that necessitate additional Federal action to avoid jeopardy determinations for ESA listed species, such action will be taken in accordance with standards, principles, and guidelines established under *United States v. Washington*, Secretarial Order 3206, and other applicable laws and policies. The conservation principles of *United States v. Washington* will guide the determination of appropriate fishery responses if additional harvest constraints become necessary. Consistent with the September 23, 2004 Memorandum for the Heads of Executive Departments and Agencies pertaining to Government-to-Government Relationship with Tribal Governments and Executive Order 13175, Departmental and agency consultation policies guiding their implementation, and administrative guidelines developed to implement Secretarial Order 3206, these responses are to be developed through government-to-government discourse involving both technical and policy representatives of the West Coast Region and affected Indian tribes prior to finalizing a proposed course of action.

### 2.4.1 Puget Sound Chinook and Steelhead

***Climate change and other ecosystem effects***

Changes in climate and ocean conditions happen on several different time scales and have had a profound influence on distributions and abundances of marine and anadromous fishes. Evidence suggests that marine survival among salmonids fluctuates in response to 20 to 30-year cycles of climatic conditions and ocean productivity. The fluctuations in salmon survival that occur with these changes in climate conditions can also affect species that depend on salmon for prey such as Southern Resident killer whales. More detailed discussions about the likely effects of large-scale environmental variation on salmonids, including climate change, are found in Section 2.2.1 of this opinion, and biological opinions on the Snohomish Basin Salmonid Hatchery Operations (NMFS 2017e) and the implementation of the Mitchell Act (NMFS 2017g). The University of Washington Climate Impacts Group summarized the current state of knowledge of climate change and anticipated trends on Puget Sound and its environs including those that would affect salmon (Mauger et al. 2015). Warmer streams, ocean acidification, lower summer stream flows, and higher winter stream flows are projected to negatively affect salmon. The persistence of cold water "refugia" within rivers and the diversity among salmon populations will be critical in helping salmon populations adapt to future climate conditions. Similar types of effects on salmon may occur in the marine ecosystem including warmer water temperatures, loss of coastal habitat due to sea level rise, ocean acidification, and changes in water quality and freshwater inputs (Mauger et al. 2015).

## *Harvest*

### *Salmon and steelhead fisheries*

In the past, fisheries in Puget Sound were generally not managed in a manner appropriate for the conservation of naturally spawning Chinook salmon populations. Fisheries exploitation rates were in most cases too high—especially in light of the declining pre-harvest productivity of natural Chinook salmon stocks. In response, over the past several decades, the co-managers implemented strategies to manage fisheries to reduce harvest impacts and to implement harvest objectives that are more consistent with the underlying productivity of the natural populations. Time and area closures, and selective gear types are implemented to reduce catches of weak stocks and to reduce Chinook salmon and steelhead bycatch in fisheries targeting other salmon species. Other regulations, such as size limits, bag limits, mark-selective fisheries and requirements for the use of barbless hooks in all recreational fisheries are also used to achieve these objectives while providing harvest opportunities. Exploitation rates for most of the Puget Sound Chinook management units have been reduced substantially since the late 1990s compared to years prior to listing (average reduction = -33%, range = -67 to +30%)(New FRAM base period validation results, August 2017). The effect of these overall reductions in harvest has been to improve the baseline condition and help to alleviate the effect of harvest as a limiting factor. Since 2010, the state and Tribal fishery co-managers have managed Chinook mortality in Puget Sound salmon and Tribal steelhead fisheries to meet the conservation and allocation objectives described in the jointly-developed 2010-2014 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest RMP (PSIT and WDFW 2010a), and as amended in 2014 (Grayum and Anderson 2014, Redhorse 2014), 2015, 2016 and 2017 (Grayum and Unsworth 2015, Shaw 2015, Shaw 2016, Speaks 2017). The 2010-2014 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest RMP was adopted as the harvest component of the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan for the Puget Sound Chinook ESU (NMFS 2011a). Recent year exploitation rates are summarized in **Table 10 (**FRAM validation runs, August 2017**)**.

Forty percent or more of the harvest of most Puget Sound Chinook stocks occurs in salmon fisheries outside the Action Area, primarily in Canadian waters (**Table 10**). Fisheries in Canadian waters are managed under the terms of the Pacific Salmon Treaty Agreement (PST). Ocean fisheries in U.S. waters are managed by NMFS and the Pacific Fisheries Management Council under the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA), also consistent with the PST. The effects of these fisheries were assessed in previous biological opinions (NMFS 2004a; 2008d).

**Table 10.** Average 2009 to 2014 total and southern U.S. (SUS) exploitation rates (ER) for Puget Sound Chinook management units (see Table 3 for correspondence to populations). This encompasses the provisions of the most recent Pacific Salmon Treaty Chinook Annex.

| Management Unit | % of total ER in AK/CAN fisheries | SUS Exploitation Rate (PFMC and PS fisheries) | Total Exploitation Rate | Total ER Pre-listing (1992-1998) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nooksack early | 77% | 9% | 39% | 48% |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Skagit spring | 47% | 11% | 21% | 23% |
| Skagit summer/fall | 56% | 21% | 48% | 45% |
| Stillaguamish | 66% | 7% | 22% | 32% |
| Snohomish | 63% | 7% | 19% | 40% |
| Lake Washington | 46% | 17% | 30% | 43% |
| Duwamish-Green River | 41% | 21% | 35% | 49% |
| White River | 32% | 15% | 23% | 28% |
| Puyallup River | 26% | 40% | 54% | 59% |
| Nisqually River | 18% | 46% | 56%* | 75% |
| Skokomish River | 21% | 45% | 57%* | 41% |
| Mid-Hood Canal rivers | 53% | 11% | 23% | 33% |
| Dungeness River | 71% | 4% | 17% | 12% |
| Elwha River | 73% | 5% | 17% | 17% |

*Beginning in 2010, the Skokomish Chinook Management Unit was managed for 50% and the Nisqually Chinook Management Unit was managed for stepped harvest rates of 65% (2010-11) – 56% (2012-2013) – 52% (2014-2015), 50% (2016), 47% (2017).

Steelhead are caught in marine areas and in river systems throughout Puget Sound. NMFS observed that previous harvest management practices likely contributed to the historical decline of Puget Sound steelhead, but concluded in the Federal Register Notice for the listing determination (72 FR 26732, May 11, 2007) that the elimination of the direct harvest of wild steelhead in the mid-1990s has largely addressed this threat. The recent NWFSC status review update concluded that current harvest rates on natural-origin steelhead continue to decline and are unlikely to substantially reduce spawner abundance of most Puget Sound steelhead populations (NWFSC 2015).

In marine areas, the majority of fisheries target salmon species other than steelhead. However, Puget Sound treaty marine salmon fisheries encounter listed summer and winter steelhead. An annual average of 126 (hatchery and wild combined) (range 7 – 266) summer and winter steelhead were landed incidentally in treaty marine fisheries (commercial and ceremonial and subsistence) from all Puget Sound marine areas combined during the 2001/2002 to 2006/2007 time period (NMFS 2010b). An annual average of 65 (hatchery and wild combined) (range 10 – 128) summer and winter steelhead were landed incidentally in treaty marine fisheries from all Puget Sound marine areas combined during the 2008/2009 to 2015/2016 time period (WDFW and PSIT 2009-2018). Catch in tribal commercial and ceremonial and subsistence marine fisheries continues to be low. Not all tribal catch is sampled for marks so these estimates represent catch of ESA-listed steelhead, unlisted hatchery steelhead, and hatchery and natural-origin fish from Canada (James 2018b).

In marine non-treaty salmon commercial fisheries retention of steelhead is prohibited (RCW 77.12.760 1993). Encounters of steelhead in non-treaty commercial fisheries targeting other salmon species in marine areas of Puget Sound are rare. In an observer study by WDFW to estimate the incidental catch rate of steelhead in non-treaty commercial salmon fisheries, 20 steelhead were encountered in 5,058 net sets over an 18 year period (i.e., 1991 to 2008) (i.e., 1 fish annually (Jording 2010). From 2009 to 2017, 33 steelhead were encountered in 3,245 net sets estimated at 4 steelhead per year (Henry 2018). Over the 24 year observer time period from 1991 to 2017, 53 steelhead were encountered in 8,303 net sets averaging just over 2 steelhead encounters annually (Henry 2018) indicating that encounters of steelhead in non-treaty commercial salmon fisheries remain uncommon. Incidental catch of steelhead may be sampled for marks, but in most cases is not in order to return the bycatch to the water as quickly as possible (Henry 2018). As a consequence, the catch estimates include catch of ESA-listed steelhead, unlisted hatchery steelhead, and hatchery and natural-origin fish from Canada.

In marine non-treaty recreational fisheries, an annual average of 198 (range 102 – 352) hatchery summer and winter steelhead were landed incidentally from all Puget Sound marine areas combined during the 2001/2002 to 2006/2007 time period (Leland 2010). An annual average of 109 (range 15 – 213) hatchery summer and winter steelhead were landed incidentally in non-treaty marine recreational fisheries from all Puget Sound marine areas combined during the 2008/2009 to 2016/2017 time period (WDFW and PSIT 2018). The catch of steelhead in recreational fisheries has therefore declined by 45% in recent years. There is some additional mortality associated with the catch-and-release of unmarked steelhead in the recreational fishery. However, the mortality rate associated with catch-and-release is 10%, so the additional mortality is assumed to be low.

In summary, at the time of listing, during the 2001/02 to 2006/07 seasons, an average of 325 steelhead were caught in marine treaty and non-treaty commercial, ceremonial and subsistence (C&S), and recreational fisheries (i.e., 126 treaty marine; 1 non-treaty commercial; 198 non-treaty recreational). An average of 178 steelhead were caught in marine treaty and non-treaty commercial, ceremonial and subsistence, and recreational fisheries (i.e., 65 treaty marine; 4 non-treaty commercial; 109 non-treaty recreational) for the most recent time period (2007/2008 to 2016/2017) (**Table 11**). The fish caught include ESA-listed steelhead, unlisted hatchery steelhead, and hatchery and natural-origin fish from Canada. Overall, the average treaty and non-treaty catch in marine area fisheries has declined by 45% compared with the earlier period.

**Table 11.** Average marine area catch on steelhead from 2001/02 to 2006/07 and 2007/08 to 2016/17 time periods.

| | Marine Catch | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Time Period** | **Treaty commercial & C&S** | **Non-Treaty Commercial** | **Non-Treaty Recreational** | **Total** |
| 2001/02 to 2006/07 | 126 | 1 | 198 | 325 |
| 2007/08 to 2016/17 | 65 | 4 | 109 | 178 |

In Puget Sound freshwater areas, the non-treaty harvest of steelhead occurs in recreational hook-and-line fisheries targeting adipose fin-clipped hatchery summer run and winter run steelhead. Washington State prohibits the retention of natural-origin steelhead (those without a clipped adipose fin) in recreational fisheries as well. Treaty fisheries retain both natural-origin and hatchery steelhead. The treaty freshwater fisheries for winter steelhead target primarily hatchery steelhead by fishing during the early winter months when hatchery steelhead are returning to spawn and natural-origin steelhead are at low abundance. These fisheries also capture natural-origin summer run steelhead incidentally while targeting other salmon species. However, these impacts are likely low because the fisheries start well after the summer spawning period, and are located primarily in lower and mid-mainstem rivers where natural-origin summer steelhead (if present) are believed not to hold for an extended period (PSIT and WDFW 2010b). Some natural-origin late winter and summer run steelhead, including winter run kelts (repeat spawners), are intercepted in Skagit River salmon and steelhead marine and freshwater fisheries. A small number of natural-origin summer steelhead are also encountered in Nooksack River spring Chinook salmon fisheries.

On April 11, 2018 NMFS approved a joint tribal and state plan for a treaty harvest and recreational catch and release fishery for natural-origin steelhead in the Skagit River basin under the ESA 4(d) rule. (NMFS 2018a). Fishing under this plan would occur in the Skagit River and surrounding marine areas. In 2018 fishing only occurred from the time of approval until the end of the spring fishing season on April 30, 2018. In the short time the Skagit steelhead fishery was open for 2018 an estimated total of 565 wild steelhead were caught and released (Fowler 2018). In addition three hatchery steelhead were caught and kept (Fowler 2018). These low catch rates indicate a likely minimal impact to the population due to the Skagit steelhead fishery in 2018. Typically the allowable catch in fisheries covered by this plan will be determined using a tiered system based on terminal run size estimates for the Skagit River (**Table 12**). NMFS 2018a concluded that the effects of the Skagit steelhead fishery to the viability and recovery of the Puget Sound steelhead DPS would be low.

**Table 12.** Steelhead impact levels as proposed by the Skagit River RMP. Impact levels include both treaty harvest and recreational catch and release fisheries and are tiered based on forecasted terminal run levels for natural-origin steelhead (Sauk-Suiattle et al. 2016).

| Preseason Forecast for Natural-Origin Skagit Steelhead | Allowable Impact Rate Terminal Run |
|---|---|
| ≤ 4,000 | 4% |
| 4,001 ≤ Terminal Run <6,000 | 10% |
| 6,001 ≤ Terminal Run <8,000 | 20% |
| Terminal Run ≥ 8,001 | 25% |

Available data on escapement of summer, winter, and summer/winter steelhead populations in Puget Sound are limited. For the five Puget Sound summer-run populations, no complete long-term time series of escapement and catch to perform total run reconstructions are available, however an escapement time series is available for one of these (Tolt R. summer-run) (Marshall 2018). Complete long-term time series of escapement and run reconstruction data are available for 14 of the 23 winter run populations, and for none of the four summer/winter run populations (Marshall 2018). Additionally 3 Puget Sound winter-run steelhead populations have long-term time series of escapement data but no harvest data for run reconstruction (Marshall 2018). However, a combined time series of escapement and run reconstruction data for Skagit River summer/winter and Sauk River summer/winter populations is available (Marshall 2018). Data are currently insufficient to provide a full run reconstruction of natural-origin steelhead populations needed to assess harvest rates for any of the summer run steelhead populations and many of the summer/winter and winter run populations. Given these circumstances, NMFS used the available data for five Puget Sound winter and summer/winter steelhead populations to calculate terminal harvest rates on natural-origin steelhead. NMFS calculated that the harvest rate on a subset of watersheds for natural-origin steelhead averaged 4.2% annually in Puget Sound fisheries during the 2001/2002 to 2006/2007 time period just prior to listing (NMFS 2010b) (**Table 13**). Average harvest rates on the same subset of watersheds for natural-origin steelhead demonstrated a reduction to 1.5% in Puget Sound fisheries during the 2007/2008 to 2016/2017 time period (**Table 13**). These estimates include sources of non-landed mortality such as hooking mortality and net dropout, 10% and 2% respectively. Overall, the average harvest rate for these five indicator populations declined from 4.2% to 1.5% (i.e., 64.3% decline) through 2017.

**Table 13.** Tribal and non-tribal terminal harvest rate (HR) percentages on natural-origin steelhead for a subset of Puget Sound winter steelhead populations for which catch and run size information are available (NMFS 2015b; WDFW and PSIT 2017,WDFW and PSIT 2018).

| Year | Skagit | Snohomish | Green | Puyallup | Nisqually[a] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2001-02 | 4.2 | 8.0 | 19.1 | 15.7 | N/A |
| 2002-03 | 0.8 | 0.5 | 3.5 | 5.2 | N/A |
| 2003-04 | 2.8 | 1.0 | 0.8 | 2.2 | 1.1 |
| 2004-05 | 3.8 | 1.0 | 5.8 | 0.2 | 3.5 |
| 2005-06 | 4.2 | 2.3 | 3.7 | 0.8 | 2.7 |
| 2006-07 | 10.0 | N/A[b] | 5.5 | 1.7 | 5.9 |
| **Avg HRs 2001-07** | **4.3** | **2.6** | **6.4** | **4.3** | **3.3** |
| **Total Avg HR** | **4.2%** total average harvest rate across populations from 2001-02 to 2006-07 | | | | |
| 2007-08 | 5.90 | 0.40 | 3.50 | 1.00 | 3.70 |
| 2008-09 | 4.90 | 1.10 | 0.30 | 0.00 | 3.70 |
| 2009-10 | 3.30 | 2.10 | 0.40 | 0.00 | 1.20 |
| 2010-11 | 3.40 | 1.50 | 1.60 | 0.60 | 1.80 |
| 2011-12 | 2.90 | 0.90 | 2.00 | 0.40 | 2.50 |
| 2012-13 | 2.30 | 1.10 | 2.38 | 0.70 | 1.10 |
| 2013-14 | 2.60 | 0.89 | 1.09 | 0.56 | 1.33 |
| 2014-15 | 1.25 | 1.00 | 1.05 | 0.54 | 0.89 |
| 2015-16 | 1.12 | 0.90 | 0.92 | 0.06 | 0.20 |
| 2016-17 | 1.70 | 1.00 | 0.90 | 0.10 | 0.00 |
| **Avg HRs 2007-16** | **2.94** | **1.09** | **1.41** | **0.40** | **1.64** |
| **Total Avg HR** | **1.50%** total average harvest rate across all populations from 2007-08 to 2016-17 | | | | |
| **Total average HR 2001-02 to 2016-17** | **2.46** | | | | |

[a] Escapement methodology for the Nisqually River was adjusted in 2004; previous estimates are not comparable.

[b] Catch estimate not available in 2006-07 for Snohomish River.

As mentioned above, NMFS concluded in the final steelhead listing determination that previous harvest management practices likely contributed to the historical decline of Puget Sound steelhead. However, the elimination of the directed harvest of wild steelhead in the mid-1990s largely addressed the threat of decline to the listed DPS posed by harvest. The NWFSC's recent status review update confirmed continued declines in natural-origin steelhead harvest rates are not likely to substantially affect steelhead spawner abundance in the DPS (NWFSC 2015). The addition of Skagit steelhead harvest in 2018 is also projected to have very low impact on these spawner abundances in the long term and the five year Skagit steelhead harvest plan would not jeopardize the DPS (NMFS 2018a).

*Halibut Fisheries*

Commercial and recreational halibut fisheries occur in the Strait of Juan de Fuca and San Juan Island areas of Puget Sound. In a recent biological opinion, NMFS concluded that salmon are not likely to be caught incidentally in the commercial or tribal halibut fisheries when using halibut gear (NMFS 2018b). The total estimated non-retention mortality of Chinook salmon in Puget Sound recreational halibut fisheries is extremely low, averaging just under two Chinook salmon per year. Of these, the estimated catch of listed fish (hatchery and wild) is between one and two Puget Sound Chinook per year. Given the very low level of impacts and the fact that the fishery occurs in mixed stock areas, different populations within the ESUs are likely affected each year. No steelhead have been observed in the fishery.

*Puget Sound bottomfish and shrimp trawl fisheries*

Recreational fishers targeting bottom fish and the shrimp trawl fishery in Puget Sound can incidentally catch listed Puget Sound Chinook. In 2012 NMFS issued an incidental take permit to the WDFW for listed species caught in these two fisheries, including Puget Sound Chinook salmon (NMFS 2012d). The permit was in effect for 5 years and authorized the total incidental take of up to 92 Puget Sound Chinook salmon annually. Some of these fish would be released. Some released fish were expected to survive; thus, of the total takes, we authorized a subset of lethal take of up to 50 Chinook salmon annually. As of 2018 this permit has not been renewed. WDFW has applied for a permit allowing incidental take of 137 Chinook annually in the coming years.

### *Hatcheries*

Hatcheries can provide benefits to the status of Puget Sound Chinook and steelhead? by reducing demographic risks and preserving genetic traits for populations at low abundance in degraded habitats. In addition, hatcheries help to provide harvest opportunity, which is an important contributor to the meaningful exercise of treaty rights for the Northwest tribes. Hatchery-origin fish may also pose risk to listed species through genetic, ecological, or harvest effects. Seven factors may pose positive, negligible, or negative effects to population viability of naturally-produced salmon and steelhead. These factors are:

(1) the hatchery program does or does not remove fish from the natural population and use them

for hatchery broodstock,
(2) hatchery fish and the progeny of naturally spawning hatchery fish on spawning grounds and encounters with natural-origin and hatchery fish at adult collection facilities,
(3) hatchery fish and the progeny of naturally spawning hatchery fish in juvenile rearing areas,
(4) hatchery fish and the progeny of naturally spawning hatchery fish in the migration corridor, estuary, and ocean,
(5) research, monitoring, and evaluation that exists because of the hatchery program,
(6) the operation, maintenance, and construction of hatchery facilities that exist because of the hatchery program, and
(7) fisheries that exist because of the hatchery program, including terminal fisheries intended to reduce the escapement of hatchery-origin fish to spawning grounds.

Beginning in the 1990s, state and tribal co-managers took steps to reduce risks identified for Puget Sound hatchery programs as better information about their effects became available (PSIT and WDFW 2004), in response to reviews of hatchery programs (e.g., Busack and Currens 1995, HSRG 2000, HSRG 2002), and as part of the region-wide Puget Sound salmon recovery planning effort (SSPS 2007). The intent of hatchery reform is to reduce negative effects of artificial propagation on natural populations while retaining proven production and potential conservation benefits. The goals of conservation programs are to restore and maintain natural populations. Hatchery programs in the Pacific Northwest are phasing out use of broodstocks that differ substantially from natural populations, such as out-of-basin or out-of-ESU stocks, and replacing them with fish derived from, or more compatible with, locally adapted populations. Producing fish that are better suited for survival in the wild is now an explicit objective of many salmon hatchery programs. Hatchery programs are also incorporating improved production techniques, such as NATURES-type rearing protocols[18] and limits on the duration of conservation hatchery programs. The changes proposed are to ensure that existing natural salmonid populations are preserved, and that hatchery-induced genetic and ecological effects on natural populations are minimized.

About one-third of the hatchery programs in Puget Sound incorporate natural-origin Chinook salmon as broodstock for supportive breeding (conservation) or harvest augmentation purposes. Use of natural-origin fish as broodstock for conservation programs is intended to impart viability benefits to the total, aggregate population by bolstering total and naturally spawning fish abundance, preserving remaining diversity, or improving population spatial structure by extending natural spawning into unused areas. Integration of natural-origin fish for harvest augmentation programs is intended to reduce genetic diversity reduction risks by producing fish that are no more than moderately diverged from the associated, donor natural population. Incorporating natural-origin fish as broodstock for harvest programs produces hatchery fish that are genetically similar to natural-origin fish, reducing risks to the natural population that may

[18] A fundamental assumption is that improved rearing technology will reduce environmentally induced physiological and behavioral deficiencies presently associated with cultured salmonids. NATURES-type rearing protocols includes a combination of underwater feed-delivery systems, submerged structure, overhead shade cover, and gravel substrates, which have been demonstrated in most studies to improve instream survival of Chinook salmon (*O. tshawytscha*) smolts during seaward migrations.

result from unintended straying and spawning by unharvested hatchery-origin adults in natural spawning areas. To allow monitoring and evaluation of the performance and effects of programs incorporating natural-origin fish as broodstock, all juvenile fish are marked prior to release with CWTs or with a clipped adipose fin so that they can be differentiated and accounted for separately from juvenile and returning adult natural-origin fish.

Chinook salmon stocks are artificially propagated through 41 programs in Puget Sound. Currently, the majority of Chinook salmon hatchery programs produce fall-run (also called summer/fall) stocks for fisheries harvest augmentation purposes. Supplementation programs implemented as conservation measures to recover early returning Chinook salmon operate in the White (Appleby and Keown 1994), Dungeness (Smith and Sele 1995), and North Fork Nooksack rivers, and for summer Chinook salmon on the North Fork Stillaguamish and Elwha Rivers (Fuss and Ashbrook 1995; Myers et al. 1998). Supplementation or re-introduction programs are in operation for early Chinook in the South Fork Nooksack River, fall Chinook in the South Fork Stillaguamish River (Tynan 2010) and spring and late-fall Chinook in the Skokomish River (Redhorse 2014, Speaks 2017).

There are currently 13 hatchery programs in Puget Sound that propagate steelhead. Currently there are five steelhead supplementation programs operating for natural-origin winter run steelhead conservation purposes in Puget Sound. Fish produced through the five conservation programs are designated as part of the listed Puget Sound Steelhead DPS, and are protected with their associated natural-origin counterparts from take (79 FR 20802, April 14, 2014). In the Central/Southern Cascade MPG, one conservation program operates to rebuild the native White River winter-run steelhead population. Upon construction of the Fish Restoration Facility in the Green River basin, two conservation programs will operate to rebuild the native Green River winter-run steelhead, in order to mitigate for lost natural-origin steelhead abundance and harvest levels associated with the placement and operation of Howard Hanson Dam (Jones 2015). The other two conservation programs are operated to conserve steelhead populations that are part of the Hood Canal and Strait of Juan de Fuca MPG. The Hood Canal Steelhead Supplementation Program functioned to rebuild native stock winter-run steelhead abundances in the Dewatto, Duckabush, and South Fork Skokomish river watersheds. The original Hood Canal Steelhead Supplementation program has been terminated with the last adult fish produced returning in 2019. A newer recovery program operated out of the North Fork Skokomish Hatchery by Tacoma Power and Utilities now supports the recovery of native Skokomish River winter steelhead. The Elwha River Native Steelhead program preserves and assists in the recolonization of native Elwha River winter-run steelhead. The integrated programs listed above produce hatchery-origin steelhead that are similar to the natural-origin steelhead populations, are designed for conservation of the ESA-listed populations, and allow for natural spawning of hatchery-origin fish.

On April 15, 2016, NMFS announced the release of a FEIS (NMFS 2016c) its decision (Turner 2016a, Turner 2016b) regarding its approval under the salmon and steelhead 4(d) rule of early winter steelhead Hatchery and Genetic Management Programs (HGMPs) submitted by the co-managers ~~for review and approval under section 4(d) of the ESA~~. The HGMPs describe five early winter steelhead hatchery programs in the Dungeness, Nooksack, Stillaguamish, Skykomish, and Snoqualmie River basins  NMFS approved the programs as consistent with ESA requirements.

After a two year hiatus in response to a settlement agreement between WDFW and an environmental group, smolt releases from these programs were reinitiated in 2016 after their approval by NMFS under ESA 4(d) rule, limit 6 for effects on ESA-listed steelhead and Chinook salmon (NMFS 2016d, 2016f). In evaluating and approving the EWS programs for effects on listed fish (NMFS 2016d; 2016f), and based on analyses of genetic data provided by WDFW (Warheit 2014), NMFS determined that gene flow levels for the five EWS programs were very low and unlikely to pose substantial genetic diversity reduction risks to natural-origin winter-run steelhead populations.  Of particular importance to this harvest evaluation is that EWS have been artificially selected to return and spawn in peak abundance as adults earlier in the winter than the associated natural-origin Puget Sound winter-run steelhead populations in the watersheds where the hatchery fish are released.  This timing difference, in addition to other factors, including hatchery risk reduction management measures that reduce natural spawning and natural spawning success by EWS act to reduce gene flow and associated genetic risks to natural-origin steelhead.  The temporal separation between EWS and natural-origin steelhead adult return and spawn timing provides protection to the later-returning natural-origin steelhead populations in harvest areas when and where fisheries directed at EWS occur (Crawford 1979). Three other harvest augmentation programs propagate non-listed early summer-run steelhead (ESS) derived from Columbia River, Skamania stock.  The EWS and ESS stocks reared and released as smolts through the eight programs are considered more than moderately diverged from any natural-origin steelhead stocks in the region and were therefore excluded from the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS.  Gene flow from naturally spawning fish produced by the eight hatchery programs may pose genetic risks to natural-origin steelhead (NMFS 2016c).

As described in Section 2.2.1.2, NWFSC (2015) noted that hatchery steelhead releases in Puget Sound have declined in most areas.  The Puget Sound Early Winter Steelhead FEIS indicated that steelhead hatchery releases decreased from about 2,468,000 annually (NMFS 2014b) to about 1,504,750 annually (Appendix A in NMFS 2016c). These reductions were largely due to the need to reduce risks to natural Puget Sound steelhead after the 2007 listing and subsequent risk analyses (NMFS 2014b).  Reductions were focused on unlisted steelhead programs. Currently hatchery programs propagating unlisted steelhead in Puget Sound account for approximately 57%  of hatchery-origin steelhead smolt releases, which total 891,000 annually (this total includes 490,000 summer steelhead and 401,000 winter steelhead) in the Puget Sound DPS (Appendix A in NMFS 2017h).  When compared to total historic release levels analyzed for the EWS and ESS in the Puget Sound Hatcheries DEIS prepared in 2004 (App A in NMFS 2004), which was prior to listing, this represents an overall reduction of 31%.  The number of EWS releases in 2005 compared to proposed levels in 2018 alone represent a 77% reduction after listing.

The ESS as well as other on-going programs, currently operated by the State of Washington, that have not undergone ESA consultation are reviewed in The Cumulative Effects Section 2.6 of the Opinion.

### *Habitat*

Human activities have degraded extensive areas of salmon and steelhead spawning and rearing habitat in Puget Sound. Most devastating to the long term viability of salmon has been the modification of the fundamental natural processes which allowed habitat to form and recover from disturbances such as floods, landslides, and droughts. Among the physical and chemical processes basic to habitat formation and salmon persistence are floods and droughts, sediment transport, heat and light, nutrient cycling, water chemistry, woody debris recruitment and floodplain structure (SSPS 2007).

Development activities have limited access to historical spawning grounds and altered downstream flow and thermal conditions. Watershed development and associated urbanization throughout the Puget Sound, Hood Canal, and Strait of Juan de Fuca regions have resulted in direct loss of riparian vegetation and soils, significantly altered hydrologic and erosion rates and processes by creating impermeable surfaces (roads, buildings, parking lots, sidewalks etc.), and polluting waterways, raised water temperatures, decreased large woody debris recruitment, decreased gravel recruitment, reduced river pools and spawning areas, and dredged and filled estuarine rearing areas (Bishop and Morgan 1996). Hardening of nearshore bank areas with riprap or other material has altered marine shorelines; changing sediment transport patterns and reducing important juvenile habitat (SSPS 2005). The development of land for agricultural purposes has resulted in reductions in river braiding, sinuosity, and side channels through the construction of dikes, hardening of banks with riprap, and channelization of the river mainstems (EDPU 2005, SSPS 2005). Poor forest practices in upper watersheds have resulted in bank destabilization, excessive sedimentation and removal of riparian and other shade vegetation important for water quality, temperature regulation and other aspects of salmon rearing and spawning habitat (SSPS 2005, SSPS 2007). There are substantial habitat blockages by dams in the Skagit and Skokomish River basins, in the Elwha until 2013 which was prior to the implementation of the Elwha Dam Removal Plan, and minor blockages, including impassable culverts, throughout the region. Historically, low flows resulting from operation of the Cushman dams and habitat degradation of freshwater and estuarine habitat have adversely affected the Skokomish basin. A settlement agreement in 2008 between the Skokomish Tribe and Tacoma Power, the dam operator, resulted in a plan to restore normative flows to the river, improve habitat through on-going restoration activities, and restore an early Chinook life history in the river using supplementation. In general, habitat has been degraded from its pristine condition, and this trend is likely to continue with further population growth and resultant urbanization in the Puget Sound region.

Habitat utilization by steelhead in the Puget Sound area has been dramatically affected by large dams and other manmade barriers in a number of drainages, including the Nooksack, Skagit, White, Nisqually, Skokomish, and Elwha[19] river basins (Appendix B in NMFS 2012a). In addition to limiting habitat accessibility, dams affect habitat quality through changes in river hydrology, altered temperature profile, reduced downstream gravel recruitment, and the reduced

[19] The Elwha dams have been removed, which has significantly changed the Elwha River's hydrology and now allows for steelhead and salmon access to miles of historical habitat upstream.

recruitment of large woody debris. Such changes can have significant negative impacts on salmonids (e.g., increased water temperatures resulting in decreased disease resistance) (Spence et al. 1996, McCullough 1999).

Many upper tributaries in the Puget Sound region have been affected by poor forestry practices, while many of the lower reaches of rivers and their tributaries have been altered by agriculture and urban development (Appendix B in NMFS 2012a). Urbanization has caused direct loss of riparian vegetation and soils, significantly altered hydrologic and erosional rates and processes (e.g., by creating impermeable surfaces such as roads, buildings, parking lots, sidewalks etc.), and polluted waterways with stormwater and point-source discharges (Appendix B in NMFS 2012a). Forestry practices, urban development, and agriculture have resulted in the loss of wetland and riparian habitat, creating dramatic changes in the hydrology of many streams, increases in flood frequency and peak low during storm events, and decreases in groundwater driven summer flows (Moscrip and Montgomery 1997, Booth et al. 2002, May et al. 2003). Additionally river braiding and sinuosity have been reduced in Puget Sound through the construction of dikes, hardening of banks with riprap, and channelization of the mainstem (NMFS 2012a). Constriction of river flows, particularly during high flow events, increases the likelihood of gravel scour and the dislocation of rearing juveniles. The loss of side-channel habitats has also reduced important areas for spawning, juvenile rearing, and overwintering habitats. Estuarine areas have been dredged and filled, resulting in the loss of important juvenile rearing areas (NMFS 2012a). In addition to being a factor that contributed to the present decline of Puget Sound Chinook and steelhead populations, the continued destruction and modification of habitat is the principal factor limiting the viability of the Puget Sound Chinook and steelhead into the foreseeable future (72 Fed. Reg. 26722, May 11, 2007). Because of their limited distribution in upper tributaries, summer run steelhead may be at higher risk than winter run steelhead from habitat degradation in larger, more complex watersheds (Appendix B in NMFS 2012a).

NMFS has completed several section 7 consultations on large scale projects affecting listed species in Puget Sound. Among these are the Washington State Forest Practices Habitat Conservation Plan (NMFS 2006b), and consultations on Washington State Water Quality Standards (NMFS 2008b), Washington State Department of Transportation Preservation, Improvement, and Maintenance Activities (NMFS 2013a), the National Flood Insurance Program (NMFS 2008c), and the Elwha River Fish Restoration Plan (Ward et al. 2008). These documents considered the effects of the proposed actions that would occur up to the next 50 years on the ESA listed salmon and steelhead species in the Puget Sound basin. Information on the status of these species, the environmental baseline, and the effects of the proposed actions are reviewed in detail. The environmental baselines in these documents consider the effects from timber, agriculture and irrigation practices, urbanization, hatcheries and tributary habitat, estuary, and large scale environmental variation. These biological opinions and HCPs, in addition to the watershed specific information in the Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan mentioned above, provide a current and comprehensive overview of baseline habitat conditions in Puget Sound and are incorporated here by reference.

### 2.4.2 Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish

The Puget Sound and Georgia Basin comprise the southern arm of an inland sea located on the Pacific Coast of North America that is directly connected to the Pacific Ocean. Most of the water exchange in Puget Sound proper is through Admiralty Inlet near Port Townsend, and the configuration of sills and deep basins results in the partial recirculation of water masses and the retention of contaminants, sediment, and biota (Rice 2007). Tidal action, freshwater inflow, and ocean currents interact to circulate and exchange salty marine water at depth from the Strait of Juan de Fuca, and less dense fresh water from the surrounding watersheds at the surface produce a net seaward flow of water at the surface (Rice 2007).

Most of the benthic deepwater (e.g., deeper than 90 feet (27.4 m)) habitats of Puget Sound proper consist of unconsolidated sediments such as sand, mud, and cobbles. The vast majority of the rocky-bottom areas of Puget Sound occur within the San Juan Basin, with the remaining portions spread among the rest of Puget Sound proper (Palsson et al. 2009). Depths in the Puget Sound extend to over 920 feet (280 meters).

Benthic habitats within Puget Sound have been influenced by a number of factors. The degradation of some rocky habitat, loss of eelgrass and kelp, introduction of non-natural-origin species that modify habitat, and degradation of water quality are threats to marine habitat in Puget Sound (Drake et al. 2010; Palsson et al. 2009). Some benthic habitats have been impacted by derelict fishing gear that include lost fishing nets, and shrimp and crab pots (Good et al. 2010). Derelict fishing gear can continue “ghost” fishing and is known to kill rockfish, salmon, and marine mammals as well as degrade rocky habitat by altering bottom composition and killing numerous species of marine fish and invertebrates that are eaten by rockfish (Good et al. 2010). Thousands of nets have been documented within Puget Sound and most have been found in the San Juan Basin and the Main Basin. The Northwest Straits Initiative has operated a program to remove derelict gear throughout the Puget Sound region. In addition, WDFW and the Lummi, Stillaguamish, Tulalip, Nisqually, and Nooksack Tribes and others have supported or conducted derelict gear prevention and removal efforts. Net removal has mostly concentrated in waters less than 100 feet (33 m) deep where most lost nets are found (Good et al. 2010). The removal of over 4,600 nets and over 3,000 derelict pots have restored over 650 acres of benthic habitat (Northwest Straights Initiative 2014), though many derelict nets and crab and shrimp pots remain in the marine environment. Several hundred derelict nets have been documented in waters deeper than 100 feet deep (NRC 2014). Over 200 rockfish have been documented within recovered derelict gear. Because habitats deeper than 100 feet (30.5 m) are most readily used by adult yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio, there is an unknown but potentially significant impact from deepwater derelict gear on rockfish habitats within Puget Sound.

Over the last century, human activities have introduced a variety of toxins into the Georgia Basin at levels that can affect adult and juvenile rockfish habitat and/or the prey that support them. Toxic pollutants in Puget Sound include oil and grease, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), phthalates, PBDEs, and heavy metals that include zinc, copper, and lead. Several urban embayments in Puget Sound have high levels of heavy metals and organic compounds (Palsson et al. 2009).There are no studies to date that define specific adverse health effects thresholds for specific toxicants in any rockfish species; however, it is likely that PCBs pose a risk to rockfish health and fitness (Palsson et al. 2009). About 32 percent of the sediments in the Puget Sound region are considered to be moderately or highly contaminated (PSAT 2007), though some areas are undergoing clean-up operations that have improved benthic habitats (Sanga 2015).

Washington State has a variety of marine protected areas managed by 11 Federal, state, and local agencies (Van Cleve et al. 2009), though some of these areas are outside of the range of the rockfish DPSs. The WDFW has established 25 marine reserves within the DPSs' boundary, and 16 host rockfish (Palsson et al. 2009), though most of these reserves are within waters shallower than those typically used by adult yelloweye rockfish or bocaccio. The WDFW reserves total 2,120.7 acres of intertidal and subtidal habitat. The total percentage of the Puget Sound region within reserve status is unknown, though Van Cleve et al. (2009) estimate that one percent of the subtidal habitats of Puget Sound are designated as a reserve. Compared to fished areas, studies have found higher fish densities, sizes, or reproductive activity in the assessed WDFW marine reserves (Eisenhardt 2001; Palsson 1998; Palsson et al. 2004; Palsson and Pacunski 1995). These reserves were established over several decades with unique and somewhat unrelated ecological goals, and encompass relatively small areas (average of 23 acres).

We cannot quantify the effects of degraded habitat on the listed rockfish because these effects are poorly understood. However, there is sufficient evidence to indicate that ESA-listed rockfish productivity may be negatively impacted by the habitat structure and water quality stressors discussed above (Drake et al. 2010).

We discuss fisheries management pertinent to rockfish that is part of the environmental baseline in the Puget Sound area as a context for the fisheries take authorized within previous section 7 consultations (NMFS 2016c). In addition, we briefly summarize fisheries management in Canadian waters of the DPSs, as it is relevant to listed rockfish that use waters in Canada and the San Juan area. In 2010, the Washington State Fish and Wildlife Commission formally adopted regulations that ended the retention of rockfish by recreational anglers in Puget Sound and closed fishing for bottom fish in all waters deeper than 120 feet (36.6 m). On July 28, 2010, WDFW enacted the following package of regulations by emergency rule for the following non-tribal commercial fisheries in Puget Sound in order to protect dwindling rockfish populations:

1) Closure of the set net fishery
2) Closure of the set line fishery
3) Closure of the bottom trawl fishery
4) Closure of the inactive pelagic trawl fishery
5) Closure of the inactive bottom fish pot fishery

As a precautionary measure, WDFW closed the above commercial fisheries westward of the listed rockfish DPSs' boundary to Cape Flattery. The WDFW extended the closure west of the rockfish DPSs' boundary to prevent commercial fishermen from concentrating gear in that area. The commercial fisheries closures listed above were enacted on a temporary basis and WDFW permanently closed them in February 2011. The pelagic trawl fishery was closed by permanent rule on the same date.

The DPS area for yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio includes areas of the Georgia Strait thus the status of the environmental baseline and rockfish management influences fish within Puget Sound. Fisheries management in British Columbia, Canada, has been altered to better conserve rockfish populations. In response to declining rockfish stocks, the government of Canada initiated comprehensive changes to fishery policies beginning in the 1990s (Yamanaka and Logan 2010). Conservation efforts were focused on four management steps: (1) accounting for all catch, (2) decreasing total fishing mortality, (3) establishing areas closed to fishing, and (4) improving stock assessment and monitoring (Yamanaka and Lacko 2001). The Department of Fisheries and Oceans (DFO) adopted a policy of ensuring that inshore rockfish are subjected to fisheries mortality equal to or less than half of natural mortality.

These efforts led to the 2007 designation of a network of Rockfish Conservation Areas (RCAs) that encompasses 30 percent of rockfish habitat of the inside waters of Vancouver Island (Yamanaka and Logan 2010). The DFO defined and mapped "rockfish habitat" from commercial fisheries log CPUE density data as well as change in slope bathymetry analysis (Yamanaka and Logan 2010). These reserves do not allow directed commercial or recreational harvest for any species of rockfish, or the harvest of other marine species if that harvest may incidentally catch rockfish. Because the RCAs are relatively new it is uncertain how effective they have been in protecting rockfish populations (Haggarty 2013), but one analysis found that sampled RCAs in Canada had 1.6 times the number of rockfish compared to unprotected areas (Cloutier 2011). There are anecdotal reports that compliance with the RCAs may be poor and that some may contain less than optimum areas of rockfish habitat (Haggarty 2013). Systematic monitoring of the RCAs may be lacking as well (Haggarty 2013). The DFO, WDFW, and NMFS will be conducting fish population surveys of some of the RCAs in 2018. Outside the RCAs, recreational fishermen generally may keep one rockfish per day from May 1 to September 30. Commercial rockfish catches in Area 4(b) are managed by a quota system (DFO 2011).

### 2.4.3 Southern Resident Killer Whales

The final recovery plan for Southern Resident killer whales reviews and assesses the potential factors affecting Southern Residents, and lays out a recovery program to address each of the threats (NMFS 2008e). As described in the Status of the Species (2.2.1.4), the limiting factors identified include reduced prey availability and quality, high levels of contaminants from pollution, and disturbances from vessels and sound (NMFS 2008e). This section summarizes these primary threats in the action area and focuses primarily on actions that affect prey availability.

***Prey Availability***

Chinook salmon are the primary prey of Southern Resident killer whales throughout their geographic range, which includes the action area (see further discussion in Section 2.2.1, Status of the Species). The availability of Chinook salmon to Southern Residents is affected by a number of natural and human actions. The most notable human activities that cause adverse effects include land use activities that result in habitat loss and degradation, hatchery practices, harvest and hydropower systems. Details regarding baseline conditions of Puget Sound Chinook salmon in inland waters that are listed under the Endangered Species Act are described in Section 2.4.1.

The baseline also includes Chinook salmon that are not ESA-listed, notably Puget Sound hatchery Chinook salmon stocks that are not part of the listed entity, as well as Fraser River and Georgia Strait stocks of Chinook salmon. In addition, climate effects from Pacific decadal oscillation and the El Nino/Southern oscillation conditions and events cause changes in ocean productivity which can affect natural mortality of salmon. Predation in the ocean also contributes to natural mortality of salmon. Salmonids are prey for pelagic fishes, birds, and marine mammals (including Southern Resident killer whales).

Here we provide a review of Southern Resident killer whale determinations in previous ESA Section 7(a)(2) consultations where effects occurred in the action area, and where effects resulted in a significant reduction in available prey (i.e., where prey reduction was likely to adversely affect or jeopardize the continued existence of the whales). We also consider activities that have impacts in the action area, and are out of our jurisdiction for Section 7(a)(2) consultation, but nonetheless significantly reduce available prey. We then assess the remaining prey available to Southern Resident killer whales in light of this environmental baseline.

Habitat-altering activities such as agriculture, forestry, marine construction, levy maintenance, shoreline armoring, dredging, hydropower operations and new development can reduce prey available to Southern Residents. Many of these activities have a federal nexus and have undergone section 7 consultation. Those actions have all met the standard of not jeopardizing the continued existence of the listed salmonids or adversely modifying their critical habitat, or if they did not meet that standard, NMFS identified reasonable and prudent alternatives. In addition, the environmental baseline is influenced by many actions that pre-date the salmonid listings and that have substantially degraded salmon habitat and lowered natural production of Puget Sound Chinook salmon. Since the Southern Residents were listed, federal agencies have also consulted on impacts to the whales, including impacts to available prey. In 2014, NMFS finalized its biological opinion on the operation and maintenance of the Mud Mountain Dam project (NMFS 2014c). The opinion concluded that the proposed action would jeopardize the continued existence of Puget Sound Chinook salmon, Puget Sound steelhead, and Southern Resident killer whales and would adversely modify or destroy their designated critical habitats. We have also previously consulted on the effects of flood insurance on Southern Residents. NMFS' biological opinion on the National Flood Insurance Program in Washington State-Puget Sound region concluded that the action was likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the Puget Sound Chinook salmon ESU, and that the potential extinction of this ESU in the long-term jeopardized the continued existence of Southern Residents (NMFS 2008). For these consultations, RPAs were identified in order to avoid jeopardy and not adversely modify or destroy designated critical habitat (NMFS 2008e; NMFS 2014c).

In the past harvest opinions (NMFS 2011a; NMFS 2014; NMFS 2015; NMFS 2016; NMFS 2017d), we characterized the short-term and long-term effects on Southern Residents from prey reduction caused by harvest. We considered the short-term direct effects to whales resulting from reductions in Chinook salmon abundance that occur during a specified year, and the long-term indirect effects to whales that could result if harvest affected viability of the salmon stock over time by decreasing the number of fish that escape to spawn. These past analyses suggested that in the short term, prey reductions were small relative to remaining prey available to the whales. In the long term, harvest actions have met the conservation objectives of harvested stocks, were not likely to appreciably reduce the survival or recovery of listed Chinook salmon, and were therefore not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of listed Chinook salmon. The harvest biological opinions referenced above concluded that the harvest actions cause prey reductions in a given year, and were likely to adversely affect but were not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of ESA-listed Chinook salmon or Southern Residents.

*Assessing Baseline Prey Availability*

We assessed Chinook availability in the action area by using a similar retrospective Fisheries Regulation Assessment Model (FRAM) based analysis to that used for the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Resource Management Plan (NMFS 2011a). We incorporated new FRAM base data along with new information available on the diet of Southern Resident killer whales (see Status of the Species section) and updated bioenergetics needs (based on updates to the population size and age- and sex- structure). The Chinook salmon abundances and kilocalorie values estimated using the new FRAM base period (2007-2013) yielded different estimates than for the 2010 Resource Management Plan for the same fishing years modeled. Here, we briefly describe the method developed to estimate the food energy of Chinook available, and provide recent updates to this methodology. For a more detailed description of the FRAM based analysis, refer to NMFS 2011a.

FRAM provides year-specific ocean abundance estimates for most Chinook salmon stocks from the Sacramento River to central British Columbia including all stocks from Puget Sound. Chinook fisheries covered in FRAM extend from central California to Southeast Alaska (including inland waters of Washington and British Columbia). All Chinook stocks in FRAM travel through the range of Southern Resident killer whales. FRAM includes nearly all listed (with the exception of Sacramento winter Chinook and California coastal Chinook salmon) and non-listed Chinook stocks within the whales' range (with the exception of Klamath, Rogue and other central-southern Oregon Coastal Chinook and Grays Harbor Chinook salmon).

FRAM is a single-pool model and does not have spatial distribution of the stocks represented in it. However, the distribution of catch by area and escapement during a period of less restricted open seasons was used to estimate the portion of the single pool cohort into waters both outside the range of Southern Residents and within their range (see detailed description in NMFS 2011a). The estimates were specific to time periods in FRAM for an annual cycle: October to April, May to June, and July to September.

***Updates to FRAM.*** For each FRAM time period, the model produced stock and age specific cohort abundance. For this analysis, the cohort abundance before natural mortality and preterminal marine fisheries was used during each FRAM time period (the previous analysis described in 2011 used cohort abundance after natural mortality). Using the cohort abundance at this stage included Chinook salmon alive at the start of a time period that either died from natural mortality or were caught in pre-terminal marine fisheries during that time period, in the case of our latter effects analysis. Hence, these cohort abundances theoretically represent abundance at the beginning of the time period rather than the end and does not include additional natural mortality. Hilborn et al. (2012) noted that natural mortality rates of Chinook salmon are likely substantially higher than the previous stock assessments. To better understand natural mortality, Chasco et al. (2017) estimated Chinook salmon consumption in Washington inland waters by four marine mammal predators from 1970 to 2015. They found that over this time period, consumption of Chinook salmon by pinnipeds increased substantially from 68 to 625 metric tons. By 2015, pinnipeds were estimated to have consumed approximately double that of what Southern Residents consume, and approximately six times more than commercial and recreational catches.

Additional updates to FRAM, under the new base period, for this analysis that assessed the change in prey abundance available to Southern Residents included removing the size selectivity function from the model, and updating the growth function, abundance, maturation rates, cohort reconstruction, and exploitation rates. The selectivity function was used in the last analysis to determine the proportion of Chinook salmon abundance available to Southern Residents since information at the time indicated a size selective preference for 3-5 year old Chinook salmon with selectivity based on scale data from predation events. However, during the Independent Science Panel workshops (Hilborn et al. 2012), there were concerns expressed regarding the age/size selection curves and the uncertainties with this function. Therefore, as an alternative approach, we assigned equal probability to all 3-5 year old Chinook salmon as available prey, and the kilocalories varied based on the lipid content of specific stocks by size and age (data from O'Neill et al. 2014).

The Northwest Fisheries Science Center (NWFSC) has continued to collect prey samples from Southern Residents while they are in inland waters of Washington and British Columbia (Hanson et al. 2010; Ford et al. 2016). Based on the new data, we have updated our estimates of the average proportion of Chinook salmon in the whales' inland diet for each FRAM season: (1) 55 percent from October to April, (2) 97 percent from May to June, and (3) 71 percent from July to September. Because the whales' diet is not exclusively Chinook salmon and varies by season, we incorporate these proportions in our prey energy requirements for inland waters (described further below).

***Updates to Chinook Food Energy and Whale Needs.*** Noren (2011) developed estimates of the potential range of daily energy expenditure and prey energy requirements for Southern Resident killer whales for all ages and both sexes. The range in the daily prey energy requirements (DPERs) for Southern Residents took digestive efficiency into account, and was calculated from body mass according to these equations:

$$\text{Lower Bound DPER} = 413.2M_b^{0.75}$$
$$\text{Higher Bound DPER} = 495.9M_b^{0.75}$$

where DPER is in kcal per day and $M_b$ is body mass in kg. We have updated the body mass estimates (Noren 2011) to include new unpublished photogrammetry data from our Southwest Fisheries Science Center (SWFSC). However, these updated body mass estimates are similar to the previous body mass estimates and there is not a measurable difference in the DPER estimates.

Using these equations with more precise body mass estimates, the maximum prey energy requirements for female killer whales range between 49,657 (age 1) and 217,775 (ages 20+) kcal per day. For male killer whales age, the maximum prey energy requirements range between 49,657 (age 1) and 269,458 (ages 20+) kcal per day. The prey energy requirements for the increased cost of body growth in juvenile whales and the increased cost of lactation in females who are nursing are currently unknown. Until these increases in prey energy requirements can be quantified, Noren (2011) recommends using the maximum DPER estimates. Similar to the previous analyses described in our 2011 biological opinion, we combined the sex and age specific maximum daily prey energy requirement information with the population census data to estimate daily energetic requirements for all members of the Southern Resident population, based on the population size at the 2017 summer census (77 whales).

Because we are able to estimate the prey energy requirements for all members of the population each day, we can estimate the prey energy requirements for the entire year, for specific seasons, and/or for geographic areas (inland waters and coastal waters). To estimate prey requirements when the whales are in the action area, we updated our estimates of the time observed in inland waters. Previously, we averaged the number of Southern Resident killer whales sightings in the action area by number of days per pod per month (Table 6 in the 2011 biop, data from 2003-2009) and incorporated this seasonal occurrence into the prey energy requirements for inland and coastal waters. Because the sightings data are updated annually, we revisited the Southern Resident killer whale sightings specific to each pod in inland waters (January 2003 to December 2016; Status of Listed Species Section 2.2.1.4 **Table 9**). Lastly, we multiplied the daily energy requirements of each pod by the average number of days that the pod was in inland waters for each FRAM time period (Oct-April; May-June; July-Sept). This provided monthly estimates of the energy required in inland waters by pod and averaged estimates of energy required by FRAM time periods (**Table 14**).

**Table 14.** Minimum and maximum Daily Prey Energy Requirements (DPER) for the Southern Resident killer whale population of 77 individuals using the average number of days in inland waters for the three FRAM time periods.

| Time Period | Average Inland | |
|---|---|---|
| | Max DPER | Max DPER |
| Oct-April | | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | 520,649,256 | 624,854,709 |
| May-June | 351,655,139 | 422,037,230 |
| July-Sept | 863,289,065 | 1,036,072,234 |

We summed the energy requirements across pods by time periods and multiplied by the percent of Chinook in the diet for each time period (55% for October – April; 97% for May – June; 71% for July to September). With this approach, we are assuming that the whales' diet and needs in the past are representative of what they need in the future (i.e., does not account for potential differences in population abundance and sex / age structure over time, potential differences in time spent in inland vs. coastal waters, changes in diet composition, etc.).

Similar methods were used to estimate the maximum DPERs for Southern Residents in coastal waters. For purposes of this analysis, we assumed that Southern Residents occurred west of the Strait of Juan de Fuca (in coastal waters) on days they were not sighted in inland waters, primarily because the population is highly visible in inland waters. However, there have been sightings of Southern Resident killer whales in Canadian inland waters, such as the Strait of Georgia, so the inland estimates may overestimate inland prey needs. The same is true for coastal sightings and needs. The DPER values by time period and coastal/inland waters were used as inputs into the FRAM modelling to assess the energy needs of Southern Residents compared with available Chinook prey. Using the methodology briefly described above to estimate Chinook food energy available, **Table 15** summarizes the baseline food energy from Chinook available compared to the whales' Chinook needs in inland waters without implementation of the proposed action.

**Table 15.** Baseline Chinook food energy available compared to the whales' Chinook needs in inland waters without implementation of the proposed action.

| Year | Oct-April | May-Jun | July-Sept |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1992 | 25.5 | 23.2 | 10.5 |
| 1993 | 23.8 | 21.5 | 9.6 |
| 1994 | 19.4 | 18.0 | 8.8 |
| 1995 | 17.7 | 17.2 | 9.1 |
| 1996 | 20.4 | 19.3 | 10.5 |
| 1997 | 28.7 | 27.8 | 14.9 |
| 1998 | 24.4 | 23.3 | 12.6 |
| 1999 | 23.3 | 22.9 | 12.6 |
| 2000 | 18.0 | 17.0 | 9.2 |
| 2001 | 25.1 | 24.0 | 13.2 |
| 2002 | 28.6 | 26.1 | 14.0 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2003 | 31.4 | 28.8 | 15.6 |
| 2004 | 27.5 | 25.6 | 13.5 |
| 2005 | 23.0 | 21.5 | 11.3 |
| 2006 | 26.4 | 24.9 | 13.2 |
| 2007 | 20.7 | 19.2 | 10.1 |
| 2008 | 21.7 | 21.1 | 11.4 |
| 2009 | 18.5 | 17.1 | 9.0 |
| 2010 | 31.1 | 30.3 | 16.7 |
| 2011 | 25.9 | 24.0 | 12.7 |
| 2012 | 17.1 | 16.1 | 8.5 |
| 2013 | 25.8 | 24.6 | 13.6 |
| 2014 | 22.7 | 21.2 | 11.0 |

*Prey Quality*

Contaminants enter marine waters and sediments from numerous sources, but are typically concentrated near populated areas of high human activity and industrialization. Freshwater contamination is also a concern because it may contaminate salmon that are later consumed by the whales in marine habitats. Chinook salmon contain higher levels of some contaminants than other salmon species, however levels can vary considerably among populations. Mongillo et al. (2016) reported data for salmon populations along the west coast of North America, from Alaska to California and found the salmon's marine distribution was a large factor affecting persistent pollutant accumulation. They found higher concentrations of persistent pollutants in Chinook salmon populations that feed in close proximity to land-based sources of contaminants. There is some information available for contaminant levels of Chinook in inland waters (i.e., Krahn et al. 2007; O'Neil and West 2009; Veldhoen et al. 2010; Mongillo et al. 2016). Some of the highest levels of certain pollutants were observed in Chinook salmon from Puget Sound and the Harrison River (Mongillo et al. 2016).

Adult Chinook salmon (ocean ages 4 and 5) along most of the eastern North Pacific Ocean are becoming smaller, whereas the size of age 2 fish are generally increasing (Ohlberger et al. 2018). Additionally, most of the Chinook salmon populations from Oregon to Alaska have experienced lower proportions of age 4 and 5 year olds and an increase in the proportion of 2 year olds; the mean age of Chinook salmon in the majority of the populations has declined over time. For Puget Sound Chinook salmon (primarily hatchery origin), there were little or weak trends in size-at-age of 4 year olds and the declining trend in the proportion of older ages in Washington stocks was also observed but slightly weaker than that in Alaska populations (Ohlberger et al. 2018).

*Vessels and Sound*

Vessels used for a variety of purposes (commercial shipping, military, recreation, fishing, whale watching and public transportation) occur in inland waters of the Southern Residents' range. Several studies in inland waters of Washington State and British Columbia have linked interactions of vessels and Northern and Southern Resident killer whales with short-term behavioral changes (see review in Ferrara et al. 2017). These vessel activities may affect foraging efficiency, communication, and/or energy expenditure through the physical presence of the vessels, underwater sound created by the vessels, or both. Collisions of killer whales with vessels are rare, but remain a potential source of serious injury and mortality.

Vessel sounds in inland waters are from large ships, ferries, tankers and tugs, as well as from whale watch vessels, and smaller recreational vessels. Commercial sonar systems designed for fish finding, depth sounding, and sub-bottom profiling are widely used on recreational and commercial vessels and are often characterized by high operating frequencies, low power, narrow beam patterns, and short pulse length (NRC 2003). Frequencies fall between 1 and 500 kHz, which is within the hearing range of some marine mammals including killer whales and may have masking effects (i.e., sound that precludes the ability to detect and transmit biological signals used for communication and foraging).

Recently, there have been several studies that have characterized sound from ships and vessels as well as ambient noise levels in the inland waters (Bassett et al. 2012; McKenna et al. 2013; Houghton et al. 2015; Veirs et al. 2016). Bassett et al. (2012) assessed ambient noise levels in northern Admiralty Inlet (a waterway dominated by larger vessels). They found that vessel activity contributed most to the variability measured in the ambient noise and cargo ships contributed to the majority of the vessel noise budget. Veirs et al. (2016) estimated sound pressure levels for larger ships that transited through the Haro Strait, and found that the received levels were above background levels, and that underwater noise from ships extends up to high frequencies similar to noise from smaller boats. Ship noise was identified as a concern because of its potential to interfere with Southern Resident killer whale communication, foraging, and navigation (Veirs et al. 2016). Although there are several vessel characteristics that influence noise levels, vessel speed appears to be the most important predictor in source levels (McKenna et al. 2013; Veirs et al. 2016; Houghton et al. 2015; Holt et al. 2017), and reducing vessel speed would likely reduce acoustic exposure to Southern Residents.

Behavioral responses of killer whales to received levels from ships was estimated using a dose-response function (Williams et al. 2014). The authors found that the whales would have a 50% chance of responding behaviorally to ship noise when received noise levels were approximately 130 dB rms. Following this study, Holt et al. (2017) utilized DTAGs to measure received noise levels by the whales (in dB re 1μPa). The received noise levels (in the 1 to 40 kHz band) measured were between 96 and 127 dB re 1μPa, with an average of 108 dB ± 5.5. It is currently unclear if Southern Residents experience noise loud enough to have more than a short-term behavioral response; however, new research from the NWFSC is investigating fine scale details of subsurface acoustic and movement behavior under different scenarios, especially those predictive of foraging, to then determine potential effects of vessels and noise on Southern Resident killer whale behaviors.

Recent evidence indicates there is a higher energetic cost of surface active behaviors and vocal effort resulting from vessel disturbance (Williams et al. 2006; Noren et al. 2012, 2013; Holt et al.

2015). However, this increased energy expenditure may be less important than the reduced time spent feeding and the resulting potential reduction in prey consumption (Ferrara et al. 2017). Although the impacts of short-term behavioral changes on population dynamics is unknown, it is likely that because Southern Residents are exposed to vessels the majority of daylight hours they are in inland waters, there may be biologically relevant effects at the population-level (Ferrara et al. 2017).

The Be Whale Wise viewing guidelines and the 2011 federal vessel regulations (www.bewhalewise.org) were designed to reduce behavioral impacts, acoustic masking, and risk of vessel strike to Southern Residents in inland waters of Washington State. Since the regulations were codified, there is some evidence that the average distance between vessels and the whales has increased (Houghton 2014; Ferrara et al. 2017). The majority of vessels in close proximity to the whales are commercial and recreational whale watching vessels and the average number of boats accompanying whales can be high during the summer months (i.e., from 2006 to 2015 an average of 11 to 18 boats; Seely 2016). A number of recommendations to improve compliance with guidelines and regulations are being implemented by a variety of partners to further reduce vessel disturbance (Ferrara et al. 2017).

Anthropogenic (human-generated) sound in inland waters is generated by other sources beside vessels, including construction activities, and military operations. Natural sounds in the marine environment include wind, waves, surf noise, precipitation, thunder, and biological noise from other marine species. The intensity and persistence of certain sounds (both natural and anthropogenic) in the vicinity of marine mammals vary by time and location and have the potential to interfere with important biological functions (e.g., hearing, echolocation, communication).

In-water construction activities are permitted by the Army Corps of Engineers (ACOE) under section 404 of the Clean Water Act and section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1899 and by the State of Washington under its Hydraulic Project Approval (HPA) program. NMFS conducts consultations on these permits and helps project applicants incorporate conservation measures to minimize or eliminate potential effects of in-water activities, such as pile driving, to marine mammals. Sound, such as sonar generated by military vessels also has the potential to disturb killer whales and mitigation including shut down procedures are used to reduce impacts.

*Entrapment and Entanglement in Fishing Gear*

Drowning from accidental entanglements in nets and longlines is a minor source of fishing related mortality in killer whales. One killer whale was reported interacting with a salmon gillnet in British Columbia in 1994, but did not get entangled (Guenther et al. 1995). Along the U.S. west coast, two killer whales have been recorded entangled in Dungeness crab commercial trap fishery gear (one in 2015 and one in 2016) (NMFS 2016f). In 2013, a northern resident killer whale stranded in British Columbia and a fish hook was observed in its colon, but had no evidence of perforation or mucosal ulceration (NMFS strandings data, unpubl.). Typically, killer whales are able to avoid nets by swimming around or underneath them (Jacobsen 1986; Matkin

1994), and not all entanglements automatically result in death. For example, J39, a young male killer whale in J pod, was observed with a salmon flasher hooked in his mouth during the summer of 2015 around the San Juan Islands.

Entanglements of marine mammals in fishing gear must be reported in accordance with the Marine Mammal Protection Act (MMPA). MMPA Section 118 established the Marine Mammal Authorization Program (MMAP) in 1994. Under MMAP all fishers are required to report any incidental taking (injuries or mortalities) of marine mammals during fishing operations. Any animal that ingests fishing gear or is released with fishing gear entangled, trailing, or perforating any part of the body is considered injured, and must be reported[20]. No entanglements, injuries or mortalities have been reported in recent years.

*Oil Spills*

As described in the Status of the Species section, the inland waters of Washington State and British Columbia remains at risk from serious spills because of the heavy volume of shipping traffic and proximity to petroleum refining centers. The total volume of oil spills has increased since 2013 and inspections of high-risk vessels have declined since 2009 (WDOE 2017). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), a component of oil (crude and refined) and motor exhaust, are a group of compounds known to be carcinogenic and mutagenic (Pashin and Bakhitova 1979). Exposure can occur through five known pathways: contact, adhesion, inhalation, dermal contact, direct ingestion, and ingestion through contaminated prey (Rosenberger et al. 2017).

Following the *Deepwater Horizon* oil spill, substantial research effort has occurred to document adverse health effects and mortality in cetaceans in the Gulf of Mexico. Common dolphins (*Tursiops truncates*) in Barataria Bay, an area that had prolonged and severe contamination from the Deepwater Horizon oil spill, were found to have health effects consistent with adrenal toxicity and increased lung disease (Schwacke et al. 2013; Venn-Watson et al. 2015), low reproductive success rates (Kellar et al. 2017), and changes in immune function (de Guise et al. 2017). Previous PAH exposure estimates suggested Southern Residents can be occasionally exposed to concerning levels (Lachmuth et al. 2011). More recently, Lundin et al. (in review) measured PAHs in whale fecal samples collected in inland waters of Washington between 2010 and 2013 and found low concentrations of the measured PAHs (<10 ppb, wet weight). However, PAHs were as high as 104 ppb in the first year of their study (2010) compared to the subsequent years. Although it is unclear the cause of this trend, higher levels were observed prior to the 2011 vessel regulations that increased the distance vessels could approach the whales.

[20] Review of reporting requirements and procedures, 50 CFR 229.6 and http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/pdfs/interactions/mmap_reporting_form.pdf

### 2.4.4 Scientific Research

The listed salmon, steelhead, rockfish, and Southern Resident killer whales in this opinion are the subject of scientific research and monitoring activities. Most biological opinions issued by NMFS have conditions requiring specific monitoring, evaluation, and research projects to gather information to aid the preservation and recovery of listed species. The impacts of these research activities pose both benefits and risks. In the short term, take may occur in the course of scientific research. However, these activities have a great potential to benefit ESA-listed species in the long-term. Most importantly, the information gained during research and monitoring activities will assist in planning for the recovery of listed species. Research on the listed fish species in the Action Area is currently provided coverage under Section 7 of the ESA or the 4(d) research Limit 7, or included in the estimates of fishery mortality discussed in the Effects of the Proposed Action in this opinion.

For the year 2012 and beyond, NMFS has issued several section 10(a)(1)(A) scientific research permits allowing lethal and non-lethal take of listed species (**Table 16**). In a separate process, NMFS also has completed the review of the state and tribal scientific salmon and research programs under ESA section 4(d) Limit 7. **Table 16** displays the total take for the ongoing research authorized under ESA sections 4(d) and 10(a)(1)(A) for the listed Puget Sound Chinook salmon ESU, the Puget Sound steelhead DPS and Puget Sound/Georgia Basin rockfish species DPS.

**Table 16.** Average annual take allotments for research on listed species in 2014-2018 (Dennis 2018).

| Species | Life Stage | Production/Origin | Total Take | Lethal Take |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Puget Sound Chinook | Juvenile | Natural | 430,117 | 10,616 |
| | | Listed hatchery intact adipose | 154,061 | 5,286 |
| | | Listed hatchery clipped adipose | 125,793 | 12,023 |
| | Adult | Natural | 968 | 38 |
| | | Listed hatchery intact adipose | 443 | 12 |
| | | Listed hatchery clipped adipose | 2,383 | 98 |
| Puget Sound steelhead | Juvenile | Natural | 66,396 | 1,351 |
| | | Listed hatchery intact adipose | 1,330 | 16 |
| | | Listed hatchery clipped adipose | 4,672 | 104 |
| | Adult | Natural | 1,523 | 32 |
| | | Listed hatchery intact adipose | 7 | -- |
| | | Listed hatchery clipped adipose | 36 | 6 |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| PS/GB Bocaccio | Adult | Natural | 65 | 26 |
| PS/GB Yelloweye Rockfish | Adult | Natural | 130 | 51 |

Actual take levels associated with these activities are almost certain to be substantially lower than the permitted levels. There are three reasons for this. First, most researchers do not handle the full number of individual fish they are allowed. Our research tracking system reveals that researchers, on average, end up taking about 37% of the number of fish they estimate needing. Second, the estimates of mortality for each proposed study are purposefully inflated (the amount depends upon the species) to account for potential accidental deaths, and it is therefore very likely that fewer fish (in some cases many fewer), especially juveniles, than the researchers are allotted would be killed during any given research project. Finally, researchers within the same watershed are encouraged to collaborate on studies (i.e., share fish samples and biological data among permit holders) so that overall impacts to listed species are reduced.

Most of the scientific research conducted on Southern Resident killer whales occurs in inland waters of Washington State and British Columbia. In general, the primary objective of this research is population monitoring or data gathering for behavioral and ecological studies. In 2016 and 2017, NMFS issued scientific research permits to the Alaska Fisheries Science Center and Southwest Fisheries Science Center (NMFS 2016; NMFS 2017a). Additionally, in 2017 NMFS issued two scientific research permits to cetacean researchers (NMFS 2017b). Research activities are typically conducted between May and October in inland waters and can include aerial surveys, vessel surveys, close approaches, and documentation, and biological sampling. In the biological opinions NMFS prepared to assess the impact of issuing permits, we determined that the effects of these disturbances on Southern Residents were likely to adversely affect, but not jeopardize the continued existence of the Southern Resident killer whales (NMFS 2016; NMFS 2017a,b). Most of the authorized takes would occur in inland waters, with a small portion in the coastal range of Southern Residents. In light of the number of permits, associated takes, and research vessels and personnel present in the environment, repeated disturbance of individual killer whales is likely to occur in some instances. In recognition of the potential for disturbance and takes, NMFS took steps to limit repeated harassment and avoid unnecessary duplication of effort through conditions included in the permits requiring coordination among permit holders.

## 2.5 Effects of the Action on Species and Designated Critical Habitat

Under the ESA, "effects of the action" means the direct and indirect effects of an action on the species or critical habitat, together with the effects of other activities that are interrelated or interdependent with that action, that will be added to the environmental baseline (50 CFR 402.02). Indirect effects are those that are caused by the proposed actions and are later in time, but still are reasonably certain to occur.

### 2.5.1 Puget Sound Chinook

#### 2.5.1.1 Assessment Approach

In assessing the effects of the proposed harvest actions on the Puget Sound Chinook salmon ESU, NMFS first analyzes the effects on individual salmon populations within the ESU using quantitative analyses where possible (i.e., where a sufficiently reliable time series of data is available) and more qualitative considerations where necessary. Risk to the survival and recovery of the ESU is then determined by next assessing the distribution of risk across the populations within each major geographic region and then accounting for the relative role of each population to the viability of the ESU.

The Viable Risk Assessment Procedure (VRAP) provides estimates of the maximum population-specific exploitation rates (called Rebuilding Exploitation Rates or RERs) that are thought to be consistent with survival and recovery of that population based on the assumptions made in deriving the rates for individual populations (Appendix A). In deriving the RERs, NMFS accounts for and makes conservative assumptions regarding management error, environmental uncertainty, and parameter variability. NMFS has established RERs for 12 individual populations within the ESU and for the Nooksack Management Unit. The RERs are converted to FRAM-based (Fishery Regulation and Assessment Model) equivalents (**Table 17**) for the purposes of assessing proposed harvest actions, since FRAM is the analytical tool used by NMFS and the co-managers to assess proposed fishery actions within the action area. Surrogate standards are identified for those populations where data are currently insufficient or NMFS has not completed population-specific analyses to establish RERs. Surrogates are based on similarities in population size, life history, productivity, watershed size, and hatchery contribution with other populations in the ESU for which RERs have been derived. We also consider the results of independent analyses conducted using other methods (e.g., analysis of MSY for the White River Chinook population provided by the co-managers).

Although component populations contribute fundamentally to the structure and diversity of the ESU, it is the ESU, not an individual population, which is the listed species under the ESA. NMFS uses the FRAM-equivalent RERs, and the critical and rebuilding escapement thresholds[21] in addition to other relevant information and the guidance described below to assist it in evaluating the effects of the proposed actions on survival and recovery of the populations within the ESU.[22] The rates that would result from the proposed fisheries are compared to the relevant RERs. Generally speaking, where estimated impacts of the proposed fisheries are less than or equal to the RERs, NMFS considers the fisheries to present a low risk to that population (NMFS 2004b). However, the RERs for individual populations are not jeopardy standards.

---

[21] After taking into account uncertainty, the critical threshold is defined as a point below which: (1) depensatory processes are likely to reduce the population below replacement; (2) the population is at risk from inbreeding depression or fixation of deleterious mutations; or (3) productivity variation due to demographic stochasticity becomes a substantial source of risk (NMFS 2000b). The rebuilding threshold is defined as the escapement that will represents Maximum Sustained Yield (MSY) under current environmental and habitat conditions (NMFS 2000b). Thresholds were based on population-specific data where available.

[22] For most populations, the rebuilding thresholds are well below the escapement levels associated with recovery, but achieving these goals under current conditions is a necessary step to eventual recovery when habitat and other conditions are more favorable. Therefore, NMFS has evaluated the future performance of populations in the ESU under recent productivity conditions; i.e., assuming that the impact of hatchery and habitat management actions remain as they are now.

**Table 17**. Rebuilding Exploitation Rates by Puget Sound Chinook population. Surrogate RERs are italicized.

| Region | Management Unit | Population | Rebuilding Exploitation Rate | FRAM-based Rebuilding Exploitation Rate |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Strait of Georgia** | Nooksack Early | N.F. Nooksack<br>S.F. Nooksack | 5% | 5% |
| **Whidbey/Main Basin** | Skagit Spring | Upper Sauk River | 39% | 18% |
| | | Suiattle River | 53% | 23% |
| | | Upper Cascade | 49% | 24% |
| | Skagit Summer/Fall | Upper Skagit River | 47% | 45% |
| | | Lower Skagit River | 27% | 37% |
| | | Lower Sauk River | 44% | 45% |
| | Stillaguamish | N.F. Stillaguamish River | 39% | 21% |
| | | S.F. Stillaguamish River | 28% | 17% |
| | Snohomish | Skykomish River | 22% | 15% |
| | | Snoqualmie | 31% | 18% |
| **South Sound** | Lake Washington | Sammamish[a] | | *5%* |
| | | Cedar[a] | | *18%* |
| | Green-Duwamish | Duwamish-Green | 26% | 15% |
| | White | White[b] | | *18%* |
| | Puyallup | Puyallup[c] | | *15-35%* |
| | Nisqually | Nisqually[d] | | *35%* |
| **Hood Canal** | Mid-Hood Canal | Mid-Hood Canal[e] | | *5%* |
| | Skokomish | Skokomish | 35% | 35% |
| **Strait of Juan de Fuca** | Dungeness | Dungeness[b] | | *5%* |
| | Elwha | Elwha[b] | | *5%* |

[a] Uses Upper Sauk River RER as a surrogate for the Cedar (18%) and the Nooksack RER as a surrogate for the Sammamish (5%) given similarity of current abundance and escapement trends, and watershed size.
[b] Uses Upper Sauk River (18%) as surrogate.
[c] Uses range including Skokomish (35%) and Green Rivers fall Chinook as surrogates
[d] Uses Skokomish River (35%) as surrogate.
[e] Uses Nooksack early Chinook (5%) as surrogate.

The risk to the ESU associated with an individual population not meeting its RER must be considered within the broader context of other information such as guidance on the number, distribution, and life-history representation of populations within the regions and across the ESU; the role of associated hatchery programs; observed population status, and trend; and the effect of further constraints on the proposed actions. Derivation of an RER is based on conservative assumptions regarding environmental conditions, and uncertainty in management performance and population dynamics based on observed patterns over a 25 year period (Appendix A). The objectives of the RER are to achieve escapement levels consistent with the rebuilding threshold and minimize escapements below the critical threshold over a given time frame. The VRAP model identifies the RER that meets specific probabilities based on these assumptions when compared with the same conditions and no harvest. The RER analyses are updated periodically to incorporate the most recent information, and assumptions are made conservatively (e.g., assuming low marine survival) to protect against overly optimistic future projections of population performance. However, the observed data may indicate that the population status or environmental conditions are actually better than the conservative assumptions anticipated in the RER derivation. For example, the observed information may indicate that marine survival is better than assumed or that a population's escapement has achieved its rebuilding threshold under exploitation rates higher than the RER. Therefore, it is important to consider the anticipated exploitation rates and escapements relative to the RERs and thresholds, and the observed information on population status, environmental conditions, and exploitation rate patterns. A population will be identified in this opinion as having an increased level of risk[23] when the expected escapement of that population does not meet its critical threshold or its RER. We will then examine the effects of the proposed actions on the status of the populations and the degree to which the effects contribute that that status.[24]

Populations are also at increased risk if actual exploitation rates exceed exploitation rate ceilings that are part of the proposed actions. In most cases for most management units actual exploitation rates are routinely at or below the specified objectives. As explained in Appendix A, incorporation of uncertainty is reflected in the variability in exploitation rates observed in the simulations. That is, the derivation of RERs assume that observed exploitation rates will vary over time (above and below the RER) as a result of these uncertainties even if fisheries are managed as closely as possible to meet the RERs. Therefore, management error is such that it is reasonable to expect that management objectives will be exceeded on occasion. However, consistent overages may reflect bias in management procedures and assumptions that need to be corrected. Because of the significant amount of analysis and staff resources required and the lag in availability of some of the information (e.g., two years to finalize sport fishery catch), exploitation rates are assessed every three years. The most recent information is available through 2014 based on work completed in mid-2017 (**Table 18**).

In 2017, NMFS in consultation with the Puget Sound co-managers updated all the RERs and their associated escapement thresholds except for the Skokomish population. Two new RERs were added for the Upper Cascade and Snoqualmie populations. The direction of change was mixed with three RERs increasing and five decreasing from the previous values. Declines in abundance and productivity, greater uncertainty in spawner/recruit fit, and/or better information on natural-origin component of population likely contributed to the lower RERs.

---

[23] When compared to a population otherwise at or above its critical threshold.

[24] NMFS has used RERs as part of its assessment of proposed harvest actions on the Puget Sound Chinook ESU in biological opinions and application of take limits under the ESA 4(d) Rule since 1999 (NMFS 1999; 2005b; 2008d; 2010b, NMFS 2014a, NMFS 2015b, NMFS 2016).

The co-managers routinely assess the performance of fishery management regimes and the technical tools and information that are used (e.g., abundance forecasts, management models, input parameters). Assessments typically review past performance, by comparing preseason and post season estimates of exploitation rate, identify factors that contributed to the observed overages, and identify remedial actions designed to address any identified problems. An in depth assessment was conducted in 2015 for four populations (Skagit summer/falls, Puyallup, Nisqually and Skokomish)(Grayum and Unsworth 2015). Subsequently the comanagers assessed the efficacy of the actions taken to address problems identified through the 2015 assessments in 2016 (Adicks 2016). The update of the FRAM model in late 2016 provided another opportunity for a high level overview of management performance. The update of the FRAM model itself was designed in part to address identified problems and improve management The co-managers conducted another review of two populations (Skokomish, Puyallup) in 2018 (James 2018a) when those populations continued to exceed their exploitation rate ceilings.

**Table 18.** Estimated exploitation rates compared with the applicable management objective for each Puget Sound Chinook Management Unit. Rates exceeding the objective are **bolded***.

| Region | Management Unit | 2010 | | 2011 | | 2012 | | 2013 | | 2014 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **Actual** | **Objective** | **Actual** | **Objective** | **Actual** | **Objective** | **Actual** | **Objective** | **Actual** | **Objective** |
| **Georgia Basin** | Nooksack early | 4% | 7% SUS | 5% | 8% | 6% | 7% | **9%** | 7% | **8%** | 7% |
| **Whidbey/ Main Basin** | Skagit spring | 20% | 38% | 32% | 38% | 25% | 38% | 22% | 38% | 25% | 38% |
| | Skagit summer/fall | 41% | 50% | **66%** | 50% | 37% | 50% | 41% | 50% | 48% | 50% |
| | Stillaguamish | 11% | 25% | **26%** | 25% | 17% | 25% | 13% | 25% | 25% | 25% |
| | Snohomish | 14% | 21% | 15% | 15% SUS* | 15% | 21% | 20% | 21% | **25%** | 21% |
| **Central/ South Sound** | Lake Washington | 10% | 20% SUS | **21%** | 20% SUS | 18% | 20% SUS | 16% | 20% SUS | 17% | 20% SUS |
| | Duwamish-Green R | 8% | 15% PT/5800 | 13% | 15%PT/5800 | 13% | 15%PT/5800 | 13% | 15%PT/5800 | 13% | 15%PT/5800 |
| | White River | 16% | 20% SUS | 13% | 20% SUS | 14% | 20% SUS | 6% | 20% SUS | **21%** | 20% SUS |
| | Puyallup River | **59%** | 50% | **52%** | 50% | **60%** | 50% | 45% | 50% | **61%** | 50% |
| | Nisqually River | 64% | 65% | 59% | 65% | **57%** | 56% | 51% | 56% | **60%** | 52% |
| **Hood Canal** | Mid-Hood Canal R. | 8% | 12% PTSUS | 11% | 12% PTSUS | **13%** | 12% PTSUS | 10% | 12% PTSUS | 12% | 12% PTSUS |
| | Skokomish River | **52%** | 50% | **57%** | 50% | **60%** | 50% | 49% | 50% | **59%** | 50% |
| **Strait of Juan de Fuca** | Dungeness River | 3% | 10% SUS | 4% | 10% SUS | 3% | 10% SUS | 3% | 10% SUS | 4% | 6% SUS |
| | Elwha River | 4% | 10% SUS | 4% | 10% SUS | 3% | 10% SUS | 3% | 10% SUS | 4% | 10% SUS |

*For management units like the Skagit summer/fall and Snohomish that cannot meet their total exploitation rate objectives because 50% or more of the harvest occurs in northern fisheries, the harvest plan provides that a SUS objective may also be applicable.

* Rates are bases on the old base period for FRAM since it was used at the time to shape fisheries to meet the objectives. The co-managers have recently updated the FRAM base period and are reviewing objectives. For example, the Nooksack objective was recently updated to 10% SUS from the previous 7% SUS.

performance. The results of the update and other sources of fishery information indicated that the Skokomish and Puyallup populations continue to exceed their exploitation rate ceiling despite meaningful actions taken by the co-managers over the last several years to bring exploitation rates under the ceilings. Consequently, in 2017-2018, the co-managers again assessed management actions affecting achievement of objectives specified by the Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan for the these populations, reviewed available information, and explored likely fishery management factors contributing to failures to achieve management objectives. Specific circumstances for these areas are discussed in more detail in the Effects on the Species section for each of the relevant regions.

The Supplement to the Puget Sound Recovery Plan provides general guidelines for assessing recovery efforts across individual populations within Puget Sound and determining whether they are sufficient for delisting and recovery of the ESU (Ruckelshaus et al. 2002, NMFS 2006c). As described in Section 2.2.1.1, an ESU-wide recovery scenario should include two to four viable Chinook salmon populations in each of the five geographic regions identified within Puget Sound, depending on the historical biological characteristics and acceptable risk levels for populations within each region (Ruckelshaus et al. 2002, NMFS 2006c). Unlike other ESUs (e.g., Lower Columbia River (NMFS 2013b)), however, the Puget Sound Recovery Plan and PSTRT guidance did not define the role of each population with respect to the survival and recovery of the ESU which is important in assessing the distribution of risk from specific proposed actions in such a complex ESU. Therefore, NMFS developed the Population Recovery Approach (PRA; see Section 2.2.1.1) to use as further guidance in its consultations. Guidance from the PSTRT, the Supplement, and the PRA provide the framework to assess risk to the Puget Sound Chinook salmon ESU. The distribution of risk across populations based on the weight of information available in the context of this framework is then used in making the jeopardy determination for the ESU as a whole. For a more detailed explanation of the technical approach see NMFS (2000b, 2004b, 2011a).

In addition to the biological information, NMFS' federal trust responsibilities to treaty Indian tribes are also considered in NMFS' conclusions. In recognition of treaty right stewardship, NMFS, as a matter of policy, has sought not to entirely eliminate tribal harvest (Secretarial Order 3206). Instead, NMFS' approach is to accept some fisheries impacts that may result in increased risk to the listed species, if consistent with the ESA's requirements, in order to provide limited tribal fishery opportunity. This approach recognizes that the treaty tribes have a right and priority to conduct their fisheries within the limits of conservation constraints (Garcia 1998). Because of the Federal government's trust responsibility to the tribes, NMFS is committed to considering the tribal co-managers' judgment and expertise regarding conservation of trust resources. However, the opinion of the tribal co-managers and their immediate interest in fishing must be balanced with NMFS' responsibilities under the ESA. The discussion in the following section summarizes the results of the impact analysis of the proposed actions across populations within each of the five major bio-geographical regions in the ESU.

#### 2.5.1.1 Effects on the Species

Effects of the Proposed Actions on listed species occur through implementation of the proposed Puget Sound salmon fisheries and associated research as described earlier (see sections 1.2 and 1.3). Escapements and exploitation rates expected to result from these fisheries during May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019 are summarized in **Table 19**. Exploitation rates are reported by management units and escapements by populations based on the information that the FRAM model provides. Impacts in PFMC and PST fisheries are included in actions previously consulted on by NMFS (2004a, 2008d) and are therefore part of the Environmental Baseline (see Section 2.3.1). However, the harvest objectives proposed by the co-managers to manage Puget Sound Chinook take into account impacts in these other fisheries (Shaw 2018). Thus, **Table 19** represents the sum of fishing-related mortality anticipated under the proposed actions together with that evaluated under the existing PFMC and PST consultations.

Also included in **Table 19** are the RERs and critical and rebuilding thresholds discussed above that NMFS uses as some of the benchmarks to evaluate the effects of the proposed actions on survival and recovery of populations within the ESU. For management units comprised of multiple populations, **Table 19** provides the range of RERs associated with the populations within that management unit. For example, the range of RERs summarized for the Skagit Spring Management Unit represents the Upper Sauk (18%) and the Upper Cascade (24%) populations. All of the population specific RERs are shown in **Table 17**.

NMFS' critical and rebuilding escapement thresholds represent natural-origin spawners (**Table 19**). However, long-term time series of data on the contribution of natural-origin fish to escapement are limited for all Puget Sound populations; particularly those historically dominated by hatchery production. The co-managers are refining abundance forecasts and modeling tools like the FRAM as better information becomes available. Several historically hatchery-dominated populations are transitioning to natural-origin management and, for others, hatchery production will continue to contribute significantly to escapement depending on their role in ESU recovery.

**Table 19.** FRAM adult equivalent exploitation rates in 2018 ocean and Puget Sound fisheries and escapements expected after these fisheries occur for Puget Sound management units compared with their RERs and escapement thresholds (surrogates in italics). Outcomes expected to exceed at least one RER in a management unit or fall below critical escapement thresholds are bolded.

| Region | Management Unit | Ocean (PST, PFMC) | Puget Sound | Ocean + Puget Sound | RER or RER surrogate |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Georgia Basin** | Nooksack early | 24% | 8% | **32%** | 5% |
| **Whidbey/ Main Basin** | Skagit spring | 11% | 18% | **28%** | 18-24% |
| | Skagit summer/fall | 21% | 16% | 37% | 37-45% |
| | Stillaguamish | 9% | 12% | **20%** | 17-21% |
| | Snohomish | 11% | 8% | **19%** | 15-18% |
| **Central/South Sound** | Lake Washington | 16% | 15% | **31%** | *5-18%* |
| | Duwamish-Green R | 16% | 33% | **49%** | 15% |
| | White River | 10% | 17% | **27%** | *18%* |
| | Puyallup River | 16% | 34% | **50%** | *15-35%* |
| | Nisqually River | 15% | 32% | **47%** | *35%* |
| **Hood Canal** | Mid-Hood Canal R. | 16% | 6% | **21%** | *5%* |
| | Skokomish River | 16% | 31% | **48%** | 35% |
| **Strait of Juan de Fuca** | Dungeness River | 9% | 3% | **12%** | *5%* |
| | Elwha River | 9% | 3% | **13%** | *5%* |

| Region | Escapement | Natural (HOR+NOR) | NOR | Critical | Rebuilding |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Georgia Basin** | Nooksack Management Unit | | **201** | | 500 |
| | NF Nooksack (early) | | **178** | *200* | - |
| | SF Nooksack (early) | | **23** | *200* | - |
| **Whidbey/ Main Basin** | Upper Skagit River (moderately early) | 9,385 | 9,108 | 738 | 5,836 |
| | Lower Sauk River (moderately early) | 607 | 607 | 200 | 371 |
| | Lower Skagit River (late) | 2,227 | 2,227 | 281 | 2,475 |
| | Upper Sauk River (early) | 1,110 | 1,110 | 170 | 484 |
| | Suiattle River (very early) | 596 | 596 | 170 | 250 |
| | Upper Cascade River (moderately early) | 261 | 261 | 130 | 196 |
| | Stillaguamish River MU (NF + SF)[1] | 1409 | 445 | | |
| | NF Stillaguamish R. (early) | 611 | 379 | 300 | 550 |
| | SF Stillaguamish R. (moderately early) | 157 | **67** | *200* | 300 |
| | Skykomish River (late) | | 2,635 | 400 | 1,500 |
| | Snoqualmie River (late) | | 747 | 400 | 900 |
| **Central/South Sound** | Cedar River (late) | 1,722 | 1,250 | *200* | 200-500 |
| | Sammamish River (late) | 1,195 | **103** | *200* | *1,250* |
| | Duwamish-Green R. (late) | 5,079 | 1,042 | 400 | 2,200 |
| | White River (early) | 1,945 | 460 | *200* | 380 |
| | Puyallup River (late) | 1,712 | 448 | *200* | 797 |
| | Nisqually River (late) | 1,369 | 398 | *200* | 1,200 |
| **Hood Canal** | Mid-Hood Canal Rivers (late) | 365 | **88**[2] | *200* | *1,250* |
| | Skokomish River (late) | 2,432 | **340** | 452 | 1,160 |
| **Strait of Juan de Fuca** | Dungeness River | 786 | **88** | *200* | 925 |
| | Elwha River | 4,599 | 212 | *200* | *1,250* |

Source: Chin3218_ Final_BiOpTab.xlsm (J. Carey, pers. comm., April, 2018). Model output escapements adjusted to reflect natural-origin (NOR) or natural (hatchery-origin (HOR)+NOR) escapement as closely as possible using FRAM 2018 inputs, preseason forecasts or postseason data from previous years.

[1] Co-managers consider the Stillaguamish River to be a single population based on their consideration of genetic information collected after the completion of the Puget Sound Technical Recovery Team assessment. NMFS continues to estimate escapements for the North and South Fork Stillaguamish Rivers separately, consistent with the Puget Sound Recovery Plan and Puget Sound Technical Recovery Team assessment.

[2] Information not available to directly assess 2018 natural origin escapement. Previous postseason reports indicate NOR Chinook contributed on average approximately 24% (Mid-Hood Canal) to natural escapement since 2010.

Consequently, the preseason expectations of natural-origin escapements compared to the escapement thresholds in **Table 19** were derived from several sources and represent a variety of different levels of hatchery contribution depending on the available information. NMFS expects the treatment of escapements to become more refined over time as information improves, as decisions are made regarding the treatment of hatchery- and natural-origin fish in an individual watershed, and as the role of individual populations in ESU recovery becomes better defined.

Test, research, update, and evaluation fisheries that inform fishery management decisions are included as part of the fishery-related mortality reflected in **Table 19** and included in the estimates of exploitation rates discussed in the following paragraphs. Mortality associated with other research and monitoring, which have broader applicability to stock assessment, are not included in Table 15. Mortality from research projects in this latter category will not exceed a level equivalent to one percent of the estimated annual abundance (i.e. 1% ER), for any management unit. Several other related research studies are included as part of the proposed actions evaluated in the subsequent discussion. These activities are therefore part of the actions addressed in this opinion. Other research activities informing Puget Sound salmon fishery management are permitted under section 7 of the ESA or Limit 7 of the 4(d) Rule and are part of the Environmental Baseline.

*Georgia Basin:* There are two populations within the Strait of Georgia Basin: the North Fork Nooksack River and the South Fork Nooksack River early Chinook salmon populations (**Figure 1**). Both are classified as PRA Tier 1 populations and both are essential to recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU (NMFS 2006a). The two populations form the Nooksack Early Management Unit. Both populations are expected to be affected by the proposed actions in the action area described in Section 2.3.

Natural-origin average escapement for the North Fork Nooksack is very near its critical escapement threshold and the South Fork Nooksack population is well below its critical escapement threshold (**Table 3**), indicating additional risk to both populations in this Region. Natural-origin spawners average only 203 for the North Fork Nooksack and 24 for the South Fork Nooksacksince the ESU was listed in 1999. When hatchery-origin spawners are included, average spawning escapement for the North Fork Nooksack population is significantly higher. Hatchery contribution to natural escapement from the conservation program at the Kendall Creek Hatchery on the North Fork Nooksack is significant (North Fork average NOR=203, North Fork average NOR+HOR=1,537; **Table 3**) and the hatchery fish retain the native profile of North Fork Nooksack early Chinook.

Managers have implemented two conservation hatchery programs in the Region. Both programs are essential to recovery of each of the populations in this Region and thus to the ESU. Each program has met its hatchery's egg-take objectives in recent years with few exceptions, and is expected to do so again in 2018 and for the foreseeable future (WDFW 2014a, Lummi Nation 2015, B. Apgar-Kurtz, pers. com., April 24, 2018), thus ensuring that what remains of the genetic legacy is preserved and can be used to advance recovery. The Kendall Creek program is intended to assist in recovery of the North Fork Nooksack early Chinook population by contributing to spawning escapement, thus increasing escapements and potentially productivity in order to buffer risks while necessary improvements in habitat occur. An aggressive captive brood stock program to enhance returns of native South Fork Nooksack Chinook began in 2007[25]. The first substantial number of adults to contribute to escapement began returning in 2015 (Chapman 2013, 2016). The 2017 returns from the program were greater than 2015 and 2016 with greater potential contribution to spawning (B. Apgar-Kurtz, pers. com., April 24, 2018). A record number of redds were observed in the South Fork sub-basin in 2018 compared with previous years. An estimated 65 percent of the carcasses were from the South Fork Skookum captive-brood program.k. Unlike previous years when the majority of spawners from the program were young males, in 2017, 44 percent of the spawners contributing to escapement from the program in 2018 were female and 97 percent of the spawners were age 3 and older (B. Apgar-Kurtz, pers. com., April 24, 2018). These results indicate the program is achieving its goal of supplementing the critical South Fork populations and reducing demographic risk. They also are consistent with the expectation of a greater number of returning adults contributing to escapement and more diverse age structure as more brood years return and the supporting hatchery program becomes established.

Productivity (recruits/parent spawners) is 0.3 for the North Fork and 1.0 for the South Fork (**Table 3**). This analyses indicates a relative lack of response in terms of natural-origin production given the much higher total natural escapements described in the above paragraph. Trends in total escapement (hatchery + natural spawners) are increasing or stable for the North Fork and South Fork Nooksack populations, respectively (**Table 4**). The growth rates for natural-origin escapement and natural-origin recruitment are both positive but low for the North Fork (**Table 4**). This indicates that sufficient fish are escaping the fisheries to maintain or increase the number of spawners relative to the parent generation, providing some stabilizing influence for abundance and reducing demographic risks. Growth rates are stable and negative, respectively, for natural-origin escapement and natural-origin recruitment for the South Fork population (**Table 4**) indicating the population is not maintaining itself relative to the parent generation, although the productivity is 1.0. The combination of these factors suggests that natural-origin productivity and abundance will not increase much beyond existing levels unless constraints limiting marine, freshwater, and estuary survival for the Nooksack early populations are alleviated (NMFS 2005c and 2008b, PSIT and WDFW 2010a). Exploitation rates during 2008-2014 averaged 39 percent (total) and nine percent (southern U.S. (SUS)) (**Table 10**), higher than the RER but below the exploitation rate management objective for southern U.S. fisheries (SUS) in place during that time as defined by the applicable Puget Sound harvest plan[26]. Seventy-seven

[25] The captive broodstock program was discontinued in 2018, having achieved its initial design objectives and will transition to program based on adult returns to the Skookum hatchery.
[26] The Nooksack management unit was managed for an objective of 7% exploitation rate in southern U.S. fisheries

percent of the harvest occurred in Alaska and Canadian fisheries (**Table 10**).

The anticipated total exploitation rate resulting from the PFMC, PSC fisheries and proposed actions is 32 percent, well above the RER for the management unit of five percent, although the exploitation rate in the proposed action area alone (Puget Sound) is expected to be very low, i.e., 8 percent (**Table 19**). Under the proposed actions, both populations are anticipated to be below their critical thresholds (**Table 19**), which is cause for concern, although total natural escapement for the North Fork population is anticipated to remain higher than its critical threshold in 2018 given recent year hatchery-origin contribution rates (see **Table 3** for comparison of natural spawning escapement and natural-origin spawning escapement). Exploitation rates have been reduced 11 percent overall since the ESU was listed with much greater reductions in southern U.S. fisheries. Southern U.S. fisheries, including Puget Sound have been reduced by 43 percent since listing. Reductions in northern fisheries were negotiated and realized as part of the current Pacific Salmon Treaty annex specifically to provide greater protections to Puget Sound Chinook. Spring Chinook harvest restraints in the Strait of Juan de Fuca, northern Puget Sound, and the Nooksack River have been in place since the late 1980s. Net, troll, and recreational fisheries in Puget Sound are regulated to minimize incidental Chinook mortality while maintaining fishing opportunity on other species such as sockeye and summer/fall Chinook. There have been no directed commercial fisheries on Nooksack spring Chinook in Bellingham Bay or the Nooksack River since the late 1970s. Incidental harvest in fisheries directed at fall Chinook in Bellingham Bay and the lower Nooksack River was reduced in the late 1980s by severely reducing July fisheries. Commercial fisheries in Bellingham Bay that target fall Chinook have been delayed until August for tribal fishermen and mid-August for non-treaty fishermen. Since 1997, there were limited ceremonial and subsistence fisheries in the lower river in May and early July. Beginning in 2008, the July fishery was discontinued entirely, and a portion of the ceremonial and subsistence fishery was shifted to the lower North Fork as additional conservation measures to further limit the potential harvest of the South Fork early Chinook population (PSIT and WDFW 2010a). For the last several years, selective gear and natural-origin Chinook non-retention were implemented in the largest component of the fishery. These protective measures are proposed to continue in 2018 as part of the proposed actions (Shaw 2018). Any proposed extension of the in-river ceremonial and subsistence (C&S) fishery in 2018 beyond June 15 would rely on inseason monitoring and an assessment of impacts to the populations (Shaw 2018). In 2018, 61 percent of the harvest of Nooksack early Chinook in Puget Sound fisheries is expected to occur in tribal fisheries; primarily in C&S fisheries (FRAM Chin3218). If the proposed actions were not to occur in 2018, we estimate that at most an additional 15 and 2 natural-origin spawners would return to the North and South Fork Nooksack early Chinook escapements, respectively.

In summary, the status of the populations given their role in recovery of the ESU is cause for significant concern and so the effects of the harvest resulting from the proposed actions on the populations must be carefully considered. The 2018 anticipated exploitation rates are

until 2017 when the new FRAM was implemented. A comparison of exploitation rate estimates under the old and new FRAM indicated the previous objective of 7% was equivalent to a rate of 11% under the new base period. In light of the new information, co-managers revised their objective to 10.5%.

substantially higher than the RERs. However, the vast majority of harvest occurs in fisheries north of the southern U.S. border, including Canadian fisheries which are outside U.S. jurisdiction. Under the proposed actions, the exploitation rate on Nooksack early Chinook within the action area is expected to be low (8%). The managers propose actions to continue minimizing impacts to Nooksack early Chinook, particularly South Fork Nooksack Chinook which are in the most critical state. Past patterns indicate exploitation rates under the proposed actions are likely to be lower than anticipated (**Table 10** and **Table 17**). Most of the harvest of Nooksack early Chinook in SUS fisheries is expected to occur in tribal fisheries; primarily in C&S fisheries. Information suggests that past harvest constraints have had limited effect on increasing escapement of returning natural-origin fish, when compared with the return of hatchery-origin fish, and further harvest reductions in 2018 Puget Sound fisheries would not accrue meaningful benefits for either Nooksack population. The Kendall Creek hatchery program retains the native profile of the North Fork Nooksack early Chinook. The South Fork Nooksack Chinook program is designed to retain and enhance the native profile of that population. Both programs are key components in recovery of the Nooksack early Chinook populations and the supplemental spawners from these programs should buffer demographic and genetic risks while improvements in habitat occur. Although the contribution of the South Fork program is new and relatively untested, results from initial returns are promising. Therefore, any substantive constraints to fisheries occurring in 2018 would likely come at the expense of tribal fisheries and would not provide substantive benefits to either population by providing sufficient additional spawners to significantly change its status or trends from what would occur without the fisheries.

*Whidbey/Main Basin:* The ten Chinook salmon populations in the Whidbey/Main Basin region are genetically unique and indigenous to Puget Sound. These areas are managed primarily for natural-origin production. The six Skagit Chinook populations are in PRA Tier 1, the Stillaguamish and Skykomish populations are in PRA Tier 2, and the Snoqualmie population is in PRA Tier 3 (**Table 3**). NMFS has determined that the Suiattle and one each of the early (Upper Sauk, North Fork Stillaguamish), moderately early (Upper Skagit, Lower Sauk, Upper Cascade, South Fork Stillaguamish), and late (Lower Skagit, Skykomish, Snoqualmie) life history types will need to be viable for the Puget Sound Chinook ESU to recover (NMFS 2006a). The ten populations comprise four management units: Skagit Spring (Suiattle, Upper Cascade and Upper Sauk), Skagit Summer/Fall (Upper Skagit, Lower Skagit and Lower Sauk), Snohomish (Skykomish and Snoqualmie) and Stillaguamish (North Fork Stillaguamish and South Fork Stillaguamish). Hatchery contribution to natural escapement is extremely low in the Skagit system and moderate in the Snohomish and Stillaguamish systems (**Table 3**). All populations in the region are expected to be affected by the proposed actions.

Natural-origin average escapement is above rebuilding thresholds for eight populations (Upper Skagit moderately-early, Lower Sauk moderately-early, Upper Sauk early, Suiattle very early, Upper Cascade moderately-early, North Fork Stillaguamish early, Skykomish late, and Snoqualmie late), below the critical threshold for the South Fork Stillaguamish moderately-early, and in between for the Lower Skagit population (**Table 3**). Observed productivity is 1.1 or more for all but the North Fork Stillaguamish population (**Table 3**) while longer term trends indicate declining trends in recruitment for the six of the 10 populations (Upper Skagit, Lower Sauk, Lower Skagit, Stillaguamish and Snoqualmie) (**Table 4**). With the exception of the South Fork Stillaguamish, long term trends in total natural escapement are stable or increasing. Growth rates for natural-origin escapements are increasing for five of the 10 populations and all but the Suiattle are higher than the growth rate for recruitment (**Table 4**). This indicates that sufficient fish are escaping the fisheries to maintain or increase the number of spawners from the parent generation; providing some stabilizing influence for abundance and reducing demographic risks. The critical abundance status and declining escapement and growth trends for the South Fork Stillaguamish population indicate additional concern for this population. Average observed exploitation rates during 2008-2014 ranged between 19 and 48 percent (total) and 7 to 21 percent (SUS)(**Table 10**). About 50 percent or more of the harvest occurred in Alaska and Canadian fisheries.

Under the proposed actions, total exploitation rates for four populations (Upper Skagit, Lower Skagit, Lower Sauk, Snoqualmie) are below their RERs (**Table 17** and **Table 19**). Therefore, NMFS considers the proposed actions to present a low risk to those populations. Six populations (Upper Sauk, Suiattle, Upper Cascade, Skykomish, Snoqualmie, South Fork Stillaguamish) are anticipated to exceed their RERs by a small (1%) to substantial (10%) amount. The exploitation rates in 2018 Puget Sound fisheries are expected to be relatively low across the four management units (8%-18%)(**Table 19**). All populations in the region except the South Fork Stillaguamish are expected to substantially exceed their critical thresholds and six to exceed their rebuilding thresholds by 1.5 times or more (**Table 19**) in 2018. The South Fork Stillaguamish population is expected to remain below its critical threshold. If the proposed actions were not to occur in 2018, we estimate that an additional 7 natural-origin spawners would return to the South Fork which would not provide substantive benefits by providing sufficient additional spawners to significantly change the status or trends of the population from what would occur without the fisheries.

In summary, the effects of the proposed actions in 2018 will meet the recovery plan guidance for at least two to four populations representing the range of life histories displayed in the region at low risk, including those specifically identified as needed for recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU. The Whidbey/Main Basin Region is a stronghold of Chinook production in the ESU. Most populations in the region are doing relatively well relative to abundance criteria given current habitat conditions, representing a diversity of healthy populations in the region as a whole. Although exceedance of the RERs for six of the 10 populations in the region indicates higher risk from the proposed fisheries, the increasing or stable trends in total escapement (hatchery and wild) and growth rate in natural-origin escapement, the robust status of the populations compared with their thresholds in 2018 and the one-year duration of the opinion should mitigate any increased risk as a result of exceeding their RERs. The continued critical status and trends for the South Fork Stillaguamish in combination with exceeding the RER is a cause for concern. However, the moderately early life history type exhibited by the South Fork Stillaguamish population is represented by two other healthier populations in the region which are expected to be at low risk from the proposed fisheries in 2018. The number of additional spawners from further fishery reductions is low and would not change the status or trend of the population.

*Central/South Sound:* There are six populations within the Central/South Sound Region (***Figure 1***). Most are genetically similar, likely reflecting the extensive influence of transplanted hatchery releases, primarily from the Duwamish-Green River population. Except for the White River, Chinook populations in this region exhibit a fall type life history and were historically managed primarily to achieve hatchery production objectives. The White River spring and Nisqually Chinook salmon population are in PRA Tier 1. The Duwamish-Green population is in PRA Tier 2, and the Cedar, Sammamish, and Puyallup populations are in Tier 3. The six populations constitute five management units: Lake Washington (Cedar and Sammamish), Duwamish-Green, White, Puyallup, and Nisqually. Hatchery contribution to spawning escapement is moderate to high for the populations within this region (**Table 3**). NMFS determined the Nisqually and White River populations must be at low extinction risk to recover the ESU (NMFS 2006a). The Nisqually population will need to transition to natural-origin management over time, as it is considered essential to recovery of the ESU. All populations in the region are expected to be affected by the proposed actions.

The basins in the Central/South Sound region are the most urbanized and some of the most degraded in the ESU (SPSS 2007). The lower reaches of all these system flow through lowland areas that have been developed for agricultural, residential, urban, or industrial use. Much of the watersheds or migration corridors for five of the six populations in the region are within the cities of Tacoma or Seattle or their metropolitan environments (Sammamish, Cedar, Duwamish-Green, Puyallup and White). Natural production is limited by stream flows, physical barriers, poor water quality, elimination of intertidal and other estuarine nursery areas, and limited spawning and rearing habitat related to timber harvest and residential, industrial, and commercial development. The indigenous population in all but the Duwamish-Green River and White Rivers have been extirpated and the objective is to recover the populations using the individuals that best approximate the genetic legacy of the original population, reduce the effects of the factors that have limited their production, and provide the opportunity for them to readapt to the existing conditions. Managers have implemented a conservation hatchery program for the White River population. The program is essential to recovery of the population and thus to the ESU. The program regularly has met its hatchery's egg-take objectives and is expected to do so again in 2018, thus ensuring that what remains of the genetic legacy is preserved and used to advance recovery.

Except for the Sammamish population, average natural-origin escapements since 1999 are well above their critical thresholds. Rebuilding escapement thresholds were updated for the Cedar, Green, Puyallup and White River populations in 2017 and 2018 based on new spawner-recruit analyses. Average escapement in the Cedar and White rivers exceeds those rebuilding escapement thresholds (**Table 3**). Observed productivity is 1.0 or more for four of the six populations (**Table 3**). Total escapement trends are stable or increasing for all populations within the region except for the Puyallup River, which is declining (**Table 4**). Growth rates for recruits and escapement are positive for the Cedar, Sammamish and White River; negative for the Duwamish-Green and Puyallup, and mixed for the Nisqually populations (**Table 4**). As with most populations in other Puget Sound regions, the growth rates for escapement are higher than growth rates for recruitment. The fact that growth rates for escapement (i.e., fish through the fishery) are greater than growth rates for return (i.e., abundance before fishing) indicates some stabilizing influence on escapement from past reductions in fishing-related mortality. The combination of declining growth rates and a declining trend in escapement (total and NOR) suggests that the Puyallup population is at a higher risk for survival and recovery than other populations in the region, at least over the longer term. However, it is a Tier 3 population in terms of its role of recovery for the ESU (**Table 3**).

Natural-origin spawning escapements in 2018 are expected to be between the critical and rebuilding thresholds for all of the populations except for the Cedar and White River populations which are expected to be above their rebuilding escapement threshold and the Sammamish River which is expected to be below its critical threshold (***Table 19***). The additional contribution of hatchery spawners to natural escapement for most of these populations (***Table 19***) should mitigate demographic risk. The genetic risks related to the hatchery contributions are less clear, but except for the Duwamish-Green and White Rivers, the indigenous populations were extirpated and are being rebuilt using extant stock of Green River origin.

Average observed exploitation rates during 2008-2014 ranged between 23 and 56% (total) and 15 to 46% (SUS)(**Table 10**), above the RERs for all five management units (**Table 17**). Overall, a larger proportion of the harvest of these populations occurs in SUS fisheries than for populations in other regions of Puget Sound; 18 to 46% of the harvest occurred in Alaska and Canadian fisheries depending on the population (**Table 10**).

Exploitation rate objectives for the Puyallup population were exceeded in all but one year since exploitation rate objectives were adopted in 2003 (Grayum and Unsworth 2015, James 2018a). In 2014, the co-managers examined the available information to identify the contributing factors and took additional management actions in 2015 and again in 2016 to provide greater assurance that the fisheries would meet the overall exploitation rate limits.[27] In 2018, the co-managers conducted another performance assessment to determine why fisheries continued to exceed their exploitation rate objective (James 2018a). Although fisheries had exceeded the relevant objective for Nisqually Chinook in some years prior to 2014, preliminary results of fisheries occurringsince 2014 suggest total exploitation rates likely did not exceed the relevant objectives in more recent years.

The post season estimates of total exploitation rate for Puyallup Chinook exceeded the exploitation rate ceiling objective of 50 percent in place at the time in all but one year from 2010 to 2014 (**Table 18**) by an average of six percentage points. Both Canadian fisheries and a variety of Puget Sound marine sport fisheries were the most consistent contributors to the overages between 2011 and 2014 (James 2018a). Beginning in 2012, managers improved preseason models and shaped fisheries to address the problem. In recent years, the tribal net fishery has been limited to one day or a partial day during the Chinook management period and tribal

[27] For the purposes of assessing management performance, the objectives in place at the time are compared to the exploitation rates resulting from the FRAM model used at the time (i.e., old base period). The FRAM model was recently updated to a new base period and results using that model are different for some years.

managers have shaped fisheries on other salmon species to reduce incidental catch rates on Chinook. Low exploitation rates in the sport fishery are a consequence of the mark-selective fishing rules. Major sections of the river have been closed when the tribal net fisheries for pink, coho, or Chinook salmon were open to reduce impacts on Chinook. Unfortunately rates continued to exceed the objective. In its guidance letter to the Pacific Fisheries Council for 2018 fisheries (Thom 2018), NMFS provided guidance to account for this exceedance of the objective by managing for a management objective of 44 percent unless information was presented that exceedance of the objective had been addressed. The 2018 performance review found that further improvements to estimate age-2 cohort size and to better account for mortality in Canadian fisheries in the FRAM model should reduce the bias in exploitation rate estimation from five to two percentage points (James 2018a). Correction of an error in model inputs for the terminal treaty freshwater fishery and an adjustment factor for the Area 7 marine sport fishery are (D. Dapp and A. Dufault, WDFW, pers. comm., 4/7/2018) anticipated to further reduce the bias if not eliminate it altogether (C. Phinney, PIT, B. Patten, NWIFC, pers. comm., 4/6/2018). After considering this new information, NMFS revised its guidance to 50 percent based on our assessment that remedial action had been taken since 2014 to address the chronic exceedance of the management objective of 50 percent observed in earlier years. Continued monitoring and assessment is warranted.

Exploitation rates in 2018 for all five management units are expected to exceed their RERs or RER surrogates for the populations in those units (Lake Washington representing the Sammamish and Cedar populations, White, Puyallup, and Nisqually) (***Table 19***). Exceeding the surrogate RER for the White River population may result in some increased risk for the pace of adaptation of the local population. This may be a concern since the population is essential to the recovery of the ESU. However, growth rates and the escapement trend for the population are positive including the effects of exploitation rates during the last decade similar to the proposed actions indicating the rates have not impeded growth of the population and would not be expected to do so in 2018. Escapement is expected to be above the upper threshold for the population. The Cedar, Samammish and Puyallup River populations are in PRA Tier 3. The populations share a common life history which is also represented by the Nisqually population in the region. It is important to remember when assessing the risks to populations like these that there is no increased risk to the indigenous populations in these watersheds because they are extirpated. The observed increasing trends in escapement and growth rate for the Cedar and Sammamish, respectively, should mitigate increased risk possible as a result of exceeding the RER in 2018. In addition, the Cedar is expected to exceed its rebuilding threshold in 2018 (Table 15). If the Puget Sound salmon fisheries closed in 2018 we estimate that an additional 16 natural-origin spawners would return to the Sammamish population. These additional spawners would not likely change the status of the population because the number of recruits produced per spawner remains low indicating that habitat conditions are limiting the population's ability to grow (Sammamish = 0.6, Table 3). The low productivity of the watersheds given the much higher level of overall escapement (**Table 3** and **Table 19**) suggests natural-origin recruitment will not increase much beyond existing levels unless constraints limiting marine, freshwater, and estuary survival for these populations are alleviated.

The Nisqually population is a Tier 1 population essential to recovery of the ESU. The anticipated exploitation rate in the proposed Puget Sound salmon fisheries is 32 percent for a total exploitation rate of 47 percent for the 2018 fishing season (**Table 19**). This rate exceeds its surrogate RER of 35 percent. Exceeding the RER infers an increased risk to the survival and recovery of the Nisqually population which is also experiencing a strongly declining growth rate in natural recruitment and a relatively low abundance of natural-origin escapement. However, it is important to consider the degree to which other factors and circumstances mitigate the risk. The reduction in the total exploitation rate ceiling from 52 percent in 2014-2015, 50 percent in 2016-2017 and to 47 percent in 2017 represents steps in a long term transitional strategy designed to reduce rates over time in concert with improvements in habitat and adjustments in hatchery operations (Thom 2017, Turner 2016c, NCSMP 2011, Nisqually Watershed Council 2011, PSIT and WDFW 2010a, SSPS 2007). The indigenous Chinook population is extirpated and the objective is to recover the populations using the individuals that best approximate the genetic legacy of the original population, reduce the effects of the factors that have limited their production, and provide the opportunity for them to readapt to the existing conditions. Currently, there is an increasing trend for natural escapement and a stable trend in growth rate for escapement (**Table 4**). Growth rate for natural-origin escapement (i.e., fish through the fishery) is higher than growth rates for recruitment (i.e., abundance before fishing) indicating that current fisheries management is providing some stabilizing influence to abundance and productivity and thereby reducing demographic risks.

Significant work is occurring in the Nisqually and its environs to improve and restore freshwater and estuarine habitat through land acquisition, estuary improvement, and similar projects. The timing and magnitude of changes in harvest that occur in the Nisqually watershed as part of a longer-term transitional strategy must be coordinated with corresponding habitat and hatchery actions and take into account the current status of the population. The transition will occur over years and perhaps decades as the habitat improves to support better production and the current population becomes locally adapted and less reliant on hatchery production to sustain it. Over the last 15 years, the co-managers have taken significant steps to transition from hatchery goal management to an exploitation rate ceiling approach for the Nisqually population based on impacts to unmarked Chinook.

Managers have been working on development of a new long-term transitional strategy since fall 2015. The initial strategy focused on use of a weir to control the contribution of hatchery-origin spawners to escapement. Due to a variety of implementation factors primarily due to inhospitable river conditions,it was decided that continued use of the weir was no longer feasible. The co-managers are using a recovery framework developed by the Hatchery Science and Review Group (HSRG 2015, Troutt 2016a, Troutt 2016b) as the template for the new transitional strategy. NMFS supports the principles of the HSRG framework as encompassing the key characteristics of a transitional strategy. The co-managers completed a draft plan of the transitional strategy in December 2017 (Nisqually Chinook Workgroup 2017) and are working on finalizing details of the plan in collaboration with NMFS. The few remaining details of the strategy will be finalized in 2018 and the strategy is part of the proposed actions (Shaw 2018).

Given these circumstances, as discussed earlier, it is important to consider the degree to which collectively these actions mitigate the identified risk. The indigenous population is extirpated and the strategy for populations like the Nisqually as described in Section 2.3.1 is to recover the populations using the individuals that best approximate the genetic legacy of the original population, reduce the effects of the factors that have limited their production and provide the opportunity for them to readapt to the existing conditions. The reductions in harvest that have occurred so far and the fishery regime for 2018 are a part of the longer-term transitional strategy that is being coordinated with corresponding habitat and hatchery actions (NCSMP 2011). Managers continue to make substantial changes to the fishery in order to better meet preseason expectations and reduce the chances of exceeding the exploitation rate objectives while providing for meaningful exercise of treaty tribal fishing rights. The trends in overall escapements and growth rate for natural-origin escapement are increasing and stable, the natural-origin escapement anticipated in 2018 is above its critical threshold. Therefore, the additional risks associated with exceeding the RER in the 2018 fishing year should not significantly affect the long-term persistence of the Nisqually Chinook population. Such a strategy is also consistent with NMFS' responsibility as described earlier to balance its tribal trust responsibility and conservation mandates by achieving conservation benefits while reducing disruption of treaty fishing opportunity (Garcia 1998). Tribal fisheries are estimated to account for 82 percent of the harvest of unmarked Nisqually Chinook in 2018 Puget Sound salmon fisheries.

The Duwamish-Green River population is a Tier 2 population in the ESU. A Tier 2 population must recover at a sufficient pace to allow for its potential inclusion as a "Tier 1" population if needed for recovery. The anticipated exploitation rate in the proposed Puget Sound salmon fisheries is 33 percent for a total exploitation rate of 49 percent for the 2018 fishing season (**Table 19**). This rate substantially exceeds its surrogate RER of 15 percent. Exceeding the RER infers an increased risk to the survival and recovery of the population which is also experiencing strongly declining growth rates in natural recruitment and escapement **(Table 4**). However, it is important to consider the degree to which other factors and circumstances mitigate the risk. Growth rate for natural-origin escapement (i.e., fish through the fishery) is higher than growth rates for recruitment (i.e., abundance before fishing) indicating that current fisheries management is providing some stabilizing influence to abundance and productivity and thereby reducing demographic risks. Anticipated escapement in 2018 is well above the critical threshold (**Table 19**) and above the level of natural-origin escapement observed in most years since 2010. Escapements in 2016 and 2017 were much higher than other recent years because of higher than expected returns coupled with more the constrained fisheries in those years crafted based on forecasted low abundance. Anticipated returns in 2018 for the Green River are consistent with the higher abundance observed in recent years and fisheries were shaped preseason to take advantage of that higher abundance.

The co-managers implemented several programs to bolster natural recruitment and take advantage of a gravel supplementation project in the Green River below the Tacoma Headworks Diversion Dam (RM 61.0). Beginning in 2010, adult Chinook that were surplus to Soos Creek Hatchery program needs were transferred to the spawning grounds and allowed to spawn naturally in the Green River. In 2011, a rebuilding program that acclimates and releases juveniles in the upper river (RM 56.1) was initiated. Beginning in 2014, recovery program Chinook began returning to the upper watershed and increased the redd contribution to that area. The increased escapement and shift in spawning distribution to the upper watershed is hypothesized to be strongly linked to the success of the production provided by the Green River supplementation program in the upper watershed. In 2017, approximately 39% of redd production was estimated to come from supplementation returns, much of which can be attributed to redds constructed in the upper watershed. Furthermore, because supplementation program returns are relegated to spawning naturally in the river, all future progeny will be natural origin returns.

Under the proposed actions, the comanagers will use a combination of fishery and broodstock management at the Soos Creek facility to ensure an escapement of at least1,200 natural-origin Chinook on the spawning grounds (Shaw 2018) in 2018. The 1,200 escapement target is the average escapement since the fish were listed in 1999, preserving the gains made over that period, particularly the contribution of the much higher escapements observed in 2016 and 2017. Terminal fisheries are managed using an inseason update and occur contingent on confirmation of the pre-season forecast. Initial results from the update will be available the first week of August. The co-managers will meet with NMFS by phone to discuss the initial results soon after the test fishery. If needed, up to 100% of the natural-origin adults returning to Soos Creek will be transferred to the upper spawning grounds to achieve the spawning escapement goal of 1,200 natural-origin Chinook. However the the need for broodstock supplementation in 2018 should be minimum, as over the past two years the number of natural-origin spawners has been 58 percent larger than the pre-season forecast. Therefore, management of the fisheries in 2018 will ensure that the gains in recent years escapement are preserved, with additional opportunities to strengthen the trend[28].

In summary, given the information and context presented above, the fishing regime represented by the proposed actions should adequately protect four (White, Cedar, Duwamish-Green and Nisqually) of the six populations in the Region in 2018. Therefore, implementation of the proposed 2018 fisheries will meet the recovery plan guidance by contributing to the viability for two to four populations representing the range of life histories displayed by the populations in that region including those specifically identified as needed for recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU (White River and Nisqually). The Sammamish and Puyallup River populations may experience increased risks to the pace of adaptation of the existing local stock given the current status of the natural-origin population for the Sammamish and the strongly negative growth trends for the Puyallup. However, the native populations have been extirpated and potential improvement in natural-origin production is limited by the existing habitat. Analysis suggests further harvest reductions in 2018 Puget Sound fisheries would not measurably affect the risks to survival or recovery for the Sammamish population. Neither population is essential for recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU (PRA Tier 3). Both the life history and Green River genetic legacy of the population are represented by other populations in the Central/South Sound Region.

[28] Noting the higher returns in 2016 and 2017 years, NMFS encourages the outplanting of additional NOR fish where available after brood stock needs are met. That would increase both the proportion and numbers of NORs on the spawning grounds thus improving the trend in natural-origin escapement and testing the capacity of habitat.

*Hood Canal:* There are two populations within the Hood Canal Region: the Skokomish River and the Mid-Hood Canal Rivers populations (***Figure 1***). Each population forms a separate management unit. Both the Skokomish and Mid-Hood Canal Rivers populations are considered PRA Tier 1 populations. The original indigenous populations have been extirpated and hatchery contribution to natural escapement is significant for both populations, although available data for the Mid-Hood Canal population is limited (**Table 3**, Ruckelshaus et al. 2006). NMFS determined that both populations must be at low extinction risk to recover the ESU, so both populations will need to transition to natural-origin management over time.

The historical structure of the Hood Canal Chinook salmon populations is unknown (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006). The largest uncertainty within the Hood Canal populations, as identified by the TRT, is the degree to which Chinook salmon spawning aggregations are demographically linked in the Hamma Hamma, Duckabush, and the Dosewallips rivers. The TRT identified two possible alternative scenarios to the one adopted for the Mid Hood Canal Rivers population. One is that the Chinook salmon in the Hamma Hamma, Duckabush, and Dosewallips were each independent populations (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006). Habitat differences do exist among these Mid-Hood Canal rivers. For example, the Dosewallips River is the only system in the snowmelt-transition hydroregion. The other scenario is that Chinook salmon spawning in the Hamma Hamma, Duckabush, and Dosewallips rivers were subpopulations of a single, large Hood Canal Chinook salmon population with a primary spawning aggregation in the Skokomish River. Only a few historical reports document Chinook salmon spawning in the mid-Hood Canal streams, which is consistent with one theory that they were not abundant in any one stream before hatchery supplementation began in the early 1900s. In addition the overall size of each watershed and the area accessible to anadromous fish are small relative to other independent populations (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006).

Although the TRT ultimately identified two independent populations within Hood Canal Region (the Skokomish and Mid-Hood Canal rivers populations), the TRT noted that important components of the historical diversity may have been lost, potentially due, in part, to the use of transplanted Green River origin fish for hatchery production in the region (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006). The two extant populations reflect the extensive influence of inter-basin hatchery stock transfers and releases in the region, mostly from the Green River (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006). Genetic analysis indicates the Hamma Hamma population is not distinct from spawners returning to the Skokomish Rivers or George Adams or Hoodsport hatcheries (Marshall 1999; Marshall 2000). The degree to which this is influenced by straying of Skokomish River Chinook in addition to the use of George Adams broodstock in the supplementation program is uncertain. Exchange among the Duckabush and Dosewallips stocks, and other Hood Canal natural and hatchery populations is probable although information is limited due to the very low escapements (PSIT and WDFW 2010a). Beginning in 2005, the co-managers increased mark rates of hatchery fish to distinguish them from natural-origin spawners in catch and escapement. The resulting information may provide better estimates of stray rates between the Mid-Hood Canal rivers and the Skokomish River system. Uncertainty about the historical presence of a natural population notwithstanding, current habitat conditions may not be suitable to sustain natural Chinook production. There is evidence to suggest that the declines in abundance in the early to mid- 2000's were in part related to concurrent changes in marine net pen yearling Chinook hatchery production in the area, and therefore not indicative of changes in the status or productivity of the population per se. (Adicks 2010). Genetic analysis also indicates no difference between fish originating from the George Adams hatchery and those spawning naturally in the Skokomish River (Marshall 1999, Marshall 2000).

As described in the environmental baseline, historically, low flows resulting from operation of the Cushman dams and habitat degradation of freshwater and estuarine habitat have adversely affected the Skokomish population. A settlement agreement finalized in 2008 between the Skokomish Tribe and Tacoma Power, the dam operator, resulted in a plan to restore normative flows to the river, improve habitat, and restore an early Chinook life history in the river using supplementation. Elements of the settlement agreement were complemented by additional actions proposed by the co-managers in 2014 (Redhorse 2014) to develop a late-timed fall Chinook stock that is better suited to the historic flow regime, reduced hatchery production and fishery adjustments. By selectively managing broodstock, the program seeks to re-establish a later-timed fall Chinook population, similar to the dominant life-history that existed historically in the watershed. As described in the Environmental Baseline, there can be adverse effects from hatchery programs from competition, predation, genetics, and other factors depending on the specific circumstances. This program does not propose a new hatchery or enlarge the current program, but uses a component of the existing program to reduce demographic risks and improve the long-term prognosis for recovery. The initial phase of the strategy also included a transfer of production out of the Skokomish watershed to the Hoodsport Hatchery. The first broodstock for the program was collected in 2014 and additional review and development of the late-timed hatchery program was undertaken in 2015 and 2016. The late-timed hatchery program complements a similar conservation hatchery program that seeks to reintroduce spring Chinook into the Skokomish River. That program was also initiated in 2014 with the transfer of the first brood stock for spawning and subsequent release. Both the spring and late-fall programs are included as part of the proposed actions in 2018 (Unsworth and Grayum 2016, Speaks 2017, Shaw 2018). In addition, significant work is occurring to stabilize river channels, restore riparian forests, improve adult access to the South Fork Skokomish, and improve and restore estuarine habitat through land acquisition, levee breaching and similar projects (SIT and WDFW 2010, Redhorse 2014, SIT and WDFW 2017). The timing and magnitude of changes in harvest that occur in the Skokomish watershed as part of the longer-term transitional strategy must be coordinated with corresponding habitat and hatchery actions and take into account the current status of the population. The transition will occur over years and perhaps decades as the habitat improves to support better production and the current population becomes locally adapted and less reliant on hatchery production to sustain it. Over the last decade, the co-managers have transitioned from hatchery goal management to management for natural escapement, including an exploitation rate for unmarked (primarily natural origin) Skokomish Chinook of 50% beginning in 2010.

Average natural-origin escapements for both populations are below their critical thresholds (**Table 3**). When hatchery-origin spawners are taken into account, average escapement for the Skokomish exceeds its rebuilding threshold (**Table 3**). Productivity is less than 1.0 (**Table 3**).

Growth rates for recruitment are declining for both populations and growth rates for escapement are also declining for the Skokomish population. The trend in natural escapement for both populations are stable (**Table 4**). However, escapement trends in the individual rivers comprising the Mid-Hood Canal rivers population have not varied uniformly. The TRT suggests that most of the historical Chinook salmon spawning in the Mid-Hood Canal rivers was “likely to [have] occurred in the Dosewallips River because of its larger size and greater area accessible to anadromous fish” (Ruckelshaus et al. 2006). However, production from the Hamma Hamma Fall Chinook Restoration Program, a hatchery-based supplementation program, has contributed substantially to the Mid-Hood Canal rivers population. Since 1998, the spawning aggregation in the Hamma Hamma River generally comprised the majority of the Mid-Hood Canal rivers population. In comparison, the other two rivers in the population have seen decreases in escapements during this same time period. Spawning levels have been 20 fish or less since 2010 in the Duckabush and Dosewallips rivers. The goal of the restoration program is to restore a healthy, natural-origin, self-sustaining population of Chinook salmon to the Hamma Hamma River. This hatchery production is generally responsible for the increased escapement observed in the Hamma Hamma River. From 2010 to 2016, on average 76% of the Chinook salmon spawning in the Hamma Hamma River were of hatchery origin (WDFW and PSTIT 2009; WDFW and PSTIT 2011, WDFW and PSTIT 2012, WDFW and PSTIT 2013, WDFW and PSTIT 2014, WDFW and PSTIT 2015, WDFW and PSTIT 2016, WDFW and PSTIT 2017). The program was discontinued in 2017 because of the poor returns from the program indicating additional uncertainty for this population in the future. Adult returns from prior releases or the program will contribute to mid-Hood Canal escapements in 2018. As with populations in other Puget Sound regions, the growth rates for escapement are higher than growth rates for recruitment (**Table 4**) indicating fisheries management seems to have had a stabilizing influence.

Total average observed exploitation rates during 2008-2014 were 23 and 57 percent for the Mid-Hood Canal and Skokomish populations, respectively (**Table 10**), both well above their RERs (**Table 17**). Southern U.S. exploitation rates during the same period averaged 11 and 45 percent for the Mid-Hood Canal and Skokomish River populations, respectively (**Table 10**). Alaska and Canadian fisheries accounted for 53 and 21 percent of the harvest of the Mid Hood Canal and Skokomish rivers populations (**Table 10**).

Under the proposed actions, escapement for both populations is expected to be below the critical thresholds (**Table 19**). Total exploitation rates for both populations are expected to exceed their RER or RER surrogate (**Table 19**). For the Mid-Hood Canal population, the exploitation rate in 2018 Puget Sound salmon fisheries under the proposed actions is expected to be low (6%; **Table 19**). If Puget Sound salmon fisheries were closed in 2018 we estimate that four additional natural-origin spawners would return to the Mid-Hood Canal population. Approximately 186 additional natural origin Chinook spawners would return to the Skokomish River. This would not change the status of the Mid-Hood Canal Rivers population in 2018 relative to its critical and rebuilding thresholds but would change the status of the Skokomish population by increasing spawning escapement above its critical threshold.

For the Skokomish population, the anticipated exploitation rate in 2018 under the proposed actions from Puget Sound salmon fisheries is 31 percent with a total exploitation rate in 2018 of 48 percent. In Puget Sound fisheries, 86 and 35 percent of fishing-related mortality is expected to occur in tribal treaty fisheries for the Skokomish and Mid-Hood Canal populations, respectively. Exceeding the RER infers an increased risk to the survival and recovery of the Skokomish population which is experiencing declining growth rate in natural recruitment, a stable trend in escapement, low abundance of natural-origin escapement and is essential to the recovery of the ESU. Modelling suggests that a 50 percent exploitation rate, if implemented over a 25 year period, would represent a 50 percentage point decrease in the probability of a rebuilt Skokomish population compared with achieving the RER of 35 percent and a very small change (1 percentage point) in the probability that the population falling below the critical level (NMFS 2011b).

Available information indicates that observed exploitation rates have exceeded the management objective of 50 percent in almost all years since its adoption in 2010, likely resulting in an even greater risk to rebuilding a sustainable population (**Table 19**). The ceiling was exceeded each year from 2010 to 2012 by 2 percent to 10 percent (average 6%) with virtually all of the overage attributable to Hood Canal terminal net fisheries. Areas 6 and 7 marine sport fisheries consistently contributed to a lesser extent (James 2018a). Post season estimates of exploitation rates in preterminal fisheries were generally below expected levels. In a 2014 performance review, errors in forecasting terminal abundance and estimating catch per unit effort were identified as the primary contributing factors. In response, managers tackled the problem on two fronts; improving forecast methods and making changes in both the terminal tribal net and sport fisheries in 2013-2017. Managers increasingly restricted and restructured the tribal net fishery to reduce the harvest rate and meet the target levels. The number of fishing days during the Chinook management period was reduced from 24 in 2010 to 12 days in 2017 with additional delays in the coho fishery. The lower Skokomish River was closed during the Chinook management period (Bowhay and Warren 2016, James 2016, G. Rose, NWIFC, pers. comm., 4/4/2018). This schedule results in no treaty net fishing in the Skokomish River over five continuous weeks in 2018; the last two weeks of the Chinook management period and the first three weeks of the coho management period. These substantial changes implemented in the fishery in 2016 and 2017 are proposed again for 2018. Changes also have been made in the management of the sport fishery in the Skokomish River. The harvest rate on unmarked Skokomish Chinook in the sport fishery was reduced from about 14% to an average of less than 3% with the implementation of mark selective fishing beginning in 2010. Skokomish River sport fisheries were closed in 2016 and 2017 (Bowhay and Warren 2016, Speaks 2017) and will be closed in 2018 (Shaw 2018).

In its guidance letter to the Pacific Fisheries Council for 2018 fisheries (Thom 2018), NMFS provided guidance to account for chronic exceedance of the exploitation rate ceiling by managing for a management objective of 44 percent (the average exceedence of the exploitation rate) unless information was presented that the exceedence had been addressed. The co-managers presented additional information that indicated some reduction in the chronic exceedance of the exploitation rate had probably occurred as a result of these additional actions, but results were mixed indicated that additional caution was still warranted. The 2018 performance review indicated errors in FRAM model inputs for Canadian fisheries were corrected, reducing the underestimate of fishing mortality by 0.8 percent (James 2018a). Two of the last four years' estimates of exploitation rates were below the objective and two were higher (James 2018a, Rose 2018). Available information indicates that although 2016 and 2017 exploitation rates were under the objective, they were still 2 to 3 percentage points higher than the preseason expectation. Post-season estimates of natural-origin escapement were high in 2017 but low in previous years under the new forecast method. Therefore, the co-managers agreed to manage the Skokomish Chinook population for a 48 percent management objective in 2018. Given the pattern in recent years just described, this should improve the likelihood that the exploitation rate objective will be met in 2018.

Given these circumstances, as discussed earlier, it is important to consider the degree to which other factors and circumstances mitigate the risk. The indigenous population is extirpated and the strategy for populations like the Skokomish as described in Section 2.3.1 is to recover the populations using the individuals that best approximate the genetic legacy of the original population, reduce the effects of the factors that have limited their production and provide the opportunity for them to readapt to the existing conditions. The reductions in harvest that have occurred so far are a part of the longer-term transitional strategy that is being coordinated with corresponding habitat and hatchery actions (Skokomish and WDFW 2010, Redhorse 2014, SIT and WDFW 2018). Managers continue to make substantial changes to the fishery in order to better meet preseason expectations and reduce the chances of exceeding the exploitation rate objectives while providing for meaningful exercise of treaty tribal fishing rights. Additional work to improve preseason forecasts and develop a reliable inseason update could further increase the chances of meeting the management objective. As part of the proposed actions and in response to commitments in the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest RMP (PSIT and WDFW 2010a), the co-managers also developed a plan to manage broodstock from the existing George Adams Chinook hatchery program to establish a late-timed Skokomish fall Chinook run similar to the historic run timing (see above) (Redhorse 2014). This action is in addition to the program to reintroduce spring Chinook, that was initiated in 2014 and as discussed above, has been developed further as part of the proposed actions in 2018 (Shaw 2018). The two-track strategy of reintroduction and local adaptation should maximize the prospect for establishing at least one self-sustaining Chinook population in the Skokomish River. The run-timing for these programs (earlier and later) will be better suited to the environmental conditions in the river on their return (Skokomish and WDFW 2010, SIT and WDFW 2018) than the timing of the current Chinook population that returns in late summer when flow and temperatures can cause adverse spawning and incubation conditions. If successful, establishment of a self-sustaining spring Chinook run and/or a late-timed component of the extant fall Chinook population should significantly contribute to recovery of the Skokomish Chinook population. The total average escapement is above the level of the rebuilding threshold, the escapement trend of natural spawners is at least stable and, in particular, growth rates for natural-origin escapement are slightly higher than growth rates for recruitment. This indicates that current fisheries management is providing some stabilizing influence to abundance and productivity; reducing demographic risks. However, the low productivity, continued critical status of natural-origin escapement and negative growth rates in recruitment and escapement for the Skokomish Chinook population underscore the importance of meeting the exploitation rate objective such that fisheries do not represent more of a risk than is consistent with a transitional strategy to recovery.

*Strait of Juan de Fuca:* The Strait of Juan de Fuca Region has two watershed PRA Tier 1 populations including an early-timed population in the Dungeness, and a fall-timed population on the Elwha (**Figure 1**). Each population is managed as a separate management unit. NMFS determined that both populations must be at low extinction risk to recover the ESU. The status of both populations is constrained by significant habitat-related limiting factors that are in the process of being addressed. Survival and productivity of the Dungeness population are adversely affected by low flows from agricultural water withdrawals and by other land use practices (PSIT and WDFW 2010a, SSPS 2005). Projects have been implemented to pipe irrigation lines to reduce evaporation, improve management of groundwater withdrawal, and purchase available property to contribute to restoration of the flood plain. Until recently all but the lower five miles of the Elwha River was blocked to anadromous fish migration by two dams, and the remaining habitat in the lower river was severely degraded. Ambitious plans to remove the dams and restore natural habitat in the watershed began in 2011. Dam removal was completed in 2014. With dam removal, river channels are cutting through the old dam reservoir lake beds and significant restoration projects are underway to assist riparian regeneration and improve spawning and rearing habitat as the river recovers. The estuary is reforming rapidly as silt previously entrained by the dams moves through the system and out into the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Chinook began moving upstream into previously inaccessible reaches of the watershed almost immediately. The actions and the continuously improving estuarine and river conditions should significantly increase productivity and abundance of Elwha Chinook and enhance spatial structure and diversity. However, improvements are still likely to take years or and possibly decades before they are fully realized.

Given the condition of salmon habitat in the Dungeness watershed and the significant disruption to the Elwha system as a result of dam removal, the conservation hatchery programs currently operating in the Dungeness and Elwha will be key to protecting for the near-term, and ultimately restoring the Chinook populations in the Strait of Juan de Fuca Region. Analyses of the growth rate of recruitment demonstrates a relative lack of response in natural-origin production by either population (Dungeness=1.03 growth rate of recruits, Elwha=0.91 growth rate of recruits, **Table 4**) which is consistent with other analysis that habitat and environmental factors within the watershed and in marine waters are limiting natural-origin recruitment (Ward et al. 2008).

The average natural-origin escapement for both populations is estimated to be below their critical thresholds and productivity for both is likely less than 1.0 although direct estimates are not currently available for the Elwha population (**Table 3**). When hatchery-origin spawners are taken into account, average escapement exceeds the critical threshold for the Dungeness and the rebuilding threshold for the Elwha. The trend for natural escapement (HOR+NOR) is increasing for both populations (**Table 4**). The trends in growth rate are positive for the Dungeness and strongly negative for the Elwha (**Table 4**) which is not surprising given the historically poor conditions in the watershed. The conservation hatchery programs operating in the Dungeness and Elwha Rivers buffer demographic risks and preserve the genetic legacies of the populations as degraded habitat is recovered. Average observed exploitation rates during 2008-2014 were 17 percent (total) and 4 and 5 percent (SUS) for the Dungeness and Elwha River populations, respectively (**Table 10**), both above their RERs (**Table 17**). However, seventy-one percent or more of the harvest of both populations occurred in Alaska and Canadian fisheries (**Table 10**).

Under the proposed actions, escapement for both populations is expected to be below the critical threshold for the Dungeness and just above the critical threshold for the Elwha (**Table 19**). However, when hatchery spawners are taken into account, escapements are much higher, more than double recent year averages (**Table 3** and **Table 17**). Total exploitation rates for both populations are expected to exceed their RER surrogates and this is a concern given the challenges to the populations from other sectors. However, a significant majority of the harvest occurs outside the jurisdiction of the co-managers (**Table 10** and **Table 19**) and exploitation rates in 2018 Puget Sound salmon fisheries are expected to be about 3% (**Table 19**). If Puget Sound salmon fisheries closed in 2018 we estimate that only one and two additional natural-origin spawner would return to the Dungeness and Elwha escapements, respectively. Therefore, further constraints on 2018 Puget Sound fisheries would not substantively effect the persistence of either population by providing sufficient additional spawners to significantly change its status or trends than what would occur without the fisheries.

#### 2.5.1.2 Effects on Critical Habitat

Critical habitat is located in many of the areas where the fisheries under the proposed actions would occur. However, fishing activities will take place over relatively short time periods in any particular area. The PBFs most likely to be affected by the proposed actions are (1) water quality, and forage to support spawning, rearing, individual growth, and maturation; and, (2) the type and amount of structure and rugosity that supports juvenile growth and mobility.

Most of the harvest related activities in Puget Sound occur from boats or along river banks, with most of the fishing activity in the marine and nearshore areas. The gear fishermen use include hook-and-line, drift and set gillnets, beach seines, and to a limited extent, purse seines. These types of fishing gear in general actively avoid contact with the substrate because of the resultant interference with fishing and potential loss of gear. Derelict fishing gear can affect habitat in a number of ways including barring passage, harming eelgrass beds or other estuarine benthic habitats, or occupying space that would otherwise be available to salmon.

Due to recent additional outreach and assessment efforts (i.e. Gibson 2013), and recent lost net inventories (Beattie and Adicks 2012; Beattie 2013; James 2017a) it is likely that fewer nets will become derelict in the upcoming 2018/19 fishing season compared to several years and decades ago (previous estimates of derelict nets were 16 to 42 annually (NRC 2010)). In 2016, an estimated 14 nets became derelict, and nine of them were recovered (James 2017a), in 2014 an estimated 13 nets became derelict, 12 of which were recovered (James 2015), and in 2013 and estimated 15 nets were lost, 12 of which were recovered (Beattie 2014) and in 2012, eight nets were lost and six were recovered (Beattie and Adicks 2012). In a more recent report - from June 2012 to February 2016 a total of 77 newly lost nets were reported, and only 6 of these were reported by commercial fishermen (Drinkwin 2016). Based on this new information we estimate that a range of six to 20 gill nets may be lost in the 2018/2019 fishing season, but up to 75% of these nets would be removed within days of their loss and have little potential to damage critical habitat.

Possible fishery-related impacts on riparian vegetation and habitat would occur primarily through bank fishing, movement of boats and gear to the water, and other stream side usages. The proposed fishery implementation plan includes actions that would minimize these impacts if they did occur, such as area closures. Any impact to water quality from vessels transiting critical habitat areas on their way to the fishing grounds or while fishing would be short term and transitory in nature and minimal compared to the number of other vessels in the area (NMFS 2004c). Also these activities would occur to some degree through implementation of fisheries or activities other than the Puget Sound salmon fisheries, i.e., recreational boating and marine species fisheries. Construction activities related to salmon fisheries are limited to maintenance and repair of existing facilities (such as boat launches), and are not expected to result in any additional impacts on riparian habitats.

By removing adults that would otherwise return to spawning areas, harvest could affect water quality and forage for juveniles by decreasing the return of marine derived nutrients to spawning and rearing areas, although this has not been identified as a limiting factor for the ESU. The proposed actions incorporate management for maximum sustainable spawner escapement and implementation of management measures to prevent over-fishing. Both of these actions have been recommended as ways to address the potential adverse effects of removing marine derived nutrients represented by salmon carcasses (PFMC 2014b). Because these measures are part of the proposed actions, there will be minimal disturbance to vegetation, and negligible harm to spawning or rearing habitat, water quantity and water quality from the proposed actions.

### 2.5.2 Puget Sound Steelhead

#### 2.5.2.1 Assessment Approach

As discussed in the Environmental Baseline (Section 2.4.1), available data on escapement of steelhead populations in Puget Sound are limited. Since data are currently insufficient to provide a full run reconstruction for most natural origin steelhead populations needed to assess harvest rates on summer run steelhead populations as well as most summer/winter and winter run populations, an alternative approach was developed.

This alternative approach took into account information from the listing determination for Puget Sound steelhead. NMFS determined that the harvest management strategy that eliminated the direct harvest of natural origin steelhead in the 1990s, prior to listing, largely addressed the threat of harvest to the listed DPS (72 Fed. Reg. 26722, May 11, 2007). A key consideration in recent biological opinions was therefore whether catch rates had continued to decline since listing which would reinforce the conclusion that the threat of harvest to the DPS continued to be low. To assess this premise, NMFS first compared the average catch of steelhead in mixed stock marine area fisheries (**Table 11**; areas outside river and lake systems) at the time of listing to catches in more recent years and concluded that catch had declined by an average of 45% described in Section 2.4.1, **Table 11**. Prior to 2018 NMFS then compared the harvest rates in terminal area fisheries (freshwater) for a set of five index population for the same set of years and concluded that the average harvest rate had declined by 64% described in Section 2.4.1, **Table 13**. Beginning in April of 2018 one of the index populations, the Skagit River, had a separate harvest plan approved (NMFS 2018a; discussed in Section 2.4.1). As such, the index populations used for calculating appropriate terminal harvest rates will now consist of the Puyallup, Nisqually, Snohomish, and Green rivers.

Available information on harvest rates continues to be limited. In the recent status review, NMFS concluded that the status of Puget Sound steelhead has not changed significantly since the time of listing (Ford 2011; NWFSC 2015; NMFS 2017a) and reaffirmed the observation that harvest rates on natural-origin steelhead continue to decline and are unlikely to substantially affect the abundance of Puget Sound steelhead (NWFSC 2015). As a result, NMFS continues to rely on the logic described above. In this opinion, NMFS supplements the earlier analysis for marine fisheries by comparing estimated catch to a conservative minimum estimate of the abundance of the Puget Sound steelhead DPS, thus providing an outside and very conservative estimate of what the harvest rate of the marine fisheries could be. To further assess the harvest rates in freshwater fisheries, NMFS considered the harvest rates for the five index populations associated with the proposed actions. In this supplemental analysis, NMFS therefore also considers how the terminal harvest rates under the proposed actions compare to the rates at the time of listing and in more recent years, i.e., do the terminal harvest rates under the proposed actions continue to be low?

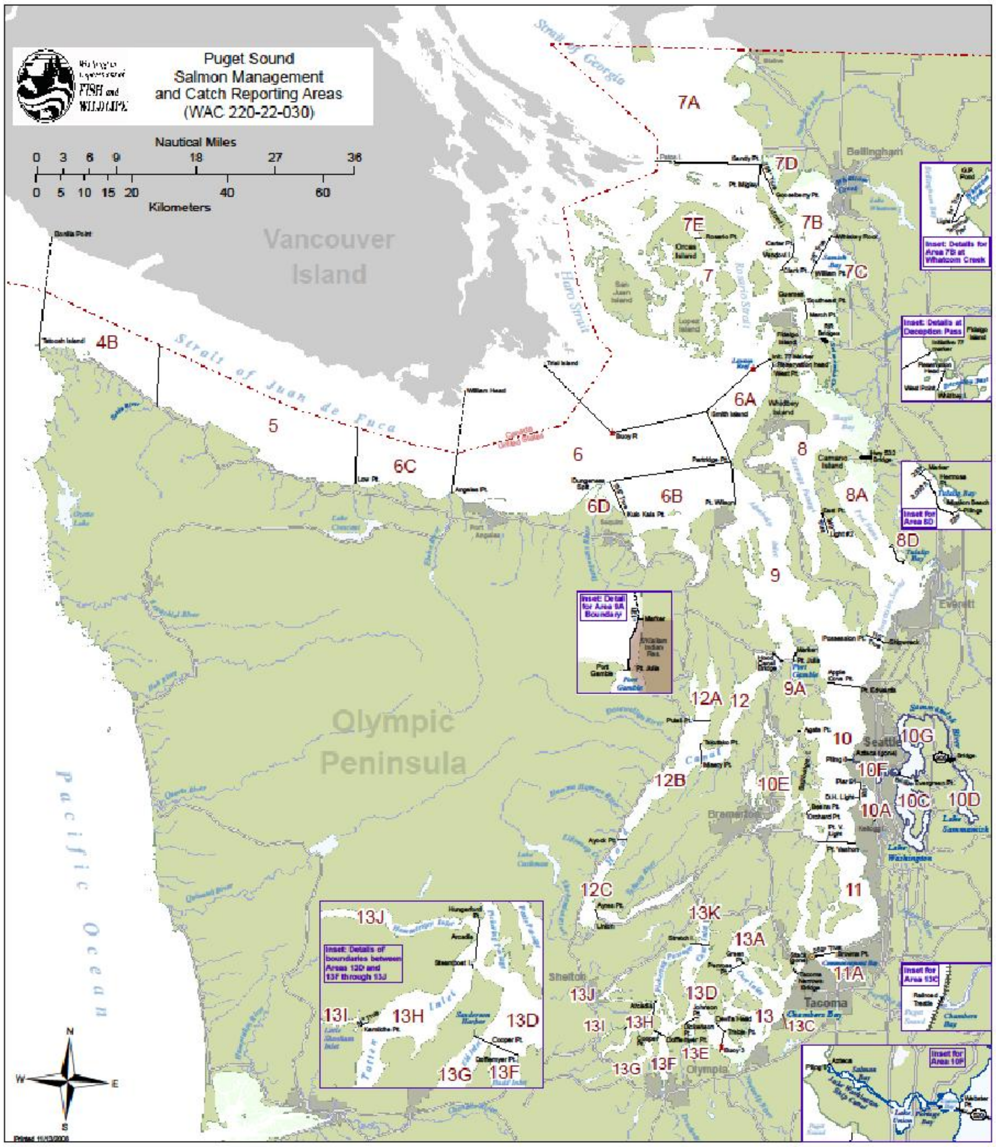



**Figure 16.** Puget Sound Commercial Salmon Management and Catch Reporting Areas (WAC 220-22-030).

#### 2.5.2.2 Effects on Species

Due to data limitations for nearly all Puget Sound steelhead populations, it is not possible to determine the total abundance of steelhead within the DPS at this time. However, it is possible to provide a minimum estimate that includes information for the populations that are available. The resulting annual minimum average abundance of 23,241 steelhead includes listed and unlisted hatchery fish, and listed natural-origin fish based on fisheries data provided by co-managers (Leland 2018). The estimate includes total run size information for five out of the 32 historical steelhead populations (i.e., Skagit River summer/winter run; Snohomish winter run; Green winter run; Puyallup winter run; and Nisqually winter run) (PSSTRT 2013b). It also includes escapement estimates for 15 additional steelhead populations, although it does not include their associated harvest because the population specific catch data are not available. The estimate does not include anything for 12 of the 32 historical steelhead populations or any fish that return to the hatchery racks for either the listed or unlisted hatchery programs. It also does not include anything related to Canadian steelhead populations that are also part of the composition of steelhead affected by marine area fisheries. Therefore, the estimate of 23,241 is a partial and very conservative estimate of the overall abundance of Puget Sound steelhead that are available to marine area fisheries. Nonetheless, it provides some useful perspective about the likely impact of marine area fisheries.

Previous biological opinions have assessed fisheries impacts of up to 325 steelhead in Puget Sound marine waters described in Section 2.4.1; **Table 11** (NMFS 2011a, NMFS 2014a, NMFS 2015b, NMFS 2016a, NMFS 2017d). This number represents unlisted and listed steelhead taken in tribal and non-tribal marine area salmon fisheries under fishing regimes that had eliminated the directed harvest of wild steelhead. This estimate is consistent with the assessment of impacts at the time of listing that provided the basis for the conclusion that the regime had largely addressed the threat of decline to the listed DPS posed by harvest. Under the proposed actions, the expected impact on Puget Sound steelhead in marine fisheries from implementation of the proposed fisheries could be as high as this level during the 2018-2019 season (Shaw 2018). Impacts of up to 325 steelhead would represent an overall harvest rate on Puget Sound steelhead of 1.4% (325/23,241 = 1.4). As described above, because the estimate of overall abundance is low, this is a very conservative estimate of what the harvest rate to Puget Sound steelhead in marine area fisheries is likely to be. More likely, the catch of steelhead in marine area fisheries in recent years (178) has been well below the 325 reported at the time of listing and better represents what the expected catch is likely to be. As described in Section 2.4.1 and summarized in **Table 11**, this represents a 45% decline in recent years.

The average harvest rate in terminal area fisheries for the four index populations (i.e. Snohomish winter run; Green winter run; Puyallup winter run; and Nisqually winter run) under implementation of the proposed actions is anticipated to be below 4.2 percent based on the similarity of catch patterns and fishing regulations (Shaw 2018). This expectation is substantiated by the consistent pattern of significantly lower harvest rates observed in recent years described in Section 2.4.1 and summarized in **Table 13**, which showed a 64% reduction in the average terminal harvest rate for the five index populations. The harvest rate of 4.2 percent was the assessment of impacts at the time of listing that provided the basis for the conclusion that the regime had largely addressed the threat of decline to the listed DPS posed by harvest.

Therefore, based on the best available information, the anticipated impacts to Puget Sound steelhead populations under the proposed actions, are expected to remain low and consistent with levels that NMFS has previously concluded are unlikely to substantially affect the abundance and overall productivity of Puget Sound steelhead.

**Fishery Related Research**

Three harvest research projects are proposed during the 2018-19 steelhead fishery season. Each test fishery study has the potential for incidental take of Puget Sound steelhead. Harvest research projects are described and their impacts summarized below.

*Pacific Salmon Commission (PSC) Fall Chum Salmon Study*

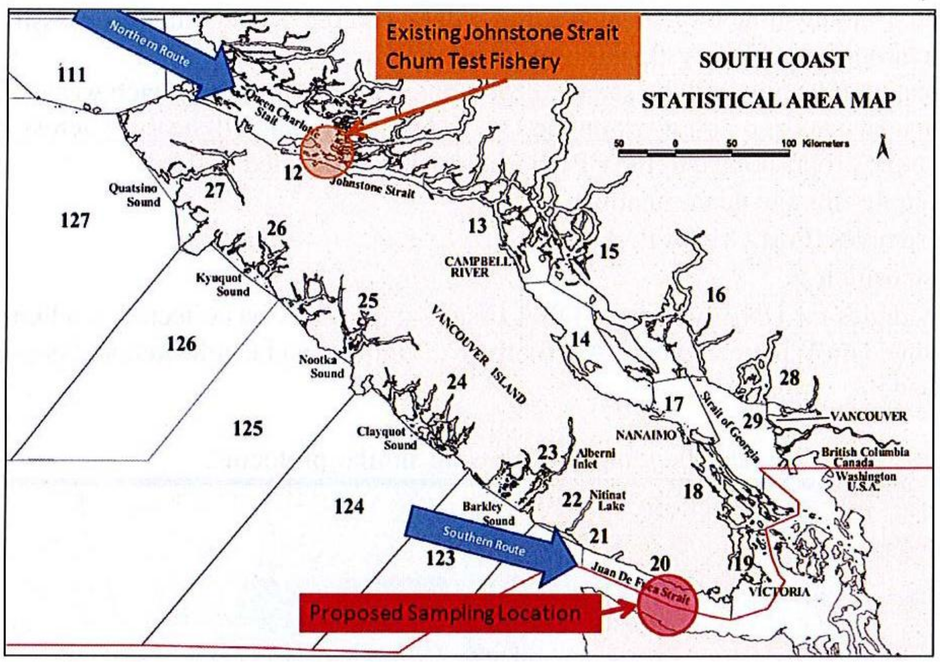



**Figure 17.** Location of proposed sampling site for PSC chum genetic sampling study.

A PSC Chum Technical Committee has received funding from the Southern Endowment Fund to implement a fall chum salmon genetic stock composition research test fishery study on fall chum salmon migrating through the Strait of Juan de Fuca during the 2018 steelhead fishery season. The fall chum research proposal is included in BIA's proposed action and is summarized here (Shaw 2018). This is the second year of the study and follows the same methodology as in 2016. The proposed study will use one purse seine vessel four days per week for five weeks during October and November in Area 5 (U.S. territory) **(Figure 17)**. Catch per Unit Effort information will be collected as well as biological samples for stock identification purposes. Sampled chum will be removed by dipnet from the seine, all other fish will be released directly from the seine while still in the water, by submerging the cork line (Shaw 2018). Implementation of the study in 2017 resulted in 0 encounters with ESA-listed steelhead (Shaw 2018).

There is the potential to encounter small numbers of non-listed and ESA-listed Puget Sound natural and hatchery steelhead and Chinook during implementation of the study. Anticipated steelhead encounters would be no more than 10 steelhead, released in-water, alive with minimal handling with a potential mortality of 2 steelhead of unknown origin and listing status. Given the study would occur in a pre-terminal area, some portion of the encountered fish could be Canadian or coastal steelhead from outside the Puget Sound DPS. The fish are not sampled for marks (Section 2.4.1) so it is not possible at this time to assign harvest encounters to specific populations. The estimate of 23,241 is a partial and very conservative estimate of the overall abundance of Puget Sound steelhead that are affected by marine area fisheries and provides some useful perspective about the likely impact of marine area research and monitoring activities. Ten steelhead encounters would represent 0.04% of the total natural-origin abundance of Puget Sound steelhead assuming all encountered steelhead were of natural origin and from the Puget Sound DPS. This research impact is therefore considered to have a negligible effect on natural-origin steelhead abundance, productivity, spatial structure, and diversity and is unlikely to impede the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS from reaching viability.

The study is also expected to encounter no more than 200 immature Chinook, some of which may be listed. Additionally the study expects the potential for incidental mortality of no more than 60 immature Chinook. These level of encounters and incidental mortalities would result in an extremely small increase in the total exploitation rate on individual Puget Sound populations, ranging from 0 to 0.08%. For most populations, the increase would be 0.01% or less (Shaw 2018). These low exploitation rates when combined with other research fishing activies are expected to fall below the 1% exploitation rate per Puget Sound Chinook management allowance reserved for this type of activity as described in the 2010 RMP and therefore part of the proposed actions (Shaw 2018, PSIT and WDFW 2010a). Based on the results of the 2017 study in which few listed Chinook were encountered (21 immature Chinook, 3 adult Chinook), we expect the impacts would be less. This research impact is considered to have a negligible effect on natural-origin Chinook abundance, productivity, spatial structure, and diversity and is unlikely to impede the Puget Sound Chinook ESU from reaching viability.

*Lake Washington/Lake Sammamish Predator Removal Test Fisheries*

Two studies are proposed to occur within the Lake Washington area. Both are designed to remove warm water fish species that prey on salmon and steelhead although the focus of the studies differ. Both proposals are summarized here and incorporated by reference (Shaw 2018).

The Muckleshoot Indian Tribe (MIT) proposes to implement a test fishery to collect information on the feasibility and potential impacts of a directed ceremonial, subsistence, and commercial warm water fish species fishery in the Lake Washington Basin. The MIT proposed warm water test fishing study area is divided into eight zones (**Figure 18**). The test fishery timing and locations will decrease encounters of ESA-listed species, including steelhead, and will use gear designed to avoid these species as well (Shaw 2018). The first year of the study in 2017 encountered no steelhead. Nonetheless the warm water test fishery includes a precautionary estimate that it may impact up to 3 Puget Sound adult steelhead. The test fishery will discontinue upon encountering the third adult steelhead (Shaw 2018). Additionally the study authors anticipate no potential for encountering migratory adult Chinook, but will shut down upon encountering that fifth natural origin adult Chinook.

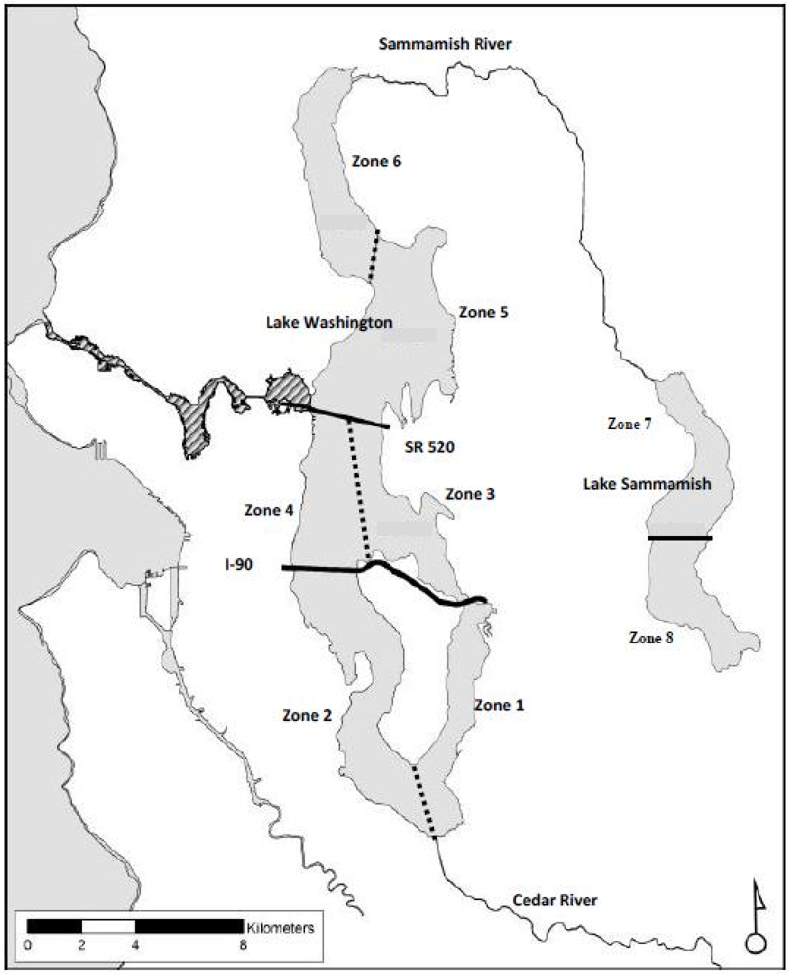



**Figure 18.** Muckleshoot Indian Tribe proposed warm water test fishery zones (1-8) and exclusion areas (cross-hatched) that will not be fished in order to minimize the potential for adult steelhead encounters (Shaw 2018).

The WDFW proposes an additional study to implement a gillnet test fishery in the Lake Washington Shipping Canal (LWSC). The objective of the proposed study is to (1) describe the relative abundance and size structure of piscivorous fishes inhabiting the LWSC during the salmon smolt out-migration period and (2) determine the relative proportion of juvenile salmonids in the stomach contents of piscivorous fishes that inhabit different habitat types within the LWSC (Garrett and Bosworth 2018). Gill netting would only occur from mid-May to mid-July 2018, during a portion of the salmon smolt out-migration period, and would consist of four sampling days. Sampling would occur overnight with approximately 6 to 8 monofilament gill nets, of variable mesh size, deployed each sampling night. Nets will be deployed at selected stations within the study area (Figure below).

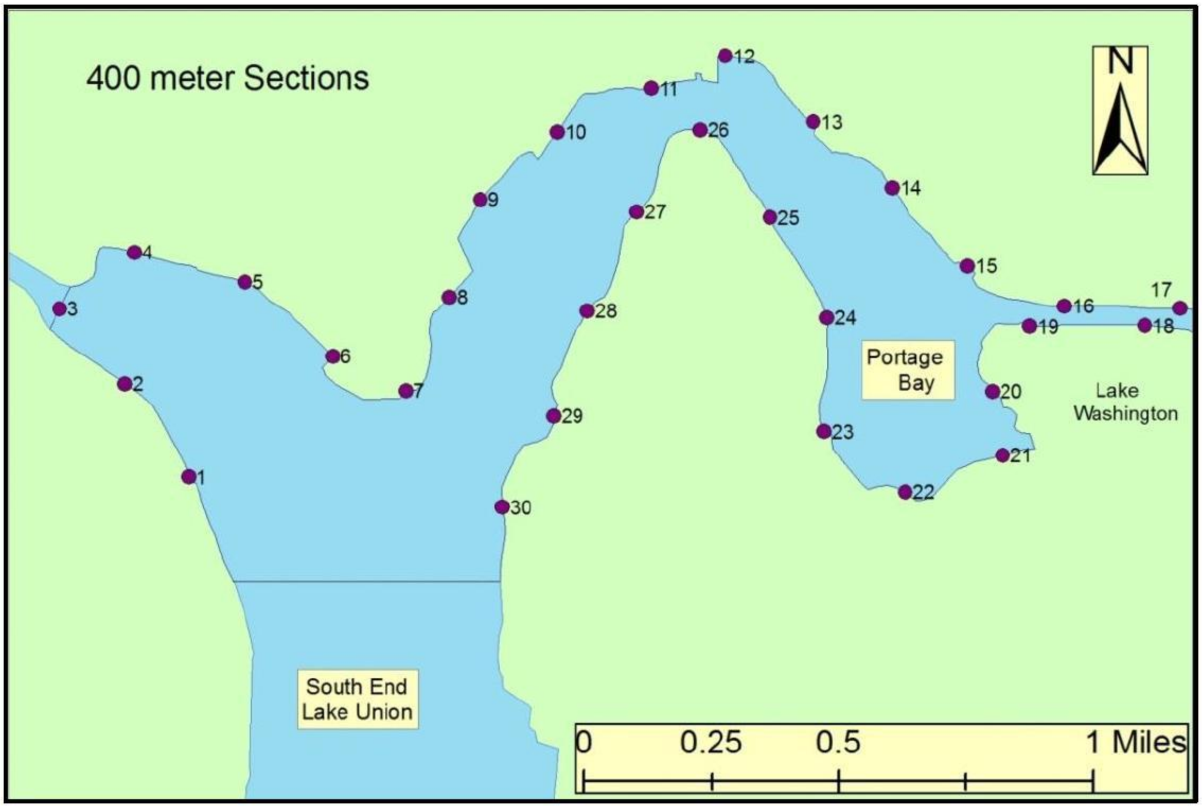



**Figure 19.** Designated study area within the Lake Washington Shipping Canal (492 acres) including 400-meter sampling sections (Garret and Bosworth 2018).

WDFW does not anticipate encountering adult steelhead during the proposed study because any adult steelhead would not be migrating during the periods of the study (Garret and Bosworth 2018). Juvenile steelhead are anticipated to have migrated through the system already and would not be present in the study area. Additionally the mesh size used in the proposed predator study would be too large for a steelhead smolt to be entangled (Garret and Bosworth 2018). Although the study proponent expects that no steelhead will be encountered, WDFW estimates precautionary impacts to Puget Sound steelhead of up to one adult, but no juvenile, steelhead.

The Puget Sound Steelhead Technical Review Team (PSSTRT) identified two steelhead populations in the proposed test fishing area: North Lake Washington/Lake Sammamish winter-run and Cedar River winter-run (PSSTRT 2013b). These demographically independent populations (DIPs) are part of the Central and South Puget Sound Major Population Group (MPG). In the 5-year status review update for Pacific Northwest Salmon and Steelhead listed under the ESA, the NWFSC (2015) reported decreases in the 5-year geometric mean natural spawner counts for the two steelhead DIPs in the most recent two five year periods. Estimates represent a larger decrease in abundance for the Cedar River winter-run DIP (**Table 20**). No estimates were available for the North Lake Washington/Lake Sammamish winter-run DIP for the 2010-2014 time period. Cedar River and North Lake Washington and Lake Sammamish winter-run steelhead are already estimated to be below their Quasi-extinction Threshold (QET) abundances of 35 and 36 fish, respectively (PSSTRT 2013a). However, the 95% confidence intervals around these estimates were generally wide over the 100-year time frame (PSSTRT 2013a). There is no doubt that productivity of the Cedar River and North Lake Washington and Lake Sammamish winter-run steelhead populations are below replacement (Section 2.2.1.2; **Figure 6**).

**Table 20.** 5-year geometric mean of raw natural spawner counts for the Lake Washington/Lake Sammamish watershed, where available (NWFSC 2015).

| MPG | DIP | 1990-1994 | 1995-1999 | 2000-2004 | 2005-2009 | 2010-2014 | % Change |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Central and South Puget Sound | North Lake WA/ Lake Sammamish winter | 321 | 298 | 37 | 12 | -- | -- |
| | Cedar River winter | 321 | 298 | 37 | 12 | 4 | -67 |

The total anticipated research incidental mortality would be up to three adult Puget Sound steelhead for the MIT test fishery and one adult/two juvenile steelhead for the WDFW predator removal study. Based on steelhead abundance data from (NWFSC 2015) for the Cedar River winter-run DIP during the 2010-2014 time period, should the impacts occur it could result in potentially large negative effects to its abundance, productivity, spatial structure, and diversity. However, there is a very small to zero potential impact for the studies to interact with adult or juvenile steelhead in Lake Washington for reasons described above and discussed in detail in Speaks 2017. These reasons are supported by the lack of steelhead encounters in the 2016 MIT test fishery. Current data from the MIT suggests that natural-origin steelhead have already been extirpated from the Lake Washington watershed (MIT 2016).

The PSSTRT (PSSTRT 2013a) also examined a number of recent studies on the interactions between Puget Sound resident and anadromous *O. mykiss*. In general, there appears to be a relatively close relationship between sympatric resident and anadromous forms below long-standing barriers, such as the Ship Canal in Lake Washington (PSSTRT 2013a). In the Lake Washington Basin, which includes the Cedar River, the anadromous populations of *O. mykiss* and cutthroat trout have decreased to near zero levels, yet resident fish of both species are currently widely abundant and thought to be due, in part, to improvements in the productivity of Lake Washington and Lake Sammamish (PSSTRT 2013a). Interactions between resident and anadromous fish can be especially beneficial when the abundance of anadromous is very low (near the quasi-extinction threshold) and resident fish may be most important, not in bringing a DIP to full viability but, in preventing the DIP from being extirpated (PSSTRT 2013a).

Despite the potential for negative effects to occur to the Lake Washington/Lake Sammamish and

Cedar River winter-run DIPs, encounters with natural-origin adult or juvenile steelhead are unlikely to occur and the high presence of resident *O. mykiss* in the Lake Washington watershed may assist in guarding the DIP from potential extirpation. Four out of eight DIPs in this Central and South Puget Sound MPG are required for viability and two of these DIPs demonstrate recent increasing trends (18% Nisqually River; 136% White River; Section 2.2.1.2, **Table 7**). Precautionary measures such as important exclusion zones, timing of the fishery, immediate reporting, careful release measures for encounters, and close research monitoring by Tribal and WDFW members, technical staff, and enforcement staff will guard against potential natural-origin steelhead mortalities from the Lake Washington/Lake Sammamish and Cedar River DIPs. After considering the above factors, effects from the test fishery proposals are largely negative on the population level, but these effects are considered rare and unlikely to occur. Both studies will reduce predator populations that could be a substantial mortality factor on salmonids and provide future evidence to resolve questions regarding the presence of ESA-listed steelhead in Lake Washington.

The proposed study is also unlikely to encounter Chinook. The portion of the study that will occur in the spring will occur prior to adults entering the system and in areas where juveniles are less likely to be present (shallow nearshore areas).  Relatively small numbers of adult Chinook would be migrating through the LWSC while the proposed sampling would occur, however some adult Chinook may encounter the sampling gear as they migrate through the action area.  Additionally sampling will occur in areas where adult Chinook are less likely to occur and use for migration (i.e. near-shore or off-channel, weedy habitats) (Garret and Bosworth 2018).  As such the WDFW estimates precautionary impacts of up to 20 adult Puget Sound Chinook (NOR/HOR).  No juvenile Puget Sound Chinook juvenile impacts are expected as the gill net mesh size is again too large to entangle these smaller individuals.

This level of encounters would result in an extremely small increase in the total exploitation rate on the Lake Washington Chinook populations; at most 0.25% (Garret and Bosworth 2018). This extremely low exploitation rates, when combined with other research fishing activies, are expected to fall below the 1% exploitation rate per Puget Sound Chinook management allowance reserved for this type of activity as described in the 2010 RMP and therefore part of the proposed actions (Garret and Bosworth 2018, PSIT and WDFW 2010a).

#### 2.5.2.3 Effects on Critical Habitat

Critical habitat is located in many of the areas where Puget Sound recreational and commercial salmon fisheries occur. However, fishing activities will take place over relatively short time periods in any particular area. The PBFs most likely to be affected by the proposed actions are (1) water quality, and forage to support spawning, rearing, individual growth, and maturation; and, (2) the type and amount of structure and rugosity that supports juvenile growth and mobility.

Most of the harvest related activities in Puget Sound occur from boats or along river banks with the majority of the fishing activity occurring in the marine and nearshore areas. The gear that would be used includes hook-and-line, drift and set gillnets or stake nets, beach seines, and to a limited extent, purse seines. If hooks, lines, or nets come in contact with the substrate or other habitat features, their capture efficiency is dramatically reduced. As a result, fishermen endeavor to keep gear from being in contact or entangled with substrate and habitat features because of the resultant interference with fishing and potential loss of gear. Derelict fishing gear can affect habitat in a number of ways including barring passage, harming eelgrass beds or other estuarine benthic habitats, or occupying space that would otherwise be available to salmon. Any impact to water quality from vessels transiting critical habitat areas on their way to the fishing grounds or while fishing would be short term and transitory in nature and minimal compared to the number of other vessels in the area (NMFS 2004c). Construction activities related to salmon fisheries are limited to maintenance and repair of existing facilities (such as boat launches), and are not expected to result in any additional impacts on riparian habitats. Also, these activities would occur to some degree through implementation of fisheries or activities other than the Puget Sound salmon fisheries (i.e., recreational boating and marine species fisheries).

By removing adults that would otherwise return to spawning areas, harvest could affect water quality and forage for juveniles by decreasing the return of marine derived nutrients to spawning and rearing areas, although this has not been identified as a limiting factor for the DPS. The proposed actions incorporate management for maximum sustainable spawner escapement and implementation of management measures to prevent over-fishing. Both of these actions have been recommended as ways to address the potential adverse effects of removing marine derived nutrients represented by steelhead carcasses. Therefore, there will be minimal disturbance to vegetation, and negligible effects to spawning or rearing habitat, water quantity and water quality from the proposed actions.

### 2.5.3 Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish

We first assess the general effects of proposed fisheries on individual yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio. Next we assess the population-level effects. We analyze direct effects on listed rockfish in two steps. First, we estimate the number of listed rockfish likely to be caught in the salmon fishery and assess both the sublethal and lethal effects on individuals. Second, we consider the consequences of those sublethal and lethal effects at the population level. We analyze indirect effects by considering the potential effects of fishing activities on benthic habitats. Throughout, we identify data gaps and uncertainties, and explain how we base assumptions in our analysis on the best available science.

#### Hook and Line Fishing

Fishermen targeting salmon use lures and bait that can incidentally catch yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio. Under the proposed actions, recreational salmon fisheries would occur within all areas of the U.S. portion of the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin (WDFW Marine Catch Areas 6 through 13). For rockfish caught in waters deeper than 60 feet (18.3 m), the primary cause of injury and death is barotrauma. Barotrauma occurs when rockfish are brought up from depth, and the rapid decompression causes over-inflation and/or rupture of the swim bladder, which can result in multiple injuries, including organ torsion, stomach eversion, and exophthalmia (bulging eyes), among other damages (Parker et al. 2006, Jarvis and Lowe 2008, Pribyl et al. 2011). These injuries cause various levels of disorientation, which can result in fish remaining at the surface after they are released and making them subject to predation, damage from solar radiation, and gas embolisms (Hannah and Matteson 2007, Palsson et al. 2009). Injuries can include harm from differences in water pressure experienced by fish brought to the surface from depths (barotraumas), differences in water temperatures (between the sea and surface), and hypoxia upon exposure to air. The severity of these injuries is dictated by the depth from which the fish was brought, the amount of time fish are held out of the water, and their general treatment while aboard. Physical trauma may lead to predation after fish are released (Palsson et al. 2009, Pribyl et al. 2011) by birds, marine mammals or other rockfish and fish (such as lingcod).

A number of devices have been invented and used to return rockfish to the depth of their capture as a means to mitigate barotrauma. When rockfish are released at depth, there are many variables that may influence long-term survival, such as angler experience and handling time in addition to thermal shock and depth of capture (Schroeder and Love 2002; Jarvis and Lowe 2008; Pribyl et al. 2009; Pribyl et al. 2011). A study of boat-based anglers in Puget Sound revealed that few anglers who incidentally captured rockfish released them at depth (approximately 3 percent), while a small number of anglers attempted to puncture the swim bladder (Sawchuk 2012), which could cause bacterial infections or mortality. However, NMFS has provided funding to Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission and Puget Sound Anglers (PSA) to purchase and distribute descending devices to local fishermen. The PSA has distributed the devices to many of the saltwater fishing guides that operate in the Puget Sound area, and beginning in 2017/18 anglers targeting bottomfish and halibut must release rockfish with barotrauma with a descending device. The vast majority of anglers target salmon by trolling with downriggers (Sawchuk 2012). There may be greater injury to listed–rockfish caught by anglers targeting salmon by trolling with downriggers because the fish may not trigger the release mechanism and be dragged for a period of time prior to being reeled in.

In our consultation on the WDFW Incidental Take Permit for the recreational bottom fish fishery in Puget Sound we were able to estimate the proportion of listed rockfish killed as a result of the state regulation limiting gear above 120 feet deep (consultation number F/NWR/2012/1984). This allowed us to use similar methods as the PFMC (2008) to estimate the mortality rate for yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio by fishermen targeting bottom fish. The recreational salmon fishery does not have a 120 foot rule, complicating the assessment of survival estimates of listed rockfish caught at various depths while targeting salmon. Recent research found that short term (48 hours) survival for recompressed yelloweye rockfish was 95.1 %, (Hannah et al. 2014) and there is emerging evidence that female yelloweye rockfish can remain reproductively viable after recompression. A study conducted in Alaska found that recompressed female yelloweye rockfish remained reproductively viable a year or two after the event (Blain 2014). As a result of the emerging research on the effects of barotrauma and survivability of recompressed fish the PFMC adopted new mortality estimates for recreationally caught and released yelloweye rockfish, canary rockfish (and cowcod) based on the depth of capture and use of descending devices (Table 35 – PFMC 2014c) (**Table 21**).

**Table 21.** Mortality estimates (%) by depth bin for canary rockfish and yelloweye rockfish at the surface,

from PFMC (2014c)

| Depth range (feet) | Canary Rockfish<br>Surface release mortality (%) | Yelloweye Rockfish<br>Surface release mortality (%) |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - 60 | 21 | 22 |
| 60 - 120 | 37 | 39 |
| 120 - 180 | 53 | 56 |
| 180 - 300 | 100 | 100 |
| 300 - 600 | 100 | 100 |
| > 600 | 100 | 100 |

Though some anglers, and presumably most fishing guides, will release listed rockfish with barotrauma with descending devices, there is no rule to do so while targeting salmon. As such we make the conservative assumption that for the 2018/19 fishing season listed rockfish caught in salmon fisheries would not be recompressed, but rather released at the surface. As such we use the "current surface release mortality" estimates in the GMT report (PFMC 2014c) to estimate mortality rates for caught and released yelloweye rockfish to estimate mortality rates in Puget Sound fisheries targeting salmon. There are no analogous release mortality estimates for bocaccio, thus for this species we use the same release mortality estimates as for canary rockfish because of generally similar life history and physiology between the two species. The GMT estimated mortality rates for surfaced released fish from the surface to over 600 feet deep. There is no reported depth of capture from anglers targeting salmon that incidentally catch rockfish for us to partition mortality rates for each depth range, as done by the PFMC. To estimate mortalities by anglers targeting salmon we use the release mortality rates estimates from the 120 to 180 feet depth range. We choose this depth range as a conservative estimate for bycaught listed rockfish given that most anglers likely target salmon at shallower depths than 180 feet deep, but note that bycatch in depths greater than 180 feet deep may nonetheless occur.

### Fishing with Nets

Most commercial salmon fishers in the Puget Sound use purse seines and gill nets (PSIT and WDFW 2010a, Speaks 2017). A relatively small amount of salmon is harvested within the DPS by reef nets and beach seines. Tribal and non-tribal fishermen typically use gillnets, purse seines and reef nets. Gill nets and purse seines rarely catch rockfish of any species. From 1990 to 2008, no rockfish were recorded caught in the purse seine fishery (WDFW 2010). In 1991, one rockfish (of unknown species) was recorded in the gill net fishery, and no other rockfish were caught through 2008 (WDFW 2010). Low encounter rates may be attributed to a variety of factors. For each net type, the mesh size restrictions that target salmon based on size tend to allow juvenile rockfish to pass through. Gill net and purse seine operators also tend to avoid fishing over rockfish habitat, as rocky reef structures can damage their gear. In addition, nets are deployed in the upper portion of the water column away from the deeper water rockfish habitat, thus avoiding interactions with most adult rockfish. In the mid-1990s commercial salmon net closure zones for non-tribal fisheries were established in northern Puget Sound for seabird protection although tribal fishermen may still access the areas. Some of these closed areas overlap with rockfish habitat, reducing to some degree the potential for encountering rockfish. Specific areas are: (1) a closure of the waters inside the San Juan Islands, (2) a closure extending 1,500 feet along the northern shore of Orcas Island, and (3) a closure of waters three miles from the shore inside the Strait of Juan de Fuca (WDFW 2010).

The greatest risk to rockfish posed by gill nets and purse seines comes from the nets' inadvertent loss. Derelict nets generally catch on bottom structure such as rocky reefs and large boulders that are also attractive to rockfish (NRC 2007). Dead rockfish have been found in derelict nets because the net can continue to 'fish' when a portion of it remains suspended near the bottom and is swept by the current. Aside from killing fish, derelict nets alter habitat suitability by trapping fine sediments out of the water column, making a layer of soft sediment over rocky areas that changes habitat quality and suitability for benthic organisms (NRC 2007). This gear covers habitats used by rockfish for shelter and pursuit of food, and may thereby deplete food sources. For example, a study of several derelict nets in the San Juan Islands reported an estimated 107 invertebrates and 16 fish (of various species) entangled per day (NRC 2008). One net had been in place for 15 years, entangling an estimated 16,500 invertebrates and 2,340 fish (NRC 2008). Though these estimates are coarse, they illustrate the potential impacts of derelict gear on the DPS. In 2012 the state of Washington passed a law (Senate Bill 5661) requiring non-tribal fishermen to report lost fishing nets within 24 hours of the loss, and has established a no-fault reporting system for lost gear. There are no devices installed on nets to track their location after they are lost, which complicates the recovery effort. In 2013 a NOAA-funded report was issued that assessed the reasons for gill net loss, best practices to prevent loss, and potential gear changes that may aid in the prevention of derelict nets (Gibson 2013).

Reef nets are deployed near rockfish habitat in the San Juan Islands, and are subject to the same area closures as gill nets and purse seines. Beach seines are used next to sandy or gravely beaches, and in each fishery all non-targeted fish are released. Because most adult yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio occupy waters much deeper than surface waters fished by reef nets and beach seines, the bycatch of adults is likely minimal to non-existent. Similarly, such nets are not likely to catch juvenile rockfish because many are small enough to pass through the mesh. Moreover, juvenile yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio are unlikely to be caught in beach seines because the seines are generally not used along kelp areas where juvenile bocaccio could occur in appreciable numbers (WDFW 2010). If adult or juvenile yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio were to be caught, the released fish would have a large chance of survival because they would not be brought to the surface from extreme depths thus avoiding barotrauma.

#### 2.5.3.1 Bycatch Estimates and Effects on Abundance

Given the nature of the commercial salmon fisheries described above, we do not anticipate that any adult or juvenile yelloweye rockfish or bocaccio will be incidentally caught by actively fished nets and some listed rockfish could be caught in commercial hook and line fisheries. It is likely that some gill nets would become derelict near rockfish habitat and may kill some listed rockfish, though we are unable to quantify the number of fish killed from new derelict nets.

Many methods of recreational salmon fishing in marine waters have the potential to encounter ESA-listed rockfish. WDFW estimates the annual bycatch of rockfish from anglers targeting salmon, halibut, bottom fish and 'other' marine fishes. There are a number of uncertainties regarding the WDFW recreational fishing bycatch estimates because: (1) they are based on dockside (boat launch) interviews of 10 to 20% of fishers, and anglers whose trips originated from a marina are generally not surveyed; (2) since rockfish can no longer be retained by fishermen, the surveys rely upon fishermen being able to recognize and remember rockfish released by species. Research has found the identification of rockfish to species is poor; only 5% of anglers could identify bocaccio and 31% yelloweye in a study based throughout the Puget Sound (Sawchuck et al. 2015), and; (3) anglers may under-report the numbers of released fish. A study in Canadian waters compared creel survey reports to actual observer-generated information on recreational fishing boats in the Southern Georgia Strait. Substantial differences were documented, with the number of released rockfish observed significantly higher than the number reported by recreational anglers during creel surveys (Diewert et al. 2005). These factors could make the actual bycatch of yelloweye rockfish or bocaccio higher or lower than WDFW's estimates.

In our previous consultations on the salmon fisheries, we used WDFW bycatch estimates from the 2003 through 2009 time period (WDFW 2011) and supplemented our analysis when the WDFW provided us catch estimates for the 2003 through 2011 time period (WDFW 2014b). In 2017, WDFW estimated that anglers targeting salmon caught zero bocaccio and five yelloweye rockfish. All five yelloweye were reported as caught in Hood Canal (WDFW 2018)

The WDFW estimates are highly variable, thus we use the highest catch available estimates for bocaccio and yelloweye rockfish from anglers targeting salmonto form a precautionary analysis. We consider bycatch estimates from previous years useful because we anticipate that recreational salmon fisheries proposed for 2018/19 will result in generally similar fishing techniques, locations, and anticipated numbers of angler-trips as in the past 10 to 15 years. WDFW estimated that from 2010 to 2015 there were approximately 415,000 recreational fishing trips targeting salmon annually within the Puget Sound (WDFW 2016). They further estimated that 143,823 fishing trips targeting salmon occurred in 2016 (WDFW 2017), and 295,000 fishing trips targeted salmon in 2017 (WDFW 2018). While data from years prior to 2010 are not available, we have no reason to expect that fisheries were significantly different in the 2003-2009 time period.

As described above in Section 2.2.1.3, Status of Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish, the best available abundance data for each species come from the WDFW ROV surveys (Pacunski et al. 2013; WDFW 2017), and we use these surveys as a fundamental source to understand the total abundance of the U.S. portion of the DPSs. The structure of this analysis likely underestimates the total abundance of each species within the U.S. portion of the DPS because: (1) we use the lower confidence interval population estimates available for yelloweye rockfish, and (2) we use the WDFW population estimate of bocaccio for the San Juan Island and Eastern Strait of Juan de Fuca area and note that it is generated within only 46 percent of the estimated habitat of bocaccio within the U.S. portion of the DPS. The rest of the area, including the Main Basin, South Sound and Hood Canal, were likely the most historically common area used by bocaccio (Drake et al. 2010). The structure of these assessments likely underestimates the total abundance of each DPS, resulting in a conservative abundance scenario and evaluation of cumulative fishery bycatch mortality for each species.

#### 2.5.3.1.1 Yelloweye Rockfish

We use annual estimated bycatch of yelloweye rockfish from salmon anglers of 4 (WDFW 2014b) to 117 (WDFW 2011a) fish (**Table 22**). These fish would be released, and using the PFMC methodology we estimate that 56% would likely perish from barotrauma and related hooking injuries and/or predation induced by injury.

**Table 22.** Yelloweye rockfish bycatch estimates.

| Species | Low Estimate (number mortalities) | High Estimate (number mortalities) | Estimated Percent Mortality | Abundance Scenario | Percent of DPS killed (low estimate) | Percent of DPS killed (high estimate) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Yelloweye Rockfish | 4 (2) | 117 (66) | 56 | 143,086 | >0.00001 | 0.005 |

#### 2.5.3.1.2 Bocaccio

The average annual estimated bycatch of bocaccio from salmon anglers ranges from 2 (WDFW 2014b) to 145 (WDFW 2015) fish (**Table 23**). These fish would be released, and using the PFMC methodology we estimate that 53% would likely perish from barotrauma and related hooking injuries and/or predation induced by injury.

**Table 23.** Bocaccio bycatch estimates.

| Species | Low Estimate (number mortalities) | High Estimate (number mortalities) | Estimated Percent Mortality | Abundance Scenario | Percent of DPS killed (low estimate) | Percent of DPS killed (high estimate) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bocaccio | 2 (1) | 145 (77) | 53% | 4,606 | 0.002 | 1.7 |

In addition to fishery mortality, rockfish are killed by derelict fishing gear (Good et al. 2010), though we are unable to quantify the number of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio killed by pre-existing derelict gear or new gear that would occur as part of commercial fisheries addressed in the proposed actions. As elaborated in Section 2.4.3.4, due to changes in state law, additional outreach and assessment efforts (i.e. Gibson 2013), and recent lost net inventories (Beattie and Adicks 2012, Beattie 2013) it is likely that fewer nets will become derelict in the upcoming 2018/19 fishing season compared to several years and decades ago. Because of the low number of anticipated derelict gill nets, it is likely that few (if any) yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio mortalities will occur from new derelict gill nets, and that any additional mortality would not induce additional risk to any population.

### 2.5.3.2 Effects on Spatial Structure and Connectivity

Bycatch (or death of fish in new derelict gear) of listed-rockfish could alter spatial structure. If fishermen incidentally catch a greater proportion of the total population of yelloweye rockfish or bocaccio in one or more of the regions of the DPSs, the spatial structure and connectivity of each DPS could be degraded. The lack of reliable population abundance estimates from the individual basins of Puget Sound proper complicates this type of assessment. Yelloweye rockfish are the most susceptible to spatial structure impacts because of their sedentary nature. Localized losses of yelloweye rockfish are less likely to be replaced by roaming fish, compared to bocaccio, which are better able to recolonize habitats due to the propensity of some individuals to travel long distances.

#### 2.5.3.3 Effects on Diversity and Productivity

Bycatch of listed rockfish can alter diversity primarily by the removal of larger fish. Larger fish of each species are able to target baits and lures more so than juveniles, and typically enter fisheries at or near 12 inches long (30 centimeters) as they also they approach sexual maturity - thus bycatch disproportionately kills larger yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio. The loss of fish that are reproductively mature, or nearly so, would hinder the demographic diversity (and productivity) of each species.

#### 2.5.3.4 Effects on Critical Habitat

Critical habitat is located in some of the areas fished by fishermen targeting salmon within the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin. We do not have spatial information at a fine enough scale to determine the proportion of the fishery occurring inside or outside of critical habitat. We designated critical habitat in some waters shallower than 98 feet (30 m) for bocaccio and critical habitat in some waters deeper than 98 feet (30 m) for each ESA-listed rockfish. For each species of listed rockfish we designated deep water habitats for sites deeper than 98 feet (30 m) that possess or are adjacent to areas of complex bathymetry consisting of rock and/or highly rugose habitat (Section 2.2.2.3). Several attributes of these habitats are essential to the conservation of listed rockfish. These attributes include: (1) quantity, quality, and availability of prey species to support individual growth, survival, reproduction, and feeding opportunities; (2) water quality and sufficient levels of dissolved oxygen to support growth, survival, reproduction, and feeding opportunities; and (3) the type and amount of structure and rugosity that supports feeding opportunities and predator avoidance.

Motors used by commercial fishermen have the potential to pollute waters through the discharge of small levels of hydrocarbons. However, engines have become more efficient and less polluting in response to better technology and improved standards, which are administered by the Environmental Protection Agency (75 Fed. Reg. 179, September 16, 2010). As such, it is extremely unlikely that water quality and dissolved oxygen attributes of rockfish critical habitat would be adversely affected by the proposed actions.

Effects to listed-rockfish critical habitat come from lost commercial salmon gill nets. Nets are lost due to inclement weather, tidal and current action, catching upon the seafloor, the weight of catch causing submersion, vessels inadvertently traveling through them, or a combination of these factors (NRC 2008). Nets fished in rivers and estuaries can be lost from floods and/or as large logs are caught moving downstream, and a few of these nets can drift to the marine environment. Nets can persist within the marine environment for decades because they do not biodegrade and are resistant to chemicals, light, and abrasion (NRC 2008). In some cases, nets can drift relatively long distances before they catch on the bottom or wash up on the shore (NRC

2008). When derelict nets drift, they can entangle crab pots, thereby recruiting more derelict gear (NRC 2008). Most nets hang on bottom structure that is also attractive to rockfish. This structure consists of high-relief rocky substrates or boulders located on sand, mud or gravel bottoms (Good et al. 2010). The combination of complex structure and currents tend to stretch derelict nets open and suspend them within the water column, in turn making them more deadly for marine biota (Akiyama et al. 2007, Good et al. 2010)(**Figure 20**).

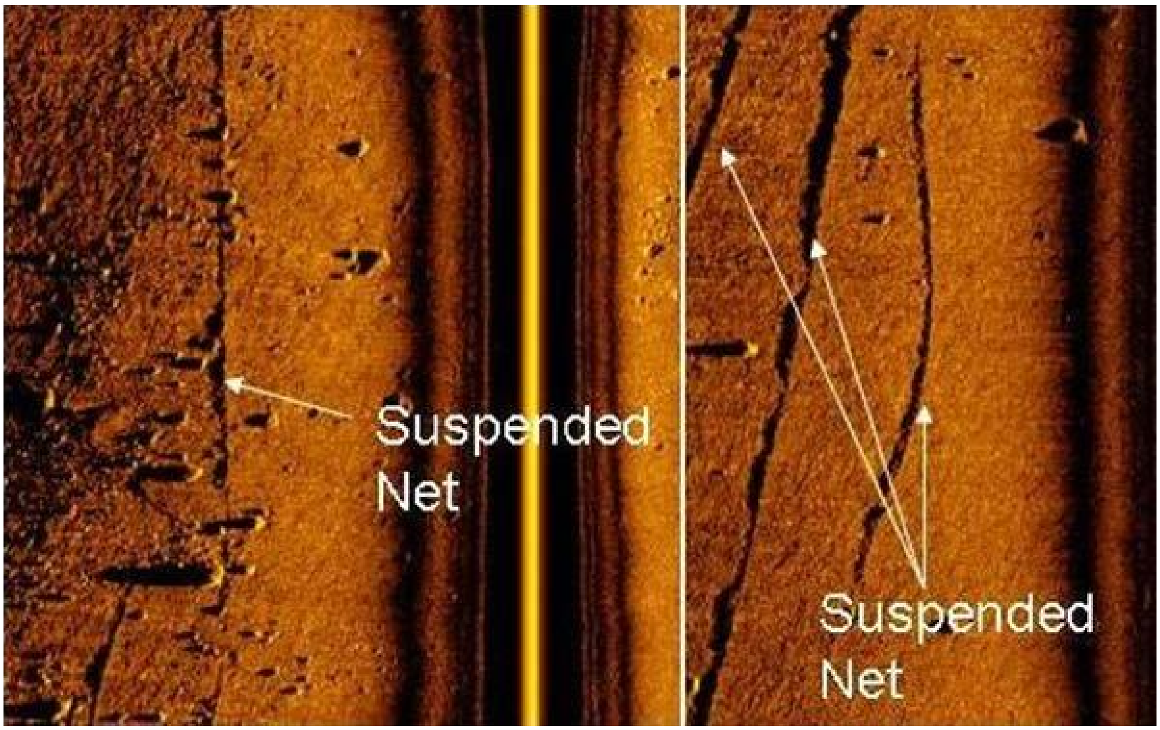



**Figure 20.** Sidescan sonar images of derelict nets located on Point Roberts Reef of the San Juan basin. Suspended nets have a larger acoustic shadow than nets flush with the bottom. Image used by permission of Natural Resource Consultants (NRC).

Derelict nets alter habitat suitability by trapping fine sediments out of the water column. This makes a layer of soft sediment over rocky areas, changing habitat quality and suitability for benthic organisms (Good et al. 2010). Nets can also cover habitats used by rockfish for shelter and pursuit of food, rendering the habitat unavailable. Nets can reduce the abundance and availability of rockfish prey that include invertebrates and fish (Good et al. 2010).

Based on data presented by Good et al. (2010) regarding the depth of derelict nets that are recovered, we presume that most newly lost nets would catch on bottom habitats shallower than 120 feet where they would present a limited risk to most adult ESA-listed rockfish, yet remain a risk for some juveniles, subadults and adult listed rockfish. Though we cannot estimate the number of yelloweye rockfish or bocaccio killed on an annual basis from newly lost nets, we can estimate the amount of habitat altered by them. Most recovered nets are fragments of their original size; drift gill nets can be as long as 1,800 feet, and skiff gill nets can be as long as 600 feet, yet most recovered derelict nets cover an area of only about 7,000 square feet (Good et al.

2010), suggesting that fishers may cut nets free if they are caught on the bottom or otherwise damaged. For most derelict nets, the maximum suspension off the bottom (for a portion of the net) was less than 1.5 meters when they were recovered (Good et al. 2010), and we consider suspended and non-suspended nets to degrade benthic habitats.

Due to recent additional outreach and assessment efforts (i.e. Gibson 2013), and recent lost net inventories (Beattie and Adicks 2012; Beattie 2013; James 2017) it is likely that fewer nets will become derelict in the upcoming 2018/19 fishing season compared to several years and decades ago (previous estimates of derelict nets were 16 to 42 annually (NRC 2010)). In 2016, an estimated 14 nets became derelict, nine of which were removed (James 2017). In 2014, an estimated 13 nets became derelict, and 12 of them where recovered (James 2015), in 2013 an estimated 15 nets became derelict, 12 of which were recovered (Beattie 2013), and in 2012 eight nets were lost, and six were recovered (Beattie and Adicks 2012). A separate analysis from June 2012 to February 2016 a total of 77 newly lost nets were reported, and only 6 of these were reported by commercial fishermen (Drinkwin 2016). We do not have estimates of the number of nets lost in the 2017/2018 salmon fisheries. Based on this new information we estimate that a range of six to 20 gill nets may be lost in the 2018/2019 fishing season, but up to 75% of these nets would be removed within days of their loss and have little potential to damage rockfish critical habitat. In the worst case analysis assuming that 20 nets are lost and five of these become derelict they would damage up to 35,000 square feet (0.8 acre) of habitat (assuming an average of 7,000 square feet). Even presuming that all lost nets would be in critical habitat (438.45 square miles for yelloweye rockfish and 1,083.11 square miles for bocaccio), they would damage a fraction of the area proposed for listed rockfish and not degrade the overall condition of critical habitat.

### 2.5.4 Southern Resident Killer Whales

#### 2.5.4.1 Effects on the Species

The proposed fishing may affect Southern Resident killer whales through direct effects of vessel activities and gear interactions, and through indirect effects from reduction of their primary prey, Chinook salmon. The analysis focuses on effects to Chinook availability as prey because the best available information indicates that Chinook are the primary prey of Southern Residents (as described in Status of the Species and the Environmental Baseline, and discussed further below). We evaluated the potential effects of the proposed fishing on Southern Residents based on the best scientific information about the whales' predominant consumption of large Chinook salmon, their Chinook food energy needs, the Chinook food energy available, and the reduction in Chinook food energy caused by the proposed fishing. This section evaluates the direct and indirect effects of the proposed action on the Southern Resident killer whale DPS as well as the effects of other activities that are interrelated or interdependent with the action, and determines how effects of the proposed action, and of interrelated and interdependent actions, interact with the environmental baseline (50 CFR 402.02).

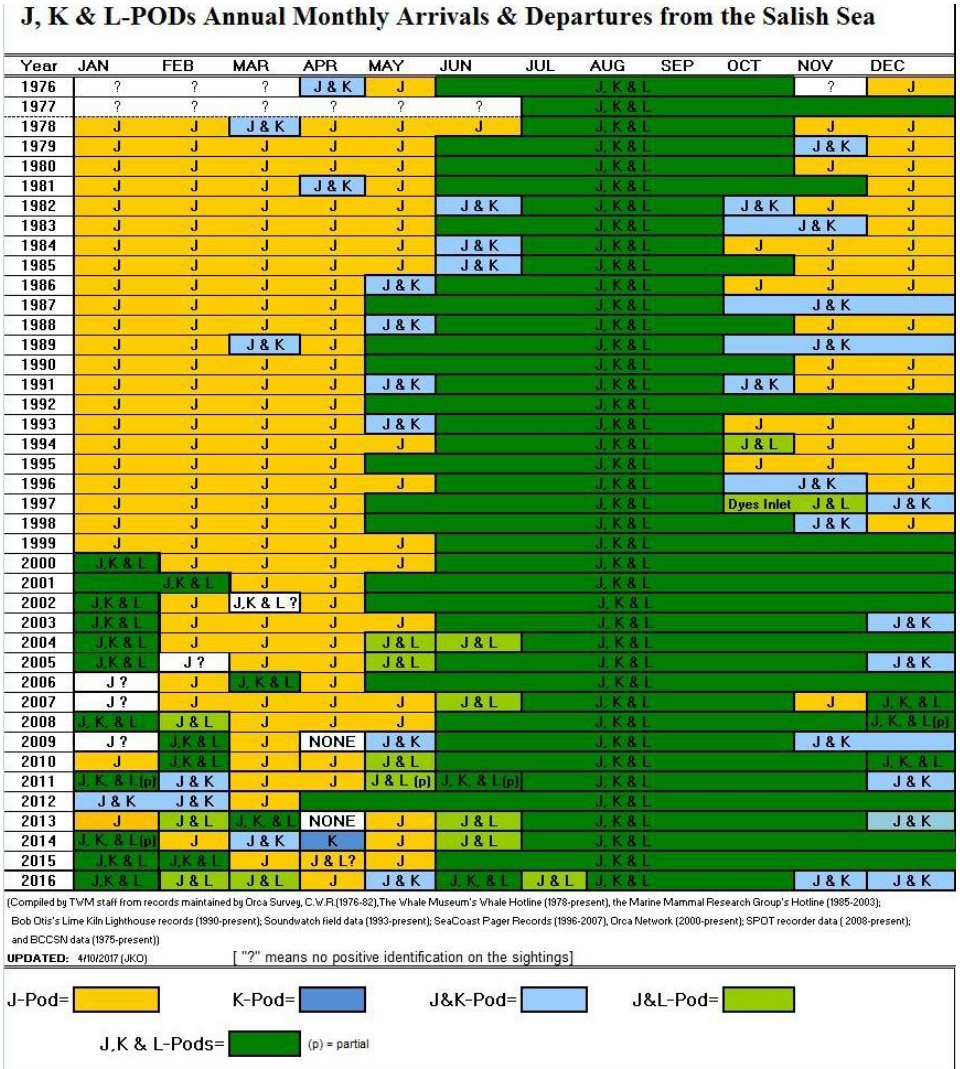
Following the independent science panel approach on the effects of salmon fisheries on Southern

Resident killer whales (Hilborn et al 2012), NMFS and partners have actively engaged in research and analyses to fill data gaps and reduce uncertainties raised by the panel in their report. We also formed a workgroup to develop a risk assessment framework. We considered the viable salmon population (VSP) and recovery exploitation rate (RER) framework for evaluating salmon actions as an example of a quantitative model. To date the data and analyses have not supported a quantitative process for killer whales that directly links effects of an action to survival and recovery (i.e., mortality and reproduction). In the absence of a comprehensive quantitative tool to evaluate proposed actions, we use a weight of evidence approach to consider all of the information we have- identifying a variety of metrics or indicators (some quantitative and some qualitative) with varying degrees of confidence (or weight)- in order to formulate our biological opinion. We assess risk by evaluating uncertainty for lines of evidence to determine if our estimates underestimate or overestimate the status or effect. While informed by the methods used in the 2011 biological opinion (NMFS 2011) for the Puget Sound salmon fisheries, we are incorporating new information and completing a new analysis that is described below.

### Vessel activities and gear interactions

There is potential for direct interaction between Southern Resident killer whales and fishing vessels and gear in the action area because of the high degree in spatial and temporal overlap between the whales' distribution throughout the inland waters and the distribution of the proposed fisheries. Southern Residents occur in inland waters throughout the year (**Table 24**) and spend the large majority of their time in the summer months along the west side of San Juan Island (Hauser et al. 2007, Whale Museum sightings database). This analysis considers how effects from vessel activities and gear interactions associated with the proposed fishery may impact the fitness of Southern Resident killer whales.

**Table 24.** Monthly pod occurrence in inland waters (Olson et al. 2017)



J, K & L-PODs Annual Monthly Arrivals & Departures from the Salish Sea

| Year | JAN | FEB | MAR | APR | MAY | JUN | JUL | AUG | SEP | OCT | NOV | DEC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1976 | ? | ? | ? | J & K | J | | | J, K & L | | | ? | J |
| 1977 | ? | ? | ? | ? | ? | ? | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 1978 | J | J | J & K | J | J | J | | J, K & L | | | J | J |
| 1979 | J | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | J & K | J |
| 1980 | J | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | J | J |
| 1981 | J | J | J | J & K | J | | | J, K & L | | | | J |
| 1982 | J | J | J | J | J | J & K | | J, K & L | | J & K | J | J |
| 1983 | J | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | J & K | J |
| 1984 | J | J | J | J | J | J & K | | J, K & L | | J | J | J |
| 1985 | J | J | J | J | J | J & K | | J, K & L | | | J | J |
| 1986 | J | J | J | J | J & K | | | J, K & L | | J | J | J |
| 1987 | J | J | J | J | | | | J, K & L | | | J & K | |
| 1988 | J | J | J | J | J & K | | | J, K & L | | | J | J |
| 1989 | J | J | J & K | J | | | | J, K & L | | | J & K | |
| 1990 | J | J | J | J | | | | J, K & L | | | J | J |
| 1991 | J | J | J | J | J & K | | | J, K & L | | J & K | J | J |
| 1992 | J | J | J | J | | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 1993 | J | J | J | J | J & K | | | J, K & L | | J | J | J |
| 1994 | J | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | J & L | J | J |
| 1995 | J | J | J | J | | | | J, K & L | | J | J | J |
| 1996 | J | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | J & K | J |
| 1997 | J | J | J | J | | | | J, K & L | | Dyes Inlet | J & L | J & K |
| 1998 | J | J | J | J | | | | J, K & L | | | J & K | J |
| 1999 | J | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2000 | J,K & L | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2001 | | J,K & L | J | J | | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2002 | J,K & L | J | J,K & L ? | J | | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2003 | J,K & L | J | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | | J & K |
| 2004 | J,K & L | J | J | J | J & L | J & L | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2005 | J,K & L | J ? | J | J | J & L | | | J, K & L | | | | J & K |
| 2006 | J ? | J | J, K & L | J | | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2007 | J ? | J | J | J | J | J & L | | J, K & L | | | J | J, K, & L |
| 2008 | J, K, & L | J & L | J | J | J | | | J, K & L | | | | J, K, & L (p) |
| 2009 | J ? | J,K & L | J | NONE | J & K | | | J, K & L | | | J & K | |
| 2010 | J | J,K & L | J | J | J & L | | | J, K & L | | | | J, K, & L |
| 2011 | J, K, & L (p) | J & K | J | J | J & L (p) | J, K, & L (p) | | J, K & L | | | | J & K |
| 2012 | J & K | J & K | J | | | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2013 | J | J & L | J, K, & L | NONE | J | J & L | | J, K & L | | | | J & K |
| 2014 | J, K, & L (p) | J | J & K | K | J | J & L | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2015 | J,K & L | J,K & L | J | J & L? | J | | | J, K & L | | | | |
| 2016 | J,K & L | J & L | J & L | J | J & K | J, K, & L | J & L | J, K & L | | | J & K | J & K |

(Compiled by TWM staff from records maintained by Orca Survey, C.W.R.(1976-82),The Whale Museum's Whale Hotline (1978-present), the Marine Mammal Research Group's Hotline (1985-2003); Bob Otis's Lime Kiln Lighthouse records (1990-present); Soundwatch field data (1993-present); SeaCoast Pager Records (1996-2007), Orca Network (2000-present); SPOT recorder data ( 2008-present); and BCCSN data (1975-present))

**UPDATED:** 4/10/2017 (JKO) [ "?" means no positive identification on the sightings]

J-Pod= K-Pod= J&K-Pod= J&L-Pod= J,K & L-Pods= (p) = partial

Interactions with vessels could occur while vessels are fishing or while they are transiting to and from the fishing grounds. Vessel strikes have not been observed in association with salmon fisheries and although interactions of whales and fishing gear have been observed (as described in the Environmental Baseline), entanglements are rare. Entanglement of ESA-listed marine mammals is known to be an issue with commercial fishing gear on the U.S. west coast (Saez et al. 2013). Commercial fishers in all categories (with the exception of tribal treaty fisheries, but tribes voluntarily report such interactions) participating in U.S. fisheries are required to report incidental marine mammal injuries and mortalities. Although vessel strikes and gear entanglement are unlikely, NMFS will evaluate the need for observers to cover the proposed fisheries if fishery interactions with Southern Residents are reported (in accordance with provisions of the MMPA, 50 CFR 229.7).

The most likely vessel interactions are the disruption of Southern Resident killer whale behavior and acoustic interference. Several studies have addressed the potential consequences, both physiological consequences and the increase in energetic costs, from the behavioral responses of killer whales to vessel presence, including changes in behavior state, swimming patterns and increased surface active behaviors. Williams et al. (2006) estimated that changes in Northern Resident killer whale activity budgets in the presence of vessels resulted in a higher increase in energy expenditure compared to when vessels were not present. Other studies measuring metabolic rates in captive dolphins have shown these rates can increase during the more energetically costly surface behaviors (Noren et al. 2012) that are observed in killer whales in the wild, as well as during vocalizations and the increased vocal effort associated with vessels and noise (Noren et al. 2013; Holt et al. 2015). These studies that show an increase in energy expenditure during surface active behaviors and changes in vocal effort may negatively impact the energy budget of an individual, particularly when cumulative impacts of exposure to multiple vessels throughout the day are considered.

Even more of a concern for Southern Residents than an increase in energy expenditure from increased surface active behaviors and increased vocal effort is the cost of the loss of foraging opportunities and the probable reduction in prey consumption (Ferrara et al. 2017). Several cetacean species worldwide forage less in the presence of vessels (Senigaglia et al. 2016). Southern Residents spent 17 to 21% less time foraging in the presence of vessels depending on the distance of vessels (Noren, unpubl data). An increase in energetic costs because of behavioral disturbance or reduced foraging can decrease the fitness or health of individuals (Dierauf and Gulland 2001; Trites and Donnelly 2003; Lusseau and Bejder 2007). Currently, the degree of impact of repeated disruptions from vessels on Southern Residents foraging and energy intake is unclear. However, reducing repeated disruptions from vessels will likely reduce the impact on foraging and, in turn, reduce the potential for nutritional stress.

Recreational vessels commonly come within a ½ mile of the whales (Seely 2016), and some recreational vessel users are likely to be recreational fishers associated with the proposed fishing. We have no information about the numbers of recreational fishers who would not engage in recreational boating if the proposed fishery were not authorized, and therefore we cannot quantify the increase in recreational vessels around the whales likely to result from the proposed action. It is reasonable to expect that authorization of the proposed fishery will result in more recreational vessels in proximity to the whales than there would be if no fishing is authorized, and therefore we expect that the proposed action will result in some additional exposure of Southern Resident killer whales to the physical presence or sound generated by these vessels.

The vessels associated with the fishing activities overlap with the whales particularly in Marine Area 7 (**Figure 21**) in July through September and their presence and sound in a key foraging area can impact the ability of Southern Residents to effectively locate and consume sufficient prey through acoustic interference. Vessel sounds may mask or partially or completely prevent the perception of clicks, calls, and whistles, including echolocation used to locate prey, potentially reducing foraging efficiency (Holt 2008; Ferrara et al. 2017). Since 2005 when Southern Residents were listed as endangered, the number of angler trips in Marine Area 7 (i.e., the area with the highest degree of spatial and temporal overlap between the proposed fishing and the whales geographic distribution during the July – September fishing) has ranged from 19,445 to 41,307 (WDFW email dated April 1, 2018).

The number of angler trips have likely affected the average number and maximum number of vessels near the whales in any given year. The Soundwatch Boater Education Program collects data on the number and types of vessels within ½ mile of the whales during the summer months. This long-term data set provides insight into annual trends of vessel activity near the whales. For example, recreational fishing vessels in neutral gear around killer whales were observed to decrease from 2015 to 2016 with very few commercial fishing vessels around killer whales in 2016 compared to 2015 (Seely 2016). For example, in 2015, the annual maximum number of vessels observed with Southern Residents was 81 boats (Seely 2015), whereas the annual maximum number of vessels observed with Southern Residents in 2016 was 71 boats (Seely 2016). During this same time period, angler trips in Marine Area 7 had reduced from 35,841 to 22,044 in the July to September months (WDFW data). Although there was an overall decrease in fishing vessels around the whales in 2016 compared to 2015, Soundwatch noted an increase in fishing vessel activity in July and August of both years, which raised the maximum number of vessels engaged in fishing activities near the whales in those months to be above (in 2015) or closer to (in 2016) the level of activities near the whales by other recreational and whale watch commercial vessels that were focused on viewing the whales (**Figure 22**; Seely 2015; Seely 2016).

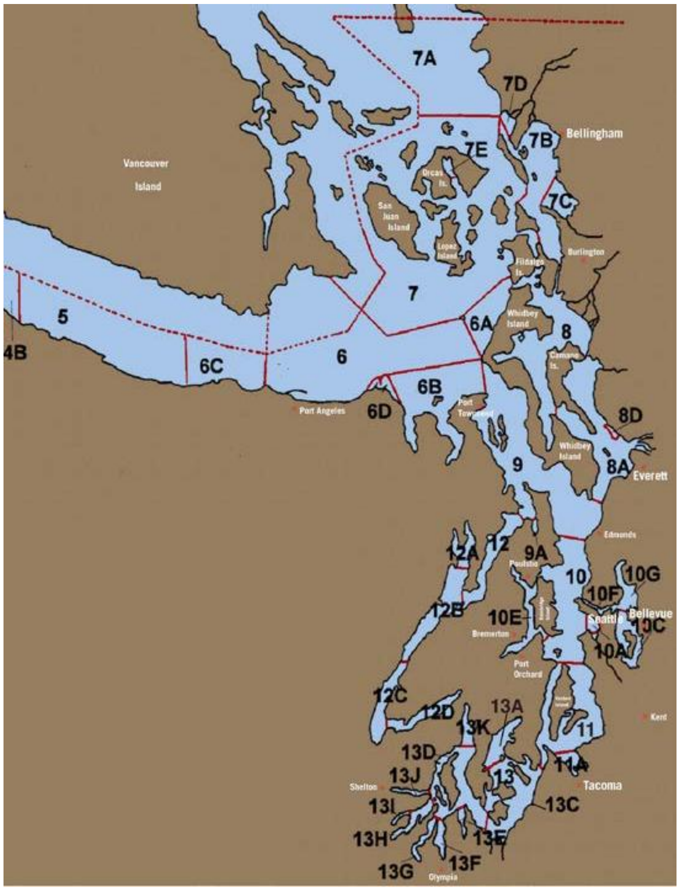
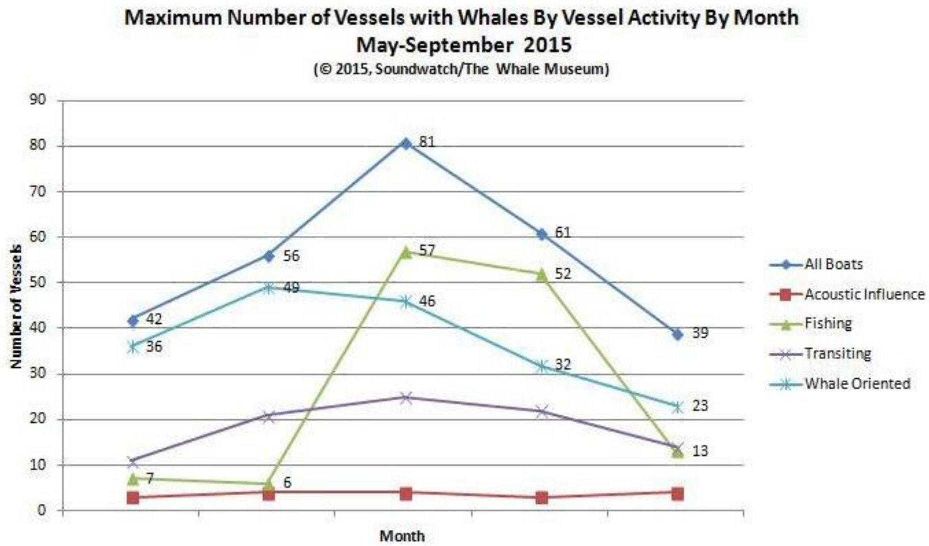


**Figure 21.** Puget Sound Fishing Zone Map and Catch Reporting Areas (Source: 2006 WDFW commercial salmon regulations, Prepared by Preston Gates & Ellis LLP).



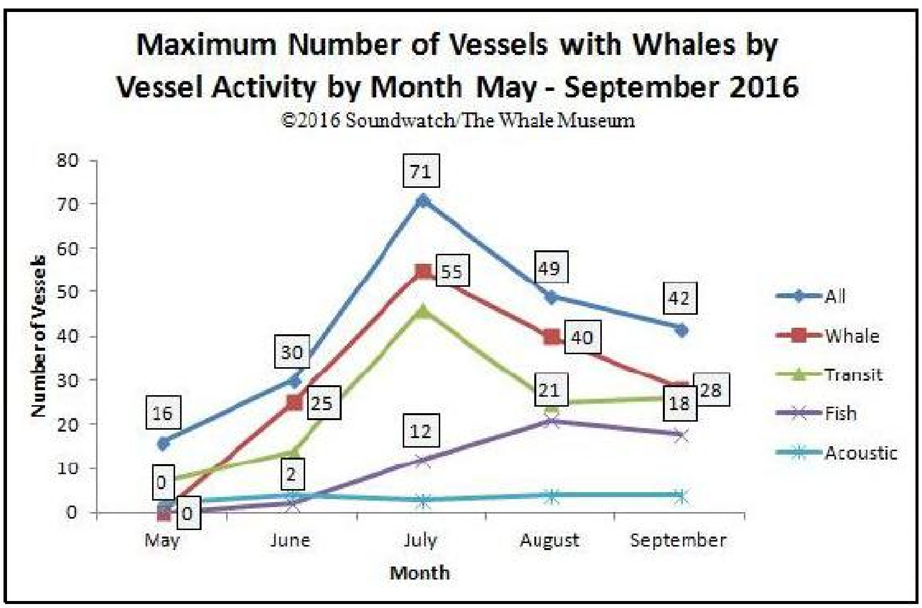




**Figure 22**. 2015 and 2016 monthly maximum numbers of vessels with Southern Resident killer whales by vessel activity. (Figures from Seely 2015 and Seely 2016).

Although Puget Sound wide it is anticipated that angler trips will increase in 2018 compared to recent fishing seasons, particularly in some months and areas where coho fisheries have been built back into the fishing schedule, the number of angler trips in certain locations, particularly those important to Southern Residents will be reduced. For example, beginning September 4, Marine Area 7 will close to retention of Chinook salmon. This will likely result in a significant reduction to the amount of vessel traffic from sport anglers in an area and time where Southern

Residents are frequently observed. Additionally, winter sport fisheries that have traditionally occurred in November and December in Marine Areas 9 and 10 are closed for 2018.

Commercial salmon fishing vessels licensed by WDFW also operate in Marine Area 7 in the vicinity of San Juan Island (Shaw 2018). These fisheries are under the regulatory control of the Pacific Salmon Commission's Fraser River Panel. For the most part, commercial vessels operating within ¼ mile of San Juan Island utilize purse seine gear. Beyond ¼ mile of the Island there is a mix of gillnet and purse seine vessels. These vessels target sockeye returning to the Fraser River. It is anticipated that the Fraser River Panel will authorize vessels licensed by WDFW to fish in as many as 6 to 8 openings during 2018, mostly in the month of August. The number of days fished in WDFW managed commercial purse seine and gillnet fisheries in US waters of the San Juan Island and Strait of Georgia during 2006, 2010, and 2014 averaged 10 days in August and early September (Shaw 2018). Specific to these gear types for 2018 fisheries in Marine Areas 7 and 7A targeting Fraser River sockeye, effort is likely to be reduced in comparison to recent years (2006, 2010, and 2014).

Fishing vessels operate at slow speeds or in idle when actively fishing. When in transit, vessels would likely travel at faster speeds with the potential to affect the whales' behavior. For fishing vessels, it is likely that some of the exposures, while vessels are either fishing or transiting, will cause behavioral changes, avoidance, or a decrease in foraging (as described above). It is likely that some of the exposures will result in less efficient foraging by the whales than their foraging efforts would be in the absence of the vessel effects. It is difficult to estimate the number of exposures likely to result in behavioral changes or avoidance, and not possible to quantify effects on foraging efficiency. As described in the Status section, Lacy et al. (2017) considered sub-lethal effects and the cumulative impacts of threats (including acoustic disturbance from vessels) and suggested in order for the population to reach the recovery goals, the acoustic disturbance would need to be reduced in half and the Chinook abundance would need to be increased by 15%.

In a letter signed April 30, 2018, WDFW committed to additional measures as part of the proposed action to reduce impacts from vessels on Southern Resident killer whales including:

1. Implementing a package of outreach and education programs related to the Be Whale-Wise guidelines (http://www.bewhalewise.org). Education and outreach efforts would be focused at boat launches and marinas in the San Juan Islands and key access points for vessels intending to travel to the islands, as well as commercial and recreational fishing vessels. This will include educational material promoting "Be Whale Wise" guidelines.
2. As a proposed short-term measure, WDFW will promote the adherence to a voluntary "No-Go" Whale Protection Zone along the western side of San Juan Island in Marine Area 7 for all recreational boats—fishing and non-fishing—and commercial fishing vessels (with the exception of the Fraser Panel sockeye fisheries[29]) (**Figure 23**). The

[29] These fisheries utilize purse seine gear within ¼ mile of San Juan Island and are required to release non-target species (Chinook and coho); the total estimated release mortalities of Chinook and coho resulting from these fisheries are 2,823 and 1,033 respectively (Shaw 2018).

geographic extent of this area will stretch from Mitchell Bay in the north to Cattle Point in the south, and extend offshore ¼ mile between these locations. The voluntary "No-Go" Zone extends further offshore—out to ½ mile—from a point centered on Lime Kiln Lighthouse. This area reflects expansion of the San Juan County Marine Stewardship Area[30] currently being considered and the full protected area identified by the Pacific Whale Watch Association[31] and is consistent with that proposed by NOAA Fisheries as *Alternative 4* in the 2009 Environmental Assessment on New Regulations to Protect SRKWs from Vessel Effects in Inland Waters of Washington and represents the area most frequently utilized for foraging and socialization in the San Juan Islands. To improve conditions for the whales, WDFW will ask all vessels to stay out of this key area to provide the full benefits of a quiet foraging area free from disturbance.


**Figure 23.** An approximation of the Voluntary "No-Go" Whale Protection Zone, from Mitchell Bay to Cattle Point (Shaw 2018).

3. Concurrent with the initiation of the voluntary program, WDFW will work with the Governor's Office, State Parks and Recreation Commission, and the Department of Natural Resources to discuss and consider utilizing their respective authorities to

[30] http://www.sjcmrc.org/projects/marine-stewardship-area/
[31] https://www.pacificwhalewatchassociation.com/guidelines/

strengthen the efficacy of the voluntary program and outreach efforts. Additionally, WDFW will work with state partners to develop a new potential "No Go" Whale Protection Zone alternative for consideration by the Governor's Southern Resident Killer Whale Task Force[32] as a proposed long-term solution.

4. For all vessels, WDFW will work with Island County to maintain slow transit speeds (restricted to 7 knots or less) at a minimum and potentially reduce transit speeds in areas frequently utilized by Southern Residents in the summer season (specifically off the west coast of San Juan Island) and to silence their sonar in the presence of Southern Residents and when fishing gear is deployed (especially those transmitting at 83 kHz).
5. Currently WDFW enforcement conduct coordinated patrols with the U.S. Coast Guard year-round that include monitoring and enforcement of fisheries and Marine Mammal Protection Act requirements related to vessel operation in the presence of marine mammals throughout Puget Sound. Patrols in the marine areas of northern Puget Sound, particularly Marine Area 7 are specifically targeted to enforce regulations related to killer whales. WDFW plans to increase their enforcement emphasis in these areas. WDFW is planning for more than 80 patrols between May 1 and September 30 (weather and other variables dependent) to focus in Marine Area 7 when SRKWs are known to frequent the area.

In summary, the proposed action includes recreational and commercial vessels fishing in areas known to be important to Southern Resident killer whales. Vessels affect whale behavior and reduce effectiveness in locating and consuming sufficient prey through acoustic interference. These impacts may increase energy and reduce overall foraging and energy intake at times, however, the fishing vessels do not target the whales and their effects are expected to be short-term. We do not anticipate that effects from fishing vessels will impact individuals at levels that cause injury or impact reproduction. Overall, the direct impacts from fishing vessels are expected to be lower in 2018 compared to recent years based on the reduced presence of fishing vessels in the key foraging areas. This reduction in overlap of fisheries and whales is expected because of reduced fishing efforts (e.g. the reduction of vessel impacts in September and the reduced vessel impacts likely to occur in foraging hotspots along the west side of San Juan Island), and mitigation efforts such as increased outreach and education efforts, including to the fishing community, expanded areas with fewer or no vessels, and increased enforcement. Ongoing monitoring of vessel activities near the whales will allow for tracking reductions in fishing vessel activity when whales are in key foraging areas.

**Reduction of primary prey**

*Relationship between Southern Resident killer whales and Chinook salmon*

---

[32] On March 14, 2018 the Governor signed Executive Order 18-02 designating state agencies to take immediate actions to benefit Southern Resident killer whales. In addition, a Task Force was developed to provide longer-term actions recommendations for Southern Resident killer whale recovery.
https://www.governor.wa.gov/issues/issues/energy-environment/southern-resident-killer-whale-recovery-and-task-force

Several studies have found correlations between Chinook salmon indices and Southern Resident killer whale demographic rates (Ford et al. 2005, 2009; Ward et al. 2009, 2013). Although these studies examined different demographic responses related to different Chinook abundance indices, they all found significant positive relationships (high Chinook abundance coupled with high Southern Resident killer whale growth rates). However, there are several challenges to this relationship and uncertainty remains. This relationship is statistically challenging because of demographic stochasticity, Southern Residents have a small population size (not many births or deaths in a year to correlate with salmon abundance), these whales are long-lived making it more challenging to predict interactions with the environment, there are other primary threats (disturbance from vessels and sound and high levels of toxic pollutants) that can also influence demographic rates, the inherent uncertainties in the annual Chinook salmon abundance estimates, and there is currently no metric for prey accessibility (i.e., abundance and availability) to the whales.

Largely, attempts to compare the relative importance of any specific Chinook salmon stocks or stock groups using the strengths of these statistical relationships have not produced clear distinctions as to which are most influential and most Chinook salmon abundance indices are highly correlated with each other. It is also possible that different Chinook salmon populations may be more important in different years and that the relative importance of specific Chinook salmon stocks in the whales' diet changes over time. If anything, large aggregations of Chinook salmon stocks that reflect abundance on a coast-wide scale appear to be as equally or better correlated with Southern Resident killer whale vital rates than smaller aggregations of Chinook salmon stocks, or specific stocks such as Chinook originating from the Fraser River that have been positively identified as key sources of prey for Southern Residents during certain times of the year in specific areas (see Hilborn et al. 2012; Ward et al. 2013). Although it is clear Southern Residents need improvements to their prey base to have a higher chance of improving their own status, these challenges may mask our ability in some years to accurately predict the relationship between Southern Resident killer whale demographic rates and Chinook salmon abundance.

When prey is scarce, whales likely spend more time foraging than when it is plentiful. Increased energy expenditure and prey limitation can cause nutritional stress. Nutritional stress is the condition of being unable to acquire adequate energy and nutrients from prey resources and as a chronic condition can lead to reduced body size and condition of individuals and lower birth and survival rates of a population (e.g., Trites and Donnelly 2003). Food scarcity could also cause whales to draw on fat stores, mobilizing contaminants stored in their fat and potentially affecting reproduction and immune function. Increasing time spent foraging during reduced prey availability also decreases the time spent socializing and reduces reproductive opportunities. Good fitness and body condition coupled with reproductive opportunities is important for reproductive success.

As described in the Status section, the Southern Resident killer whale population is expected to decline over the next 50 years if there is no change in their fecundity or survival (NMFS 2016). Between 2011 and 2016, fecundity rates declined. There are currently 26 reproductive age females (aged 11 – 42 years), of which only 14 have successfully reproduced in the last 10 years, and there has been no viable calves since the beginning of 2016 (CWR unpubl. data). Vélez-Espino et al. (2014) estimated an extinction risk of 49% in 25 years, and an expected minimum abundance of 15 individuals during a 100-year period. They found the survival of young reproductive females has the largest influence on population growth and population variance.

Recent evidence has indicated pregnancy hormones (progesterone and testosterone) can be detected in Southern Resident killer whale feces and have indicated several miscarriages, particularly in late pregnancy (Wasser et al. 2017). The authors suggest this reduced fecundity is largely due to nutritional limitation. Given killer whale gestation is approximately 18 months (Robeck et al. 2015), it is important to have multiple years of sufficient Chinook prey availability to improve fecundity.

*Effects of Prey Reduction Caused by the Proposed Action*

We compared prey available to Southern Resident killer whales with and without the proposed fishing and found that the proposed fishing will reduce prey available to Southern Residents when they are in inland waters, described in more detail below. This analysis considers whether effects of that prey reduction may impact the fitness of individual whales or effect population growth.

We analyzed the effects of prey reduction in two steps. First, we estimated the reduction in prey available to the whales from the proposed fisheries. Second, we considered information to help put the reduction in context. The pertinent information that helped us put the reduction caused by the proposed actions in context included: 1) the ratio of Chinook prey available to the whales' Chinook needs, based on diet studies of Southern Residents and their predominant consumption of Chinook, and particularly large Chinook (as described in the Status and Baseline sections and in NMFS 2011); 2) we assessed how the 2018 proposed fisheries and Chinook abundance compared to recent years; and 3) we translated the reductions of Chinook salmon from the proposed fishing into biological context by relating it to the whales' energy requirements. This analysis highlights our level of confidence in the available data, and identifies where there is uncertainty in light of data gaps and where we made conservative assumptions.

First, we estimated the percent reduction in available prey from the proposed fishing (see the Environmental Baseline section and NMFS 2011 for more details on methodology used). In order to isolate percent prey reduction caused by the proposed action, we estimated the abundance of prey available when all fisheries (including Canadian fisheries, U.S. fisheries, and the proposed fishery) are open and compared it to the estimated abundance of prey available when all fisheries are open except the Puget Sound fisheries. The pre-season forecast for 2018 indicates a strong return year for inland stocks, based on the anticipated PSC indices for these stocks. The FRAM model pre-season estimates for abundance of age 3-5 Chinook in inland waters will be approximately 1.78 million (**Figure 24**). Preseason forecasts tend to underestimate actual returns based on post-season estimates. Therefore, we anticipate this estimate to be conservative. The proposed fishing will reduce the abundance of Chinook in inland waters during the months of July through September by 2.5% (or approximately 44,500 Chinook). Our analysis focuses on the July through September time frame because this is the time frame with larger reductions and more overlap of fisheries and whale foraging. During the remainder of the year there is generally less fishing and therefore minimal reductions (less than 1%) in abundance absent the proposed fishery.

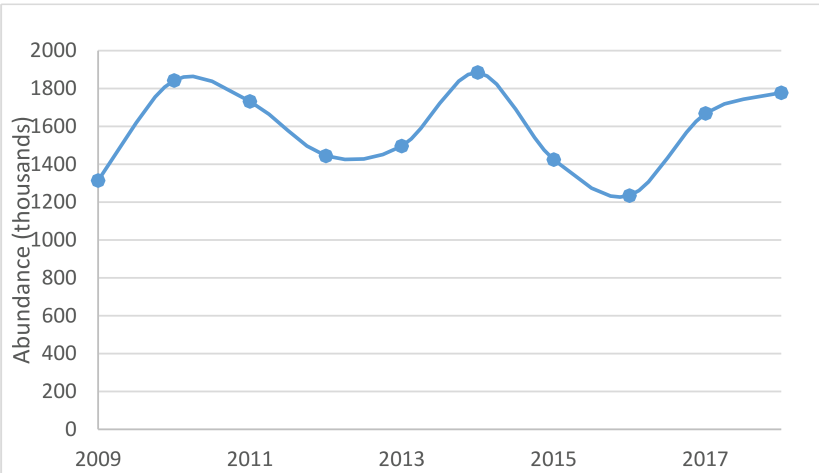



**Figure 24.** Pre-season estimated abundance of age 3-5 Chinook salmon in the Salish Sea from 2009-2018 during July – September (data from Shaw 2018).

To put these catch numbers into biological context, 44,500 adult Chinook roughly translates to 728,376,000 kcal (assuming a large adult Chinook equals 16,368 kcal). This equates to feeding all individuals in the Southern Resident killer whale population for approximately 49 days (assuming all the fish were consumed by the whales; J pod DPER: 4,160,720 kcal per day; K pod DPER: 4,008,683 kcal per day; L pod DPER: 6,777,023 kcal per day). However, this is likely an overestimate of the number of feeding days because it is extremely unlikely that the whales would have consumed all fish caught in the fishery. Both the Chinook salmon prey and the whales are highly mobile, so it is unlikely that Southern Residents would encounter and consume all 44,500 Chinook salmon therefore, the 2.5% prey reduction is likely an overestimate of the reduction in available prey the whales would experience.

We also consider the prey reduction from the proposed actions in context by estimating the ratio of Chinook food energy available to the whales compared to needs and evaluating the ratio after those reductions (that is, with the proposed fishing). For example, positive ratios indicate there is more prey available than the whales need. If there are 10 times the number of kilocalories (kcal) available than the metabolic needs of the whales based on the amount of time they spend in a location, the ratio is 10. Because there is no available information on the whales' foraging efficiency, it is difficult to evaluate the impact of prey reductions on the ratios. Although we have low confidence in the ratios, we consider them as an indicator to help focus our analysis on the time and location where prey availability may be lowest and where the action may have the most significant effect on the whales. Hilborn et al. (2012) cautioned that forage ratios provide limited insight into prey limitations without knowing the whale fitness/vital rates as a function of the supply and demand, however, they suggested ratios may be informative in an ecosystem context (by species or region). In response to the latter point, Chasco et al. (2017b) compared forage ratios across regions, from California to Southeast Alaska. They found that the forage ratios (Chinook salmon available compared to the diet needs of killer whales) were useful to estimate declines in prey over the last four decades and to compare forage ratios across geographic areas. They found forage ratios were consistently higher in coastal waters of British Columbia and southeast Alaska than estimated ratios in Washington waters.

The baseline ratios in July through September appear to be relatively low compared to October through April and May through June even without the proposed fishing – between 8.53 and 16.72 times the whales' estimated needs during July through September in inland waters (see the Environmental Baseline section, **Table 15**) and with the proposed fishing the ratios would be 8.00 to 16.2. During October through April, and May through June, these energy ratios almost double the ratios estimated for July through September. These ratios ranged over different years (1992-2014) with different salmon abundances, using the maximum daily prey energy requirements. The current estimated ratios are not directly comparable with ratios described in NMFS (2011), limiting our interpretation and the weight of confidence in the ratios, because of the updates to FRAM. For example, in NMFS (2011), the FRAM model produced stock and age specific cohort abundance for several stages: initial, after natural mortality, after fishing in mixed stock marine areas (preterminal), and mature run. The ratio for July-Sept in inland waters estimated in NMFS (2011) was between 3.2 and 7.9 times the whales estimated needs. For this analysis, the cohort abundance is estimated before natural mortality.

The proposed fishing would reduce the available prey and lower the ratio of available prey compared to needs of the whales. Because we consider the ratio of Chinook prey available to meet the whales' needs to be relatively low for inland waters July through September, any additional measurable reduction is a concern. With the projected abundance in 2018, we anticipate that the ratios for 2018 would be at the higher end of the range closer to 16 (based on past range over 1992-2014 salmon abundances and using maximum daily prey energy requirements). The proposed fishing reduces the ratio of available prey during other times of year, but there is generally less fishing at other times of year, less overlap with the whales, the reductions are much smaller and the ratios are higher.

Because of their life histories and the location of their natal streams, adult salmon are not evenly distributed across inland waters during the summer and early-fall months when Southern Residents occur in this general area. Therefore, the overall reduction in prey could cause local depletions, further affecting the ability of the whales to meet their bioenergetic needs. Reducing local abundance of prey from the proposed fishing could result in the whales leaving areas in search of more abundant prey. This could result in a potential increase in energy demands which would have the same effect on an animal's energy budget as reductions in available energy, such as one would expect from reductions in prey. The Southern Residents regularly make trips to coastal waters during the summer months and have access to additional prey in nearby waters. This was particularly true in 2017 when the whales spent more time off the coast than in inland waters.

It is difficult to assess potential for localized depletions because the prey reduction during July through September throughout the action area or in inland waters may not accurately predict reductions in prey available in known foraging hotspots. For example, a 2.5% reduction in food energy in the inland waters applies to a broad area with varying overlap with the whales. A reduction in Chinook salmon in south Puget Sound during summer months when the whales are primarily off the west side of San Juan Island will have a different effect on reduced prey availability than that same percent reduction off the west coast of San Juan Island. While we have detailed information on the whales' distribution, unfortunately, FRAM is not able to analyze prey reductions at a finer scale.

We can also look at the proposed fisheries in 2018 and compare to previous years to evaluate potential for localized depletion. As described above, the 2018 fishery has proposed some changes in their recreational fishing to reduce impacts to Chinook salmon including a shift from non-selective Chinook fisheries to non-retention Chinook fisheries in September in Marine Area 7. Although difficult to quantify, these actions should have a reduced impact on the amount of Chinook prey available to Southern Resident killer whales than fisheries in previous years. This may offset the potential local depletions in Area 7, an important foraging area for the whales, during the month of September in addition to reducing interference with foraging through reduced vessel presence. Adherence to the voluntary no go zone by fisherman throughout the summer could also reduce the potential for localized depletions along the West side of San Juan Island.

We also consider reductions in prey expected with 2018 fisheries in context by assessing Chinook abundance compared to recent years. The pre-season forecast for 2018 (1.78 million) is an increase from last year's pre-season estimated abundance of 1.67 million and is above the upper range of abundances described in the previous analysis (NMFS 2011). In addition, the 2018 predicted return of adult hatchery-origin Puget Sound Chinook escaping pre-terminal fisheries is approximately 230,000 Chinook salmon, a 25% increase over the most recent ten-year average (Shaw 2018).

As described in Section 2.7.1, 15 of the 22 populations in the ESU are expected to exceed their critical thresholds for escapement and eight of those are expected to exceed their rebuilding thresholds (**Table 25**). Seven populations are expected to be below their critical thresholds (North and South Fork Nooksack, South Fork Stillaguamish, Sammamish, Mid-Hood Canal, Skokomish, Dungeness, Elwha). For these populations, the fisheries resulting from implementing the proposed actions in 2018 would not meaningfully affect the persistence of the populations under the recovery strategies in place or the indigenous population has been extirpated and a long-term transition strategy is in place.

In summary, the proposed actions are expected to cause a 2.5% reduction in abundance of age 3-5 Chinook salmon during the July through September months in inland waters in 2018. Overall, the number of fish is a meaningful reduction in the number of feeding days to the Southern Resident killer whale population, however, not all of the fish caught in the fishery would have been intercepted and consumed by the whales. The estimated reduction is highest in inland waters during July through September compared to the other seasons and likely an overestimate based on the conservative assumptions in the analysis. Although this is a relatively small reduction relative to the 1.78 million prey available, some of the reduction occurs in an area known for its high use and is considered a foraging hotspot. Small percent reductions can lead to reduced fitness, increased foraging effort, and less energy acquired. We anticipate smaller reductions in prey in 2018 than in previous years, in part because of reduction in fishing to protect vulnerable salmon populations and also because of the relatively high total Chinook salmon abundance available. Changes in the fishery and efforts to reduce fishing in the primary foraging area along the west side of San Juan Island will reduce the potential for prey reductions to result in significant localized depletions or prey depletions at levels that would cause injury or impair reproduction.

#### 2.5.4.2 Effects on Critical Habitat

In addition to the direct and indirect effects to the species discussed above, the proposed action affects critical habitat designated for Southern Resident killer whales. Based on the natural history of the Southern Residents and their habitat needs, we identified three physical or biological features essential to conservation in designating critical habitat: (1) Water quality to support growth of the whale population and development of individual whales, (2) Prey species of sufficient quantity, quality and availability to support individual growth, reproduction and development, as well as overall population growth, and (3) Passage conditions to allow for migration, resting, and foraging. This analysis considers effects to these features.

The proposed actions have the potential to affect the quantity and availability of prey and passage conditions in critical habitat. Although Southern Resident killer whale critical habitat remains at risk from serious spills because of the heavy volume of shipping traffic and proximity to petroleum refining centers, we do not expect the proposed fisheries to impact water quality because fishing vessels do not carry large amounts of oil, making the risk from spills minor. Therefore, we do not anticipate adverse effects to water quality.

Effects of the proposed fishing reduce prey quantity and availability in critical habitat resulting from the harvest of adult salmon. As described previously, several studies have correlated Chinook salmon abundance indices with Southern Resident killer whale population growth rates (Ford et al. 2005, 2009; Ward et al. 2009, 2013). However, uncertainty remains because there are several challenges to understanding this relationship. The pre-season estimates for abundance of age 3-5 Chinook in designated critical habitat will be approximately 1.78 million and is likely to result in reductions in prey quantity and availability by 2.5%, or approximately 44,500 adult Chinook. This reduction in prey quantity and availability roughly translates to 49 days of enough prey to feed all individuals in the population. It is difficult to assess how reductions in prey abundance may vary throughout critical habitat and we have less confidence in our understanding of how reductions could result in localized depletions in the three different core areas of designated critical habitat. Furthermore, seasonal prey reduction throughout critical habitat may not accurately predict reductions in prey available in their summer core area, a known foraging hotspot.

As described above, we also estimated the Chinook food energy available to the whales and compared available kilocalories to needs and evaluated the ratio after reductions from the proposed fishing. The baseline ratios in critical habitat ranged between 8.53 and 16.72 times the whales' estimated needs during July through September. With the proposed fishing, the ratios would be reduced to between 8.00 and 16.20. Because we consider the ratio of Chinook prey available to meet the whales' needs to be relatively low in critical habitat in July through September, the additional reduction in these ratios is a concern.

As described in the Effects section, we anticipate a higher abundance of Chinook (last year's pre-season abundance was 1.67 million) and ratios for 2018 would be at the higher end of the range because of the higher pre-season abundance. Furthermore, impacts are expected to be lower in 2018 based on the reduced fishing (i.e., non-retention of Chinook in September in Marine Area 7, and a closure in the winter sport fisheries in November and December in Marine Areas 9 and 10). With higher prey abundance and lower fishing effort in 2018, prey quantity and availability in critical habitat are anticipated to be improved compared to the last several years and therefore, is not expected to appreciably diminish the value of critical habitat.

Effects of the proposed fishing include exposure of whales to the physical presence and sound generated by vessels associated with the proposed action. This increase in vessel presence and sound in critical habitat and in a key foraging area, contribute to total effects on passage conditions. As described above, the vessels associated with the fishing activities overlap with the whales, particularly in July through September in Marine Area 7, an area defined as the whales' summer core area in Haro Strait and waters around the San Juan Islands. Although we cannot quantify the increase in vessels around the whales likely to result from the proposed action, it is reasonable to expect that authorization of the proposed fishery will result in more vessels in core areas of the whales' critical habitat than there would be if no fishing is authorized.

For reasons described above, it is likely that the amount of disturbance caused by the fishing vessels will affect whale behavior including spending more time traveling and performing surface active behaviors and less time foraging and resting in their critical habitat. The fishing vessels will also reduce effectiveness in locating and consuming sufficient prey through acoustic and physical interference. These impacts may also reduce overall foraging at times and may cause whales to move to areas with less disturbance outside of currently designated critical habitat. However, as described above, vessel impacts are expected to be lower in 2018 based on the reduction in overlap of fisheries and whales in the summer core area (e.g. beginning September 4, Marine Area 7, which includes the summer core area, will close to retention of Chinook), and WDFW will promote the adherence to a voluntary "No-Go" Whale Protection Zone along the western side of San Juan Island in Marine Area 7, extending from Mitchell Point to Cattle Point, for all recreational boats—fishing and non-fishing—and commercial fishing vessels (with the exception of the Fraser Panel sockeye fisheries). In addition, conservation efforts by WDFW will include education to fishing vessels to maintain slow transit speeds (restricted to 7 knots or less) at a minimum and potentially reduce transit speeds in critical habitat and to silence vessel sonar in the presence of Southern Residents and when fishing gear is deployed (especially those transmitting at 83 kHz). Therefore, we anticipate adverse effects to passage conditions from fishing vessels is expected to be small and mitigated by several conservation efforts and is not expected to appreciably diminish the value of critical habitat.

## 2.6 Cumulative Effects

"Cumulative effects" are those effects of future state or private activities, not involving Federal activities, that are reasonably certain to occur within the action area of the Federal action subject to consultation (50 CFR 402.02). Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed actions and that have undergone section 7 consultation are considered in the Environmental Baseline.

Some continuing non-Federal activities are reasonably certain to contribute to climate effects within the action area. However, it is difficult if not impossible to determine which of the action area's future environmental conditions caused by global climate change are caused by activities in the action area versus activities elsewhere in the world. We describe all relevant future climate-related environmental conditions in the action area in the environmental baseline (Section 2.4).

Activities occurring in the Puget Sound area were considered in the discussion of cumulative effects in the biological opinion on the Puget Sound Harvest Resource Management Plan (NMFS 2011a) and in the cumulative effects sections of several section 7 consultations on large scale habitat projects affecting listed species in Puget Sound including Washington State Water Quality Standards (NMFS 2008b), Washington State Department of Transportation Preservation, Improvement, and Maintenance Activities (NMFS 2013a), the National Flood Insurance Program (NMFS 2008c), and the Elwha River Fish Restoration Plan (Ward et al. 2008). We anticipate that the effects described in these previous analyses will continue into the future and therefore we incorporate those discussions by reference here. Those opinions discussed the types of activities taken to protect listed species through habitat restoration, hatchery and harvest reforms, and water resource management actions.

The Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan was published in 2007 (NMFS 2006c; SSPS 2007). Puget Sound steelhead recovery planning is underway. A Recovery Plan for Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Yelloweye Rockfish and Bocaccio was completed in 2017 (NMFS 2017f) and implementation with state and other partners is ongoing. A Final Recovery Plan for Southern Resident killer whales was published January 24, 2008 (NMFS 2008e). Rules on vessel traffic to protect Southern Residents from vessel effects were adopted in 2011 (76 FR 20870). Outreach and enforcement of these regulations will reduce the vessel effects (as described in Ferrara et al. 2017) of recreational and whale watching vessels in U.S. waters of the action area. There is currently a ¼ mile "Whalewatch Exclusion Zone" along the West side of San Juan Island from Mitchell Bay to Eagle Point (and ½ mile around Lime Kiln) as part of their Marine Stewardship Area. San Juan County is in the process of expanding this area to include a ¼ mile no vessel zone to Cattle Point with additional recommendations for speed. In 2018 the Pacific

Whale Watch Association updated their industry guidelines stating "Vessels will remain a minimum of 1⁄2 mile (880 yards) from the light beacon of the Light House at Lime Kiln State Park on San Juan Island when whales are in the vicinity. Vessels will remain a minimum of 1⁄4 mile (440 yards) from the main shoreline of the west side of San Juan Island when between Mitchell Point to Cattle Point (facing south)." The Fisheries Minister is also considering new regulations to protect killer whales in Canadian waters.
Recently, a joint DFO-NOAA Prey Availability Workshop was held in November 2017 that focused on identifying short-term management actions that might be taken to immediately increase the abundance and accessibility of Chinook salmon. Priority management actions identified in the workshop that should be considered included 1) targeted, area-based fishery management measures designed to improve Chinook salmon availability, and 2) reducing acoustic and vessel disturbance in key Southern Resident foraging areas. There was little support for broad scale coast-wide reductions in fishing to increase the prey available to the whales, which was consistent with the findings of the previous transboundary panel. For the 2018 salmon fishing season, the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada has proposed to take additional fishery management measures on a trial basis to increase Chinook salmon availability in specific Southern Resident foraging areas in Canadian waters; however those measures have not yet been finalized. Next steps include a workshop hosted by the National Fish and Wildlife Foundation which will focus on increasing priority Chinook salmon populations to benefit Southern Resident killer whales.

On Marcy 14, 2018, WA Governor's Executive Order 18-02 was signed and it orders state agencies to take immediate actions to benefit Southern Resident killer whales and established a Task Force to identify, prioritize, and support the implementation of a longer term action plan need for Southern Resident killer whale recovery. The Task Force is scheduled to provide recommendations in a final report by November 2018. Although these actions are reasonably certain to occur, it is uncertain what the outcome will be. As part of the proposed action, WDFW plans to work with state partners to develop a new potential "No Go" Whale Protection Zone alternative for consideration by the Governor's Southern Resident Killer Whale Task Force as a proposed long-term solution.

Although state, tribal and local governments have developed plans and initiatives to benefit ESA listed salmon, they must be applied and sustained in a comprehensive way before NMFS can consider them "reasonably certain to occur" in its analysis of cumulative effects.

Some types of human activities that contribute to cumulative effects are expected to have adverse impacts on populations and PBFs, many of which are activities that have occurred in the recent past and had an effect on the environmental baseline. These can be considered reasonably certain to occur in the future because they occurred frequently in the recent past, especially if authorizations or permits have not yet expired. Within the freshwater portion of the action area, non-Federal actions are likely to include human population growth, water withdrawals (i.e., those pursuant to senior state water rights), and land use practices. In marine waters within the action area, state, tribal, and local government actions are likely to be in the form of legislation, administrative rules, or policy initiatives, shoreline growth management, and resource permitting. Private activities include continued resource extraction, vessel traffic, development, and other activities which contribute to non-point source pollution and storm water run-off. Although these factors are ongoing to some extent and likely to continue in the future, past occurrence is not a guarantee of a continuing level of activity. That will depend on whether there are economic, administrative, and legal impediments (or in the case of contaminants, safeguards). Therefore, although NMFS finds it likely that the cumulative effects of these activities will have adverse effects commensurate to those of similar past activities, as described in the Environmental Baseline, it is not possible to quantify these effects.

## 2.7 Integration and Synthesis

The Integration and Synthesis section is the final step in our assessment of the risk posed to species and critical habitat as a result of implementing the proposed actions. In this section, we add the effects of the action (Section 2.5) to the environmental baseline (Section 2.4) and the cumulative effects (Section 2.6), taking into account the status of the species and critical habitat (Section 2.2), to formulate the agency's biological opinion as to whether the proposed actions is likely to: (1) Reduce appreciably the likelihood of both the survival and recovery of a listed species in the wild by reducing its numbers, reproduction, or distribution; or (2) appreciably diminishes the value of designated or proposed critical habitat for the conservation of the species.

### 2.7.1 Puget Sound Chinook

NMFS describes its approach to the analysis of the proposed actions in broad terms in section 2.1, and in more detail as NMFS focuses on the effects of the action in Section 2.4.1. The approach incorporates information discussed in the Status (Section 2.2.1.1), Environmental Baseline (Section 2.3.1), and Cumulative Effects (Section 2.5) sections. In the effects analysis, NMFS first analyzes the effects of the proposed actions on individual salmon populations within the ESU using quantitative analyses where possible and more qualitative considerations where necessary. Risk to the survival and recovery of the ESU is then determined by assessing the distribution of risk across the populations within each major geographic region and then accounting for the relative role of each population to the viability of the ESU. The derivation of the RERs, and the status and trends include the impacts of the harvest, hatchery and habitat actions discussed in the Environmental Baseline. The derivation of the RERs also make assumptions about the effects of the actions discussed in the Cumulative Effects (i.e., variability in management error, environmental conditions, marine survival). By considering the RERs, status, and trend information in the discussion of effects of the proposed actions, the effects of the activities in those sections of the biological opinion are integrated into our risk assessment.

The risk assessment is presented in two stages. In the first stage, a potential area of concern or risk is identified by region based on the status of the populations relative to their escapement thresholds and RERs. The second stage of the analysis considers all of the populations in each region, with particular attention to those identified to be at higher risk in stage one. NMFS considers the factors and circumstances that mitigate the risks identified in the first stage leading to conclusions regarding the viability of each region and the ESU as a whole. We evaluate the likelihood of that concern or risk occurring and consider the practical influence harvest may have on the potential concern or risk.

The results of this evaluation also highlight the importance of habitat actions and hatchery conservation programs for the preservation and recovery of these populations specifically, and to the ESU in general. The status of many of these stocks is largely the result of reduced productivity in the wild from habitat loss and degradation and from other sources of human induced mortality. The analysis in this evaluation suggests that it is unrealistic to expect to achieve substantive increases in Chinook population abundance and productivity and population recovery through harvest reductions alone without also taking substantive action in other areas to improve the survival and productivity of the populations. Recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU depends on implementation of a broad based program that addresses the identified major limiting factors of decline.

The analysis is unavoidably complex. It involves 22 populations spread across five geographic regions. NMFS uses a variety of quantitative metrics (e.g., RERs, critical and rebuilding thresholds, measures of growth rate and productivity) and qualitative considerations (e.g., PRA designation, whether a population is essential to a recovery scenario, the need for and status of a long-term transitional adaptation and recovery plan where the indigenous population has been extirpated, the magnitude of harvest in SUS fisheries, treaty fishery contribution) in its assessment of the proposed actions. These are discussed in Sections 2.4.1 (Environmental Baseline) and 2.5.1 (Effects of the Action). The Integration and Synthesis section summarizes and explains the considerations that lead to NMFS' biological opinion for the proposed actions. In the following, NMFS summarizes the considerations taken into account for each population in a discussion that is organized by region. The same information is displayed and summarized in **Table 25** which may help navigate the complexities of the narrative.

Both Chinook populations in the Georgia Basin Region are near or at critical status. This is cause for concern given their role in recovery of the ESU. However, impacts from the proposed actions in Puget Sound fisheries are low (8%), and our analysis indicates that further harvest reductions in 2018 Puget Sound fisheries would not measurably affect the risks to survival or recovery for either Nooksack population. This result is consistent with information that indicates productivity is low and that past harvest constraints have had limited effect on increasing escapement of returning natural-origin fish, when compared with the much higher natural escapement including adults from the conservation hatchery programs. Escapement and growth trends are positive for the North Fork Nooksack and stable for the South Fork Nooksack population. The conservation hatchery programs are key components in recovery of the Nooksack early Chinook populations that are designed to buffer demographic and genetic risks. Measures to minimize impacts to Nooksack early Chinook, particularly the South Fork population, are part of the proposed actions, and past patterns indicate exploitation rates under the proposed actions are likely to be lower than anticipated.

For the Whidbey/Main Basin Region, the effects of the proposed actions in 2018 will meet the recovery plan guidance of not impeding achievement of viability for two to four populations representing the range of life histories displayed in this region including those specifically identified as needed for recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU. The Whidbey/Main Basin Region is a stronghold of Chinook production in the ESU. Most populations in the region are doing well relative to abundance criteria and the effects of the action on four of these are below their RERs (Upper Sauk, Suiattle, Cascade, North Fork Stillaguamish). Collectively the populations in this Region representa diversity of healthy populations in the region as a whole. NMFS considers the proposed fisheries to present a low risk to populations where their estimated impacts are less than or equal to the RERs. The stable escapement trends, positive growth rates, and, in particular, the relatively robust status of the populations compared with their abundance thresholds should mitigate the increased risk that results from exceeding the RER in 2018 for the three Skagit spring and two Snohomish populations. Although the South Fork Stillaguamish population is in critical condition and declining, the population is a PRA Tier 2 and its life history type is represented by other healthier populations in the region which are expected to be below their RERs (**Table 19**). Exploitation rates in 2018 Puget Sound fisheries are expected to be relatively low across the four management units (8%-18%)(**Table 19**). If the proposed actions were not to occur in 2018, we estimate that an additional 7 natural-origin spawners would return to the South Fork Stillaguamish River, which would not provide sufficient additional spawners to significantly change the status or trends of the populations from what would occur without the fisheries. Growth rates for natural-origin escapement are consistently higher than growth rates for natural-origin recruitment for most populations within the Region, including the South Fork Stillaguamish population. This indicates that sufficient fish are escaping the fisheries to maintain or increase the number of spawners from the parent generation; providing some stabilizing influence for abundance and reducing demographic risks.

For the Central/South Sound Region, implementation of the proposed 2018 fisheries is consistent with the recovery plan guidance of not impeding achievement of viability for two to four populations representing the range of life histories displayed by the populations in that region including those specifically identified as needed for recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU (White River and Nisqually). Most populations in the region are doing relatively well compared to abundance criteria (**Table 25**). However, harvest impacts on all populations are anticipated to exceed their RERs in 2018.

The additional risks associated with exceeding the RER in the 2018 fishing year should not impede achievement of viability by the White, Nisqually or Green, and Cedar River populations. The White and Nisqually populations are in Tier 1 watersheds and essential to recovery of the ESU. For the White River, growth rates and the escapement trend for the population are positive and this trend has occurred with the effects of exploitation rates during the last decade similar to the proposed actions; indicating the rates have not impeded growth of the population and would not be expected to do so in 2018. Natural-origin escapement for the White River is anticipated to exceed its rebuilding threshold. For the Nisqually population, theconclusion stated above is based on four considerations: (1) the extirpated status of the indigenous Chinook population, (2) the trend in overall escapements and growth rate for natural-origin escapement, (3) the total escapement anticipated in 2018, and (4) the implementation of a new long-term transitional strategy for the population beginning in 2018. The additional actions being taken by the co-managers as part of the proposed actions described in Section 2.4.1.2 will also help improve the status of the Nisqually Chinook population. Use of a long-term transitional strategy recognizes the nature of the limiting factors in the watershed and is also consistent with NMFS' responsibility to balance its tribal trust responsibility and conservation mandates by meeting the ESA's requirements while minimizing to the degree possible disruption of treaty fishing opportunity (Garcia 1998). Natural-origin returns for the Green River have substantially increased in recent years and the population will be managed in 2018 to ensure that the gains are preserved, maintaining the abundance with additional opportunities to strengthen the trend. Growth rates for natural-origin escapement are consistently higher than growth rates for natural-origin recruitment in the Green River. This indicates that sufficient fish are escaping the fisheries to maintain or increase the number of spawners from the parent generation, providing some stabilizing influence for abundance and reducing demographic risks. Average escapement for the Cedar River population is above its rebuilding escapement threshold and escapement in 2018 is expected to be above its rebuilding threshold. Trends for escapement (total and NOR) and growth rate are increasing.

The Puyallup and Sammamish River may experience some increased risks to the pace of adaptation of the existing local stock by fisheries impacts exceeding their RERs. The observed increasing and stable trends in escapement and growth rate for theSammamishshould mitigate the increased risk that could result of from fisheries exceeding the RERs. . For the Sammamish population, the additional spawners from further fishery reductions would not likely change the status of the population. Escapement and growth rates for natural-origin recruits and spawners are declining for the Puyallup River population although average escapement is well above the critical escapement threshold. Both populations are in PRA Tier 3 and their life histories and Green River genetic legacy are represented by other populations in the Central/South Sound region. The indigenous Chinook populations have been extirpated, and potential improvement in natural-origin production is limited by the existing habitat. Neither population is essential for recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU..

In summary, given the information and context presented above, the fishing regime represented by the proposed actions for 2018 should not impede achievement of viability of four (White, Cedar, Duwamish-Green, and Nisqually) of the six populations in the Region in 2018. Therefore, implementation of the proposed 2018 fisheries is consistent with the recovery plan guidance for two to four populations representing the range of life histories displayed by the populations in that region including those specifically identified as needed for recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU (White River and Nisqually). The Puyallup and Sammamish River population may experience some increased risks to the pace of adaptation of the existing local stock from the action given the current status of the natural-origin population. However, the native population has been extirpated and potential improvement in natural-origin production is limited by the existing habitat. Analysis suggests further harvest reductions in 2018 Puget Sound fisheries would not measurably affect the risks to survival or recovery for the Cedar River population. Neither population is essential to recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook ESU (PRA Tier 3), and both the life history and Green River genetic legacy of the population are represented by other populations in the Central/South Sound Region.

The status of the populations in the Hood Canal Region, given their role in recovery of the ESU, is cause for concern. The combination of declining growth rates, low productivity, and low levels of natural-origin escapement suggest these populations are at high risk for survival and recovery. However, the indigenous populations no longer exist and the focus for the Skokomish population is on a long-term transitional strategy to rebuild one or more locally adapted Chinook populations in that watershed. The proposed actions are consistent with the longer term transitional strategy for recovery of the Skokomish population, the trend in natural escapements is stable, the natural escapement anticipated in 2018 is substantially higher than in most recent years, and the co-managers have proposed additional actions as part of the proposed hatchery-related actions to bolster recovery of the population (Unsworth and Parker 2017, Unsworth and Grayum 2016, Grayum and Unsworth 2015, Redhorse 2014, Skokomish and WDFW 2010, Shaw 2018, SIT and WDFW 2018). Conservation hatchery programs for spring Chinook and late-time fall Chinook were initiated in the Skokomish River in 2014 with further actions taken in 2015 and 2016 to refine the implementation plan for the late-timed program. The 2017 update of the Skokomish Recovery Plan described a myriad of on-going habitat restoration and protection activities designed to contribute to recovery of the population. The fact that growth rates in natural-origin escapement exceed those for recruitment indicates that fisheries may provide some stabilizing influence to abundance and productivity thereby reducing demographic risks. The Skokomish population has been managed subject to a 50% exploitation rate ceiling since 2010. The ceiling has been exceeded every year with virtually all of the overage occurring in the terminal net fishery. Substantial changes in management were made in 2015-2017 but it is yet unclear whether the changes fully addressed the overage. As a result the comanagers agreed to manage 2018 fisheries to not exceed a 48 percent management objective, (2018 anticipated = 48%), which should improve the likelihood that the exploitation rate objective of 50 percent will be met in 2018. The critical status of the Skokomish Chinook population underscores the importance of meeting the exploitation rate objective such that fisheries do not represent more of a risk than is consistent with a transitional strategy to recovery. Considering these factors, exceeding the RER in 2018 should not impede the long-term persistence of the Skokomish Chinook population.

The general characteristics of the Mid-Hood Canal Rivers population, including genetic lineage, life history, and run timing, are also found in the Skokomish River population and the Hamma Hamma conservation hatchery program should help buffer some demographic risks to the Mid-Hood Canal Rivers population in the short term. The available information indicates further constraints on 2018 Puget Sound fisheries would not measurably affect the risks to survival or recovery of the spawning aggregations within the Mid-Hood Canal population.

In the Strait of Juan de Fuca Region, both populations are in critical status and fishery impacts on both are expected to exceed their RERs in 2018. This is cause for concern given their role in recovery of the ESU. However, impacts from the proposed actions in Puget Sound fisheries are very low (3%) and analysis suggests further harvest reductions in 2018 Puget Sound fisheries would not measurably affect the risks to survival or recovery for either population. Under the proposed action, escapements of natural-origin fish in the Elwha and Dungeness are expected to remain below and just above their critical thresholds, respectively. When hatchery-origin spawners are taken into account, anticipated escapement in the Dungeness is more than four times the magnitude of its critical threshold and escapement in the Elwha is expected to greatly exceed the magnitude of the rebuilding threshold. The trend for escapement is stable and for growth rate is positive for the Dungeness. The trend in escapement is stable and in growth rate is strongly negative for the Elwha, which is not surprising given the historically poor conditions in the watershed. The conservation hatchery programs operating in the Dungeness and Elwha Rivers are key components for recovery of these populations and buffer demographic risks and preserve the genetic legacies of the populations as degraded habitat is recovered. Projects have been implemented address improve flow conditions and to contribute to restoration of the flood plain for the Dungeness River population. Dam removal on the Elwha River was completed in 2014 and a full scale restoration and recovery program is now underway which will substantially change the status and trajectory for that population.

In summary, under the proposed action, the combined ocean and Puget Sound exploitation rates for the 2018 fishing year for one of the 14 management units (Skagit s/f) and the North Fork Stillaguamish population in the ESU (4 of 22 populations) are expected to be under their RER or RER surrogates (**Table 25**). The Snoqualmie population exceeds is RER by only one percentage point. NMFS considers the proposed action to present a low risk to populations that do not exceed their RERs (NMFS 2004b). For the populations above their RERs or RER surrogates:

> (1) current and anticipated population status in 2018 and stable or positive trends in escapement and growth rate alleviated concerns about additional risk (Upper Sauk, Suiattle, Upper Cascade, Skykomish, Cedar, Green, White);
>
> (2) anticipated impacts from the proposed 2018 Puget Sound fisheries are low and the effect on the population is negligible (North Fork Nooksack, South Fork Nooksack, Sammamish, Mid-Hood Canal Rivers, Dungeness, Elwha, South Fork Stillaguamish);
>
> (3) indigenous populations in the watershed have been extirpated and the proposed fisheries and additional actions proposed by the co-managers are consistent with long-term strategies for local adaptation and rebuilding of the remaining populations (Nisqually, Skokomish); and,
>
> (4) populations were in lower PRA tiers and life histories were represented by other healthier populations in the region (Cedar, South Fork Stillaguamish, Sammamish, Puyallup).

Fifteen of the 22 populations in the ESU are expected to exceed their critical thresholds for escapement and eight of those are expected to exceed their rebuilding thresholds (**Table 25**). Seven populations are expected to be below their critical thresholds (North and South Fork Nooksack, South Fork Stillaguamish, Sammamish, Mid-Hood Canal, Skokomish, Dungeness, Elwha). For the latter populations, the fisheries resulting from implementing the proposed actions in 2018 would not meaningfully affect the persistence of the populations under the recovery strategies in place or the indigenous population has been extirpated and a long-term transition strategy is in place.

**Table 25.** Summary of factors considered in assessing risk by population in the Puget Sound Chinook ESU. The colors denote the status of the parameter in each column for each population. Red = higher risk, yellow = medium risk, green = low risk

| Region | Population | ≤ RER[1] | Population Status[2] (Avg/2018) | | Escapement Trend[3] | Growth Rate Return/Escapement[3] | | Exploitation Rate in PS fisheries[4] | Approach consistent with transitional strategy[4] | PRA Tier |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Strait of Georgia** | N.F. Nooksack early | Red | Yellow | Red | Green | Green | Green | Green | | **1** |
| | S.F. Nooksack early | Red | Red | Red | Yellow | Yellow | Red | Green | | **1** |
| **Whidbey/Main Basin** | Upper Skagit moderately early | Green | Green | Green | Yellow | Yellow | Green | Yellow | | 1 |
| | Lower Skagit late | Green | Yellow | Yellow | Yellow | Red | Green | Yellow | | 1 |
| | Lower Sauk moderately early | Green | Green | Green | Yellow | Red | Yellow | Yellow | | 1 |
| | Upper Sauk early | Red | Green | Green | Green | Green | Green | Yellow | | 1 |
| | Suiattle very early | Red | Green | Green | Yellow | Green | Yellow | Yellow | | 1 |
| | Upper Cascade moderately early | Red | Green | Green | Yellow | Green | Green | Yellow | | 1 |
| | N.F. Stillaguamish early | Green | Green | Yellow | Yellow | Red | Yellow | Green | | 2 |
| | S.F. Stillaguamish moderately early | Red | Red | Red | Red | Red | Red | Green | | 2 |
| | Skykomish late | Red | Green | Green | Yellow | Yellow | Yellow | Green | | 2 |
| | Snoqualmie late | Red | Green | Yellow | Yellow | Red | Red | Green | | 3 |
| **South Sound** | Sammamish | Red | Red | Red | Yellow | Green | Green | Yellow | | 3 |
| | Cedar | Red | Green | Green | Green | Green | Green | Yellow | | 3 |
| | Duwamish-Green | Red | Yellow | Yellow | Yellow | Red | Red | Red | | 2 |
| | White | Red | Green | Green | Green | Green | Green | Yellow | | 1 |
| | Puyallup | Red | Yellow | Yellow | Red | Red | Red | Red | | 3 |
| | Nisqually | Red | Yellow | Yellow | Green | Red | Yellow | Red | Green | 1 |
| **Hood Canal** | Mid-Hood Canal | Red | Red | Red | Yellow | Red | Yellow | Green | | 1 |
| | Skokomish | Red | Red | Red | Yellow | Red | Yellow | Red | Green | 1 |
| **Strait of Juan de Fuca** | Dungeness | Red | Red | Red | Green | Green | Green | Green | | 1 |
| | Elwha | Red | Red | Yellow | Green | Red | Red | Green | | 1 |

[1]Table 13. NMFS considers fisheries to present a low risk to populations where estimated impacts of the proposed fisheries are less than or equal to the RERs,

[2] Tables 3
[3] Table 4
[4] Described in text of Section 2.5.1.2 for each MPG in the ESU: Green=low, yellow=moderate, red=high

NMFS noted a particular need for caution for the populations in the Hood Canal. There are only two populations in the Hood Canal Region so both are essential for recovery of the ESU. Although we concluded that, given the available information, additional risks associated with implementation of the proposed actions in 2018 will not impede the long term persistence of the Skokomish population, progress of the long-term transitional strategies in these areas should be closely watched given the status of the Skokomish population, potential long-term effects on survival and recovery suggested by modeling associated with the exploitation rate objective compared with the RER or RER surrogate, and the pattern of exceeding the exploitation rate objective for the Skokomish River population. Continued adaptive management and implementation of the long term transition strategy in the watershed together with the additional management measures described in the proposed actions will be key to recovery of the populations in those watersheds.

As described in the previous sections, NMFS also considers its trust responsibility to the tribes in evaluating the proposed actions and recognizes the importance of providing tribal fishery opportunity, as long as it does not pose a risk to the species that rises to the level of jeopardy. This approach recognizes that the treaty tribes have a right and priority to conduct their fisheries within the limits of conservation constraints.

We also assessed the effects of the action on Puget Sound Chinook critical habitat in the context of the status of critical habitat, the environmental baseline, and cumulative effects, to evaluate whether the effects of the proposed fishing are likely to reduce the value of designated critical habitat for the conservation of listed Puget Sound Chinook salmon. The PBFs most likely to be affected by the proposed actions are (1) water quality, and forage to support spawning, rearing, individual growth, and maturation; and, (2) the type and amount of structure and rugosity that supports juvenile growth and mobility. Fishermen in general actively avoid contact of gear with the substrate because of the resultant interference with fishing and potential loss of gear so would not disrupt juvenile habitat. Derelict fishing gear can affect habitat in a number of ways including barrier to passage, physical harm to eelgrass beds or other estuarine benthic habitats, or occupying space that would otherwise be available to salmon. These impacts have been reduced through changes in state law and active reporting and retrieval of lost gear. Any impact to water quality from vessels transiting critical habitat areas on their way to the fishing grounds or while fishing would be short term and transitory in nature and minimal compared to the number of other vessels in the area participating in activities un-related to the proposed actions. Also these effects would occur to some degree through implementation of fisheries or activities other than the Puget Sound salmon fisheries. Fisheries under the proposed actions will occur within many areas designated as critical habitat in Puget Sound. However, fishing activities will take place over relatively short time periods in any particular area. As discussed in Section 2.2, Rangewide Status of the Species and Critical Habitat, and Section 2.3, Environmental Baseline, of this opinion, critical habitat features in the action area (i.e., forage, water quality, and rearing and spawning habitat) have been and continue to be affected by forestry; grazing; agriculture; channel/bank modifications; road building/maintenance; urbanization; sand and gravel mining; dams; irrigation impoundments and withdrawals; river, estuary, and ocean traffic; wetland loss; forage fish/species harvest; and climate change. For the reasons described, we would expect the proposed actions to result in minimal additional impacts to these features although we cannot quantify those impacts because of their transitory nature.

### 2.7.2 Puget Sound Steelhead

ESA-listed steelhead are caught in tribal and non-tribal marine and freshwater fisheries in the proposed actions that target other species of salmon and hatchery-origin steelhead.

NMFS determined that the harvest management strategy that eliminated the direct harvest of natural origin steelhead in the 1990's, prior to listing, largely addressed the threat of harvest to the listed DPS (72 Fed. Reg. 26722, May 11, 2007). In the recent status review, NMFS concluded that the status of Puget Sound steelhead has not changed significantly since the time of listing (NMFS 2017a) and reaffirmed the observation that harvest rates on natural-origin steelhead continue to decline and are unlikely to substantially affect the abundance of Puget Sound steelhead (NWFSC 2015). A key consideration in recent biological opinions was therefore whether catches and catch rates had continued to decline since listing which would reinforce the conclusion that the threat of harvest to the DPS continued to be low.

Under the proposed actions, the expected impact on Puget Sound steelhead in marine fisheries from implementation of the proposed fisheries is expected to be below the level noted in the listing determination during the 2018-2019 season based on similarity of catch patterns and fishing regulations. This expectation is substantiated by the pattern of lower catches in recent years described in Section 2.4.1 and summarized in **Table 13** which showed a 45% decline in marine area catches in recent years.

Under the proposed actions, the expected harvest rate in freshwater fisheries is expected to be below that observed at the time of listing. NMFS compared the average harvest rates for a set of four index populations at the time of listing (4.2%) and more recent years (1.5%) and concluded that the average harvest rate had declined by 64% (**Table 11**).

We do not anticipate impacts to steelhead from research test fisheries discussed in this opinion because of the timing, gear and area of the studies relative to the timing and area of steelhead migration in the study areas. However, to be conservative we estimated potential encounters of 14 adults and 2 potential adult mortalities just in case encounters were to occur (Section 2.5.2.2). When the research related impacts are added to those resulting from the proposed fisheries, they do not change the conclusion that take associated with the proposed actions continues to be low and well below the levels reported at the time of listing.

Critical habitat is located in many of the areas where Puget Sound recreational and commercial salmon fisheries occur. However, fishing activities will take place over relatively short time periods and thus have a very limited opportunity to impact critical habitat. The PBFs most likely to be affected by the proposed actions are (1) water quality, and forage to support spawning, rearing, individual growth, and maturation; and, (2) the type and amount of structure and rugosity (NWFSC 2015) that supports juvenile growth and mobility. Fishermen endeavor to keep gear from being in contact or entangled with substrate and habitat features because of the resultant interference with fishing and potential loss of gear. This would result in a negligible effect on the PBFs. Any impact to water quality from vessels transiting critical habitat areas on their way to the fishing grounds or while fishing would be short term and transitory in nature (NMFS 2004c).

The environmental baseline for listed steelhead in Puget Sound and their critical habitat includes the ongoing effects of past and current development activities and hatchery management practices. Development activities continue to contribute to the loss and degradation of steelhead habitat in Puget Sound such as barriers to fish passage, adverse effects on water quality and quantity associated with dams, loss of wetland and riparian habitats, and agricultural and urban development activities. Extensive propagation of out-of-basin stocks (e.g., Chambers Creek and Skamania hatchery stocks) throughout the Puget Sound DPS, and increased predation by marine mammals and birds are also sources of concern. Development activities and the ongoing effects of existing structures are expected to continue to have adverse effects similar to those in the baseline. Hatchery production has been modified to some extent to reduce the impacts to ESA-listed steelhead, but is expected to continue at lower levels with lesser impacts. NMFS expects that both Federal and State steelhead recovery and management efforts will provide new tools, data and technical analyses, refine Puget Sound steelhead population structure and viability, and better define the role of individual populations in the DPS. The recovery plan, which is expected to be completed in 2019, will identify measures necessary to protect and restore degraded habitats, manage hatcheries and fisheries consistent with recovery, and prioritize research on data gaps regarding population parameters. The ongoing activities detailed above are expected to continue to affect steelhead and their critical habitat. However, for the reasons discussed in Sections 2.4.1 (Environmental Baseline) and 2.5.2 (Effects of the Action on Species and Designated Critical Habitat) the overall impacts of the proposed action are expected to be minimal for the Puget Sound steelhead DPS.

### 2.7.3 Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish

Historic fishery removals were a primary reason for depleted listed rockfish populations, yet the impact of current fisheries and associated bycatch is more uncertain. As detailed in Section 2.3, Environmental Baseline, yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio are caught by anglers targeting halibut, bottom fish and by researchers. To assess if take from the salmon fisheries within the range of the listed rockfish DPSs threatens the viability of each species, in combination with other sources of bycatch in the environmental baseline, we review the population-level impact from all fisheries and research combined. In order to conduct this analysis, we must assess take numbers relative to the overall population of the rockfish DPS of each species.

To assess the effect of these mortalities on population viability, we adopted the methodology used by the PFMC for rockfish species. The decline of West Coast groundfish stocks prompted the PFMC to reassess harvest management (Ralston 1998, 2002). The PFMC held a workshop in 2000 to review procedures for incorporating uncertainty, risk, and the precautionary approach in establishing harvest rate policies for groundfish. The workshop participants assessed best available science regarding "risk-neutral" and "precautionary" harvest rates (Scientific and Statistical Committee 2000). The workshop resulted in the identification of risk-neutral harvest rates of 0.75 of natural mortality, and precautionary harvest rates of 0.5 to 0.7 (50 to 70 percent) of natural mortality for rockfish species. These rates are supported by published and unpublished literature (Scientific and Statistical Committee 2000; Walters and Parma 1996), and guide rockfish conservation efforts in British Columbia, Canada (DFO 2010; Yamanaka and Lacko 2001). Fishery mortality of 0.5 (or less) of natural mortality was deemed most precautionary for rockfish species, particularly in data-limited settings, and was considered a rate that would not hinder population viability (Scientific and Statistical Committee 2000; Walters and Parma 1996). Given the similar life histories of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio to coastal rockfish managed by the PFMC, we concluded that this method represented the best available scientific information for assessing the effects of fisheries-related mortality on the viability of the ESA-listed rockfish.

To assess the population-level effects to yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio from the proposed salmon fisheries, and identical to our analysis in section 2.5.3, we calculated the range of total anticipated annual mortalities (**Table 26**).

**Table 26.** Estimated total annual lethal take for the salmon fisheries and percentages of the listed-rockfish.

| Species | Range of Estimated Lethal Take[a] | Abundance Scenario | Range of Percent of DPS Killed |
|---|---|---|---|
| Bocaccio | 1 to 77 | 4,606 | 0.0002 to 1.7 |
| Yelloweye rockfish | 2 to 66 | 143,086 | >0.00001 to 0.05 |

For yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio, mortalities from the proposed salmon fisheries in the range of the DPSs would be well below the precautionary level as described above (0.5 (or less) of natural mortality) and risk-neutral level (0.75 or less) for each of the abundance scenarios.

Annual natural mortality rate for bocaccio is approximately 8 percent (as detailed in Section 2.3.2) (Palsson et al. 2009); thus, the precautionary level of fishing would be 4 percent and risk-neutral would be up to 6 percent. Lethal takes from the proposed salmon fisheries would be well below the precautionary and risk-neutral levels for each of the abundance scenarios.

Annual natural mortality rates for yelloweye rockfish range from 2 to 4.6 percent (as detailed in Section 2.3.2) (Wallace 2007; Yamanaka and Kronlund 1997); thus, the precautionary range of fishing and research mortality would be 1 to 2.4 percent and risk-neutral would be 1.5 to 3.45 percent. Lethal takes from the salmon fisheries in the DPS would be below the precautionary and risk-neutral level for each of the abundance scenarios.

To assess the population-level effects to yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio from activities associated with the research permits within the environmental baseline, fishery take associated with the proposed actions, and fishery take within the environmental baseline, we calculated the total mortalities for all sources (**Table 27**).

**Table 27**. Estimated total takes for the salmon fishery and percentages of the listed-rockfish covered in this Biological Opinion in addition to takes within the environmental baseline.

| Species | Total Take in Baseline (plus salmon fishery high estimate ) | Total Lethal Take in Baseline (plus salmon fishery high estimate) | Abundance Scenario | Percent of DPS Killed (total lethal takes) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bocaccio | 131(+77) | 83[a](+77)= 160 | 4,606 | 3.5 |
| Yelloweye rockfish | 497(+66) | 386[b](+66)= 452 | 143,086 | 0.32 |

[a] This includes the following estimated bocaccio mortalities: 40 from the halibut fishery, 26 during research, and 17 in other fisheries.

[b] This includes the following estimated yelloweye rockfish mortalities: 270 from the halibut fisheries, 51 during research, and 65 in other fisheries.

Lethal takes are most relevant for viability analysis. For yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio, the takes from the salmon fishery, in addition to previously assessed lethal scientific research and fishery bycatch (fishermen targeting bottom fish and halibut) (detailed in Section 2.3, Environmental Baseline), would be within or below the risk-neutral and/or precautionary level for each of the abundance scenarios. The low number of anticipated takes in Hood Canal would also protect this population of yelloweye rockfish. Our analysis of potential bycatch for each species uses precautionary assumptions and thus would likely be lower than estimated. These precautionary assumptions include that, of the previously analyzed research projects, the actual take of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio is well below the permitted take. As an example, since bocaccio were listed in 2010, only 3 fish have been taken in research projects (compared to the permitted take of 58 fish, and 27 mortalities in 2017 alone) within the U.S. portion of the DPS area. An additional precautionary factor is the population estimates that only include the San Juan Island area (Marine Catch Area 7). Recent ROV surveys and genetic research projects have documented yelloweye rockfish in the Central Sound and Hood Canal, while bocaccio have been documented in Central Sound.

In addition to fishery mortality, rockfish are killed by derelict fishing gear (Good et al. 2010), though we are unable to quantify the number of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio killed by pre-existing derelict gear or new gear that would occur as part of commercial fisheries within the proposed actions. Despite these data limitations, it is unlikely that mortality associated with derelict gear would cause mortality levels of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio to exceed the precautionary or risk-adverse levels. This is because: (1) the removal of thousands of nets has restored over 650 acres of the benthic habitat of Puget Sound and likely reduced mortality levels for each species; (2) most new derelict gear would become entangled in habitats less than 100 feet deep (and thus avoid most adults); (3) new derelict gear would degrade a relatively small area (up to 0.8 acres of habitat per year), and thus would be unlikely to result in significant additional mortality to listed-rockfish; and (4) the recent and the ongoing programs to provide outreach to fishermen to prevent net loss.

We also assessed the effects of the action on yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio critical habitat in the context of the status of critical habitat, the environmental baseline, and cumulative effects to evaluate whether the effects of the proposed fishing are likely to reduce the value of proposed critical habitat for the conservation of each species. The main potential effect of the proposed fishing on listed rockfish critical habitat would be derelict fishing nets. As discussed in Section 2.2, Rangewide Status of the Species and Critical Habitat and Section 2.3, Environmental Baseline, of this opinion, critical habitat features in the action area (i.e., prey resources, water quality, and complex bottom habitats) may be affected by non-point source and point source discharges, hypoxia, oil spills, dredging projects and dredged material disposal activities, nearshore construction projects, renewable ocean energy installations, and climate change. We would expect the proposed fishing to result in minimal additional impacts by the loss of some gill nets to a subset of these features. Thus, the proposed fishing is not likely to reduce the value of critical habitat for the conservation of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio of the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin DPSs.

In summary, the listed DPSs are at risk with regard to the each of the four VSP criteria, and habitats utilized by listed-rockfish are impacted by nearshore development, derelict fishing gear, contaminants within the food-web and regions of poor water quality, among other stressors. Benefits to habitat within the DPSs have come through the removal of thousands of derelict fishing nets, though nets deeper than 100 feet remain a threat. Degraded habitat and its consequences to ESA-listed rockfish can only be described qualitatively because the precise spatial and temporal impacts to populations of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio are poorly understood. However, there is sufficient evidence to indicate that listed-rockfish productivity may be reduced because of alterations to habitat structure and function.

Because most adult yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio occupy waters much deeper than surface waters fished by commercial nets, the bycatch of adults in commercial salmon fisheries is likely extremely low to non-existent. However, new derelict gear is a source of potential incidental mortality. The recreational bycatch levels from the 2018/19 salmon fishery season are expected to be quite low, within the risk-neutral or precautionary mortality rates identified for overfished rockfish of the Pacific Coast. Concerns remain about fishery-mortality effects to spatial structure, connectivity and diversity for each species. These concerns are partially alleviated because of the low bycatch rates for each species, and considering that the abundance of each species is likely higher than assessed within our analysis. The structure of our analysis provides conservative population scenarios for the total population of each DPS, and likely overestimates the total mortalities of caught and released fish. Thus taken together, the effects of the proposed actions on ESA-listed rockfish in Puget Sound, in combination with anticipated bycatch from other fisheries and research, their current status, the condition of the environmental baseline, and cumulative effects are not likely to reduce appreciably the likelihood of survival and recovery of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio.

### 2.7.4 Southern Resident Killer Whales and Critical Habitat

This section discusses the effects of the action in the context of the status of the species and designated critical habitat, the environmental baseline, and cumulative effects, and offers our opinion as to whether the effects of the proposed action are likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the Southern Residents or adversely modify or destroy Southern Residents' designated critical habitat.

Critical habitat includes approximately 2,560 square miles of inland waters of Washington in three specific areas: 1) the Summer Core Area in Haro Strait and waters around the San Juan Islands; 2) Puget Sound; and 3) the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Based on the natural history of the Southern Residents and their habitat needs, we identified three physical or biological features essential to conservation in designating critical habitat: (1) Water quality to support growth of the whale population and development of individual whales, (2) Prey species of sufficient quantity, quality and availability to support individual growth, reproduction and development, as well as overall population growth, and (3) Passage conditions to allow for migration, resting and foraging. Revisions to critical habitat to include coastal areas are currently in development. This action has the potential to affect prey quantity and availability and passage, which are also impacted by a variety of other threats to Chinook salmon and from vessel activity.

Following the independent science panel approach on the effects of salmon fisheries on Southern Resident killer whales (Hilborn et al 2012), NMFS and partners have actively engaged in research and analyses to fill gaps and reduce uncertainties raised by the panel in their report. While in the past we have used correlations to estimate the effects of an action on population growth (NMFS 2011), the data and analyses do not currently support a quantitative process for killer whales that directly links effects of an action, such as a reduction in prey, to survival and recovery (i.e., mortality and reproduction). In the absence of a comprehensive quantitative tool to evaluate proposed actions, we use a weight of evidence approach to consider all of the information we have- identifying a variety of metrics or indicators (some quantitative and some qualitative) with varying degrees of confidence (or weight)- in order to formulate our biological opinions. We assess risk by evaluating uncertainty for lines of evidence to determine if our estimates underestimate or overestimate the status or effect.

The Southern Resident killer whale DPS is composed of one small population that is currently at most half of its likely previous size (140 to an unknown upper bound). We have high confidence in the annual census and population trends. The overall population increased slightly from 2002 to 2010 (from 83 whales to 86 whales). Since then, the population has decreased to only 76 whales, a historical low in the last 30 years. Based on an updated pedigree from new genetic data, most of the offspring in recent years were sired by two fathers, meaning that less than 30 individuals make up the effective reproducing portion of the population. Some offspring were the result of matings within the same pod raising questions and concerns about inbreeding effects. The NWFSC continues to evaluate changes in fecundity and mortality rates, and has updated their population viability analyses. The data now suggest a downward trend in population growth projected over the next 50 years and the uncertainty in the projections increases the further out the analysis projects. This downward trend is in part due to the changing age and sex structure of the population, but also related to the relatively low fecundity rate observed over the period from 2011 to 2016 (**Figure 12**). With such a small population, even small changes in this rate and other parameters can affect the projections. Recent evidence has indicated the whales have experienced several miscarriages, particularly in late pregnancy; this reduced fecundity was suggested to be largely due to nutritional limitation but we are not able to quantify effects to reproduction from changes in Chinook salmon abundance.

Several factors identified in the final recovery plan for Southern Residents may be limiting recovery. These are quantity and quality of prey, toxic chemicals that accumulate in top predators, and disturbance from sound and vessels. Oil spills are also a risk factor. It is likely that multiple threats are acting together. For example, disturbance from vessels makes it harder for the whales to locate and capture prey, which can cause them to expend more energy and catch less food. New comparisons of the contribution of different threats (Lacy 2017), support an approach to address all of the threats. Vessel disturbance and prey reduction are the primary pathways for impacts from this action. Under the existing management and recovery regimes over the last decade, salmon abundance and vessel disturbance reduction has not been sufficient to support Southern Resident population growth.

During the spring, summer, and fall months, the whales spend a substantial amount of time in the action area, with strong site fidelity shown to the region as a whole and high occurrence in the San Juan Island area. We have high confidence in the data on distribution, particularly in inland waters in summer months and have updated the information in our analysis regarding where the whales spend their time and co-occurrence with fisheries. Over a decade of scale, tissue and more recent fecal sampling give us high confidence that the whales' diet consists of a high percentage of Chinook salmon, especially in the summer months in the action area. Since 2008, aerial photogrammetry studies have been used to assess the body condition and health of Southern Resident killer whales. More recent annual aerial surveys of the population have provided evidence of a general decline in Southern Resident killer whale body condition since 2008, and documented members of J pod being in poorer body condition in May compared to September. Although body condition in whales can be influenced by a number of factors, including disease, physiological or life history status, prey limitation is the most likely cause of observed changes in body condition in wild mammalian populations. The methods for detecting changes in body condition have been well established and we will continue to refine our understanding of annual and seasonal changes as indicators of the nutritional status and overall health of individual whales and the status of the population.

As described in the Effects Section, we focused our analysis on Chinook salmon and impacts in inland waters in summer months where the fisheries overlap with foraging areas. The proposed actions will result in an increase in vessel activity across the whales' range in inland waters (including their critical habitat), and likely some level of exposure of individual whales to the physical presence and sound generated by vessels associated with the proposed fisheries, particularly where Marine Area 7 overlaps with the highest number of sightings and foraging observations along the west side of San Juan Island. Some of the exposures to fishing vessels are likely to result in less efficient foraging by the whales than their foraging efforts would be in the absence of vessel effects. In addition to the amount of disturbance caused by fishing vessels from the proposed action, vessel disturbance is also part of the environmental baseline, which includes the near-constant presence of the whale watching fleet and other recreational vessels in inland waters in summer months. We expect the total impact of all vessel disturbances from the environmental baseline, proposed action, and cumulative effects is likely to continue to affect the whales' energetic needs and impair foraging efficiency, particularly during the height of the summer season in the core summer feeding area, which is specifically designated as critical habitat,. Based on monitoring data, we conclude that fishing vessels contribute to the total effects of direct disturbance (including effects on passage conditions) from vessels although it is difficult to assess cumulative impacts and population level consequences of vessel disturbance. The combined impact on the whales when vessel disturbance and prey reduction occur simultaneously in the whale's primary foraging areas is a cause for concern. While some trends in vessel activities that could disturb the whales have declined in recent years (Ferrara et al. 2017) vessels continue to operate out of compliance with guidelines and regulations. There are a number of mitigation efforts in place to reduce vessel disturbance from all vessel sources, including the state and federal regulations, education efforts on and off the water to increase awareness and compliance, and new or expanded voluntary areas with limited or no vessel traffic adopted by San Juan County and the whale watch industry. Increased enforcement presence in 2018 is expected to improve compliance by vessel operators and reduce overall vessel impacts that may impact foraging or passage.

We compared the direct impacts from fishing vessels to previous years and impacts are expected to be lower in 2018 based on the reduced presence of fishing vessels in the key foraging areas. This reduction in fishing vessel impacts is expected because of non-retention of Chinook salmon in September in Marine Area 7 (including Southern Resident killer whale foraging hotspots along the west side of San Juan Island). In addition, WDFW will work with the Governor's Office, State Parks and Recreation Commission, and the Department of Natural Resources to discuss and consider utilizing their respective authorities to strengthen the efficacy of the voluntary program and outreach efforts. Additional conservation efforts by WDFW include education to fishing vessels to maintain slow transit speeds (restricted to 7 knots or less) at a minimum and potentially reduce transit speeds in areas frequently utilized by Southern Residents in the summer season (specifically off the west coast of San Juan Island) and to silence vessel sonar in the presence of Southern Residents and when fishing gear is deployed (especially those transmitting at 83 kHz). Ongoing monitoring of vessel activities near the whales will allow for tracking reductions in fishing vessel activity when whales are in key foraging areas.

Several studies have found correlations between Chinook salmon indices and Southern Resident killer whale demographic rates (e.g. high Chinook abundance coupled with high Southern Resident killer whale growth rates). However, there are several challenges to this relationship and uncertainty remains because of demographic stochasticity. The small population size makes correlating births and deaths with salmon abundance challenging and the whales are long-lived making it more challenging to predict interactions with the environment. There are other primary threats that can also influence demographic rates, uncertainties in the annual Chinook salmon abundance estimates, and no clear quantitative metric for assessing prey accessibility (i.e., abundance and availability) to the whales. A recent population viability assessment found that over the range of scenarios tested, the effects of prey abundance on fecundity and survival had the largest impact on the population growth rate (Lacy et al. 2017). Based on the biological information described in the Effects Section, our effects analysis focused on the likely reduction in Chinook prey available to the whales as a result of the proposed fishing. To put that reduction in context, we evaluated a range of metrics and information, including the ratio of Chinook prey available to the whales' Chinook needs and compared the 2018 proposed fisheries and Chinook abundance to recent years when the whale population has declined.

The pre-season estimates for abundance of age 3-5 Chinook in inland waters will be approximately 1.78 million, which is likely a conservative estimate and one of the highest in the last decade. The proposed fishing is expected to reduce the abundance of prey in inland waters during the months of July through September by 2.5% (or approximately 44,500 Chinook). This 2.5% reduction in food energy in the inland waters applies to a broad area with varying overlap with the whales. Therefore, it is difficult to assess potential for localized depletions because the prey reduction during July through September throughout the action area or in inland waters may not accurately predict reductions in prey available in known foraging hotspots. To put these catch numbers into biological context, 44,500 adult Chinook roughly translates to feeding all individuals in the population for approximately 49 days. We have medium level confidence in the metabolic needs estimates for the whales since they have not yet been validated by prey consumption rates and use the maximum estimates which may be an overestimate. The reduction in prey is calculated using a robust model and we anticipate this is likely an overestimate of the number of feeding days because it is extremely unlikely that the whales would have consumed all fish caught in the fishery. It is difficult to assess how reductions in prey abundance may vary throughout inland waters and have less confidence in our understanding of how reductions could result in localized depletions. Seasonal prey reduction throughout the action area may not accurately predict reductions in prey available in known foraging hotspots.

We estimated the Chinook food energy available to the whales and compared available kilocalories to needs and evaluated the ratio after reductions from the proposed fishing. We have low confidence in the ratios, but consider them as an indicator to help focus our analysis on the time and location where prey availability may be lowest and where the action may have the most significant effect on the whales. We have also used updated information to refine the bioenergetics including metabolic needs of the whales and caloric content of different runs of Chinook salmon. The baseline ratios ranged between 8.53 and 16.72 times the whales' estimated needs during July through September in inland waters, and with the proposed fishing the ratios would reduce the available prey and lower the ratio of available prey compared to the whales needs to between 8.00 and 16.20. Because we consider the ratio of Chinook prey available to meet the whales' needs to be relatively low for inland waters July through September, any additional measurable reduction is a concern. However, we anticipate that the ratios for 2018 would be at the higher end of the range because of the higher pre-season abundances (last year's pre-season abundance was 1.67 million) and additional restrictions to the fisheries.

We have evaluated the best available information on the status of the species, the environmental baseline, the effects of the action and cumulative effects status of the whales. The status of the whales is compromised and multiple factors and threats are limiting their population growth. The effects of the action add a measurable but small adverse effect in addition to the existing conditions. The most significant impacts of the action will occur where the fishery overlaps with key foraging areas for the whales and prey abundance is generally lower. While the fishing proposed in 2018 will add some vessel disturbance and reduce available prey for the one year fishing period, there is a high projection of Chinook salmon abundance in inland waters during July through September for 2018. The increase compared to 2017 is a meaningful improvement in prey abundance equivalent to over 100 days of Chinook prey for the population, and more than double the reduction estimated from Chinook salmon removals in the fishery. In addition, a number of conservation measures identified by WDFW as part of the action are expected to reduce the severity of the prey reduction and reduce the effects from fishing vessels, including in key foraging areas. It will be important to monitor and evaluate the effectiveness of protective measures, particularly voluntary measures, to ensure they are effective in reducing impacts to the whales. Changes in the fishery and efforts to reduce fishing in the primary foraging area along the west side of San Juan Island will reduce the potential for prey reductions to result in significant localized depletions or prey depletions at levels that would cause injury or impair reproduction. Although any reduction in prey or interference with foraging is a concern for the Southern Residents because of their status, with higher prey abundance, lower fishing effort and new protective measures in 2018 conditions are anticipated to be improved for the whales compared to the last several years. In addition, the action will also not jeopardize the listed salmon that the whales depend on over the long term.

Critical habitat includes water quality, prey and passage as features that are essential to the conservation of Southern Residents. We do not expect the proposed fisheries to impact water quality. As described above the abundance of prey is projected to be high in 2018 and the reduction in quantity and availability of prey from fishery removals and disturbance from fishing vessels is expected to be small and mitigated by several conservation efforts and therefore, is not expected to appreciably diminish the value of critical habitat. While vessels could result in the whales moving to areas with higher levels of prey or less disturbance, a number of activities to decrease effects from all vessels are ongoing and the action includes specific outreach to fishing vessels to reduce their impacts and vessel presence and sound is not expected to block passage of the whales.

## 2.8 Conclusion

### 2.8.1 Puget Sound Chinook

After reviewing the current status of the listed species and critical habitat, the environmental baseline within the action area, the effects of the proposed actions, any effects of interrelated and interdependent activities, and cumulative effects, it is NMFS' biological opinion that the proposed actions are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the Puget Sound Chinook salmon ESU or adversely modify its designated critical habitat.

### 2.8.2 Puget Sound Steelhead

After reviewing the current status of the listed species, the environmental baseline within the action area, the effects of the proposed actions, any effects of interrelated and interdependent actions, and cumulative effects, it is NMFS' biological opinion that the proposed actions are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS or adversely modify proposed designated critical habitat for the Puget Sound Steelhead DPS.

### 2.8.3 Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish

After reviewing the current status of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio within the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin DPSs, the environmental baseline for the action area, the effects of the proposed actions, and the cumulative effects, NMFS concludes that the proposed actions are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of each species of listed-rockfish or adversely modify designated critical habitat for each species.

### 2.8.4 Southern Resident Killer Whales

After reviewing the current status of the listed species and critical habitat, the environmental baseline within the action area, the effects of the proposed actions, any effects of interrelated and interdependent activities, and cumulative effects, it is NMFS' biological opinion that the proposed actions are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of Southern Resident killer whales or adversely modify its designated critical habitat.

## 2.9 Incidental Take Statement

Section 9 of the ESA and Federal regulations pursuant to section 4(d) of the ESA prohibit the take of endangered and threatened species, respectively, without a special exemption. "Take" is defined as to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct. "Harm" is further defined by regulation to include significant habitat modification or degradation that actually kills or injures fish or wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, spawning, rearing, migrating, feeding, or sheltering (50 CFR 222.102). "Incidental take" is defined by regulation as takings that result from, but are not the purpose of, carrying out an otherwise lawful activity conducted by the Federal agency or applicant (50 CFR 402.02). Section 7(b)(4) and section 7(o)(2) provide that taking that is incidental to an otherwise lawful agency action is not considered to be prohibited taking under the ESA if that action is performed in compliance with the terms and conditions of this ITS.

This incidental take statement specifies the impact of any incidental taking of endangered or threatened species. It also provides reasonable and prudent measures that are necessary or appropriate to minimize impacts and sets forth terms and conditions in order to implement the reasonable and prudent measures.

### 2.9.1 Amount or Extent of Take

In the biological opinion, NMFS determined that incidental take would occur as follows:

#### 2.9.1.1 Puget Sound Chinook

NMFS anticipates incidental take of listed Puget Sound Chinook to occur in the proposed Puget Sound salmon and steelhead fisheries from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019 through contact with fishing gear. NMFS anticipates Puget Sound salmon fisheries occurring in 2018 will be limited to exploitation rates which, when combined with the exploitation rates in ocean and Puget Sound fisheries that are not part of the fisheries of the proposed action, will not exceed the exploitation rates summarized in **Table 19** in the column titled Ocean + Puget Sound. These exploitation rates account for landed and non-landed mortality of listed Puget Sound Chinook encountered in the fisheries included in these categories. Test, research, update and evaluation fisheries that inform fishery management decisions are included as part of the fishery-related mortality summarized in **Table 19**. Exploitation rates are used to define the extent of take for several reasons: (1) they are a direct measure of the take of the listed species that incorporates both the landed and release mortality resulting from implementation of the proposed actions; (2) they are a key parameters used to analyze the effects of the proposed actions; (3) fisheries are designed and managed based on exploitation rates rather than the mortality of individual fish; (4) they can be monitored and assessed; and, (5) they are responsive to changes in abundance over time and therefore a better measure of the effect on the listed species than just enumeration of individual fish.

For the relatively small fishery related research studies whose impacts are not included in the exploitation rates described above, the proponents enumerate the number of fish killed (PSC chum test fishery, Lake Washington predator removal and assessment). NMFS anticipates that no more than 43 adult and 60 immature Chinook incidental mortalities will occur in the research studies discussed in this opinion from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019.

#### 2.9.1.2 Puget Sound Steelhead

NMFS anticipates incidental take to occur in Puget Sound marine and freshwater commercial, recreational and ceremonial and subsistence, from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019 through contact with fishing gear.

NMFS anticipates that a maximum of 325 steelhead will be caught in marine area fisheries with an expected catch of 178 based on observations from recent years (**Table 11**). These estimates include an unknown proportion of ESA listed steelhead, unlisted hatchery steelhead, and hatchery and natural-origin fish from Canada.

NMFS also anticipates that the harvest rate on natural-origin steelhead in freshwater treaty and non-treaty fisheries will be no more than 4.2%, with an expected harvest rate of 1.5% or lower based on observations from more recent years (**Table 13,** James 2018c, WDFW and PSIT 2018, Shaw 2018). This was calculated as an average across the four Puget Sound steelhead populations for which sufficient data are available, and which do not have existing ESA coverage (i.e., Snohomish, Green, Puyallup and Nisqually). That is, the specified harvest rates represent an average across the five winter steelhead populations; it is not an anticipated population specific freshwater harvest rate. Harvest rates are used to define the extent of take for several reasons: (1) they are a direct measure of the take of the listed species that incorporates both the landed and release mortality resulting from implementation of the proposed actions; (2) they are a key parameter used to analyze the effects of the proposed actions; (3) fisheries are generally designed and managed based on harvest rates rather than the mortality of individual fish; (4) they can be monitored and assessed; and, (5) they are responsive to changes in abundance over time and therefore a better measure of the effect on the listed species than just enumeration of individual fish.

NMFS does not have similar estimates of freshwater harvest for other Puget Sound steelhead populations. However, NMFS anticipates that the harvest rates for other populations will be within the range for the five populations discussed above based on the similarity of catch patterns and fishing regulations.

NMFS anticipates that no more than 14 and 2 juvenile steelhead incidental encounters will occur in the research test fisheries discussed in this opinion from May 1, 2018 through April 30, 2019.

#### 2.9.1.3 Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish

NMFS anticipates that incidental take of ESA listed rockfish would occur by two separate pathways: (1) bycatch of listed-rockfish by anglers targeting salmon, and (2) the indirect effects of lost (derelict) nets. NMFS anticipates that up to 66 yelloweye rockfish, and 77 bocaccio would be killed as bycatch by commercial anglers during the 2017/2018 Puget Sound salmon fishing season that is the subject of this opinion. NMFS anticipates that some minimal take of ESA-listed rockfish would occur as a result of the indirect effects of lost nets in the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin. NMFS estimates that up to 20 gill nets from salmon fisheries may become lost, and of those up to five nets would not be retrieved. If those five nets are lost within rockfish habitat, they would degrade benthic areas potentially used by ESA-listed rockfish. Estimating the specific number of ESA-listed rockfish that may be killed from a new derelict net is difficult to quantify because of several factors, including the location of its loss, the habitat which it eventually catches on, and the occurrence of fish within or near that habitat. The fishery managers for fisheries that are subject of this opinion also track derelict nets through their reporting system and partnership with the Northwest Straits Initiative.

#### 2.9.1.4 Southern Resident Killer Whales

The harvest of Chinook salmon that would occur under the proposed action could result in some level of harm to Southern Resident killer whales by reducing prey availability and increasing disturbance from vessels and noise, which may cause animals to forage for longer periods, travel to alternate locations, or abandon foraging efforts. All individuals of the Southern Resident killer whale DPS have the potential to be adversely affected in the action area (inland waters of their range). NMFS cannot quantify the number of takes for each individual killer whale in the population from the effects of the proposed action. Therefore, we quantify the extent of take based on the extent of effects on prey availability (which includes reductions in prey and incorporates fishing effort and can be measured). The extent of take from these adverse impacts are not anticipated to increase the risk of mortality for whales currently in the population (i.e., and therefore will not rise to the level of serious injury or mortality). The extent of take estimated for killer whales for a reduction in Chinook prey and impacts from vessels and noise would be highest in inland waters from July through September and represents a 2.5% reduction in the abundance of large (age 3-5) Chinook in the action area as estimated by FRAM. This 2.5% reduction in prey availability is what we expect to occur as a result of the proposed fisheries at the exploitation rates within the levels described in the Amount or Extent of Take for Puget Sound Chinook. Because those exploitation rates are actually used to manage the fisheries, are the best measure of fishing effort including prey reduction and vessel activity, and are monitored, we believe they are the best surrogate for take of Southern Resident killer whales. Therefore, the extent of take for killer whales will be exceeded if the amount of take for Puget Sound Chinook is exceeded.

### 2.9.2 Effect of the Take

In the biological opinion, NMFS determined that the amount or extent of anticipated take, coupled with other effects of the proposed actions, is not likely to result in jeopardy to the species or destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat.

#### 2.9.2.1 Reasonable and Prudent Measures

"Reasonable and prudent measures" are nondiscretionary measures that are necessary or appropriate to minimize the impact of the amount or extent of incidental take (50 CFR 402.02).

The following reasonable and prudent measures are included in this incidental take statement for the Puget Sound Chinook salmon ESU and Puget Sound steelhead DPS considered in this opinion:

(1) In-season management actions taken during the course of the fisheries shall be consistent with the level of incidental take established preseason that were analyzed in the biological opinion (see Section 2.5.1.2 and 2.5.2.2) and defined in Section 2.9.1.1 and 2.9.1.2.

(2) The co-managers in collaboration with NMFS will finalize the Nisqually Chinook Stock Management Plan, the long-term strategy and adaptive management plan for Nisqually Chinook, to capture the outcome of discussions held on February 7, 2018.

(3) Catch and the implementation of management measures used to control fisheries shall be monitored using best available measures

(4) The fisheries shall be sampled for stock composition and other biological information.

(5) Post season reports shall be provided describing the take of listed salmon and steelhead in the proposed fisheries and related research studies. Managers shall use results to improve management of Puget Sound Chinook and steelhead to ensure management objectives are met.

(6) Escapement monitoring for the salmon and steelhead populations that are affected by the proposed action shall be improved using available resources.

The following reasonable and prudent measures are included in this incidental take statement for Southern Resident killer whales:

(7) NMFS, in consultation with the co-managers, will estimate the observed abundance of Chinook, as defined under Amount or Extent of Take, using postseason information as it becomes available.
(8) Harvest impacts shall be monitored using the best available measures. Although NMFS is the federal agency responsible for carrying out this reasonable and prudent measure, in practical terms, it is the co-managers that monitor catch impacts.
(9) All conservation measures that are part of the proposed actions shall be implemented by NMFS in the period specified. NMFS will consult with the co-managers and the Canadian government to implement these measures, as necessary.

NMFS also concludes that the following reasonable and prudent measures are necessary to minimize the impacts to ESA listed Puget Sound/Georgia Basin rockfish

(10) Derelict gear impacts on listed rockfish shall be reported using best available measures.
(11) Bycatch of ESA-listed rockfish shall be estimated using best available measures.

#### 2.9.2.2 Terms and Conditions

The terms and conditions described below are non-discretionary, and NMFS, BIA, USFWS or any applicant must comply with them in order to implement the reasonable and prudent measures (50 CFR 402.14) described above. The NMFS, BIA, and USFWS or any applicant has a continuing duty to monitor the impacts of incidental take and must report the progress of the action and its impact on the species as specified in ITS (50 CFR 402.14). If the entity to whom a term and condition is directed does not comply with the following terms and conditions, the protective coverage for the proposed actions would likely lapse.

The BIA, USFWS and NMFS, to the extent of their authorities, shall:

1a. Work with the Puget Sound treaty tribes and WDFW to ensure that in-season management actions taken during the course of the fisheries are consistent with the levels of anticipated take.
1b. Work with the Puget Sound treaty tribes and WDFW to complete 2018-2019 preseason annual steelhead fishing plans for all populations (where data are available) prior to implementation of the steelhead fishing season, but no later than December 15, 2018. Preseason fishing plans will include the annual fishing and research test fishing regimes and incidental harvest rates of steelhead in salmon and steelhead fisheries in compliance with the take estimates described in Section 2.9.1.2.
1c. In cooperation with the Puget Sound treaty tribes and WDFW as appropriate, ensure that commercial fishers report the loss of any net fishing gear within 24 hours of its loss

to appropriate authorities.[33]

1d. The affected treaty tribes and WDFW, when conducting harvest research studies involving electrofishing, will follow NMFS' *Guidelines for Electrofishing Waters Containing Salmonids Listed Under the Endangered Species Act* (NMFS 2000c).

1e. The co-managers and NMFS will meet by phone to discuss the initial results of the Green River inseason update. NMFS will be informed of any subsequent management actions taken by the state and tribal co-managers that deviate from the pre-season fishery structure in the 2018 List of Agreed to Fisheries.

1f. For the Green River population, the co-managers will take a combination of fishery and broodstock actions as described in the proposed action to achieve the spawning escapement goal of 1,200 natural-origin Chinook and seek additional opportunities to increase natural-origin Chinook on the spawning ground, e.g., further outplanting of natural-origin returns to the hatchery surplus to broodstock needs.

2. The Nisqually Chinook Stock Management Plan shall be finalized by July 1, 2018.

3. Work with the Puget Sound treaty tribes and WDFW to ensure that the catch and implementation of management measures associated with fisheries that are the subject of this opinion are monitored at levels that are comparable to those used in recent years. The effectiveness of the management measures should be assessed in the postseason report.

4. Work with the Puget Sound treaty tribes and WDFW to ensure that the fisheries that are the subject of this opinion are sampled for stock composition, including the collection of coded-wire tags and other biological information (age, sex, size) to allow for a thorough post-season analysis of fishery impacts on listed species and to improve preseason forecasts of abundance. This includes:

   i. ensuring that the fisheries included in this opinion are sampled for contribution of hatchery and natural-origin fish and the collection of biological information (age, sex, and size) to allow for a thorough post-season analysis of fishery impacts on listed Chinook and steelhead species.

   ii. collecting and analyzing tissues for DNA from summer-run steelhead encountered in 2018-2019 fisheries that are subject of this opinion where feasible.

   iii. evaluating the potential selective effects of fishing on the size, sex composition, or age composition of listed Chinook and steelhead populations as data become available.

   iv. using the information, as appropriate, together with estimates of total and natural-origin Chinook and wild steelhead encounters and mortalities (summer and winter-run) to report fishery impacts by population.

5a. Work with the affected tribes and WDFW to provide post season reports for the 2018-2019 fishery that include estimates of catch and encounters of listed Chinook in the

[33] 1-855-542-3935 (WA Dept of Fish and Wildlife) or 360-733-1725 (Northwest Straits), http://www.derelictgeardb.org/reportgear.aspx, or a tribal fishery manager.

fisheries that are the subject of this opinion, fishery impacts by population, and other relevant information described in Section 7.5 in the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan (PSIT and WDFW 2010a). This includes catch and encounters in the research fisheries discussion in Section 2.5.2.2. The reports will also include escapement estimates for the populations affected by this proposed actions and the results of the work described in reasonable and prudent measure 3.

5b. Work with the affected treaty tribes and WDFW, to provide postseason reports for the 2018-19 fishery season summarizing effects? on all steelhead DIPs affected by the proposed fisheries as identified in this opinion, where data are available, no later than November 20, 2018 prior to the following winter steelhead season. The postseason report will include:

   i. identification of compliance with the fishery regimes (including test fisheries) and incidental harvest rate of steelhead mortalities in the tribal salmon and steelhead fisheries described in this opinion;

   ii. a description of the method used to estimate postseason harvest and a description of any changes to the estimation methodologies used for assessing escapement and/or harvest rates.

6a. Work with the affected tribes and WDFW to implement or improve escapement monitoring for all Puget Sound Chinook and steelhead populations that are affected by the proposed actions to improve escapement estimation and to determine and/or augment exploitation rate and harvest rate estimates on natural-origin Chinook and steelhead stocks.

6b. For steelhead, coordinate the effort to implement or improve escapement monitoring with NMFS' Viable Salmonid Parameters (VSP) ongoing monitoring inventory endeavor of ESA-listed Puget Sound steelhead. In an effort towards this goal, watershed priorities and monitoring will be identified during the Puget Sound steelhead recovery planning process to secure funding for improvement of steelhead escapement and harvest methodologies.

7. NMFS shall confer with the affected co-managers to account for the catch of the fisheries based on postseason reporting and assessment (as described in Section 7 of the 2010 RMP) as the information becomes available. The information will be used to assess consistency with the extent of take specified in the Incidental Take Statement.

8a. The co-managers shall monitor catch using measures and procedures that provide reliable accounting of the catch of Chinook.

8b. NMFS, in cooperation with the affected co-managers, shall monitor the catch and implementation of other management measures at levels that are comparable to those used in recent years. The monitoring is to ensure full implementation of, and compliance with, management actions specified to control the fisheries within the scope of the action.

8c. NMFS, in cooperation with the affected co-managers, shall ensure that any commercial vessel owner or operator participating in the fishery complies with 50 CFR 229.6 and reports all incidental injuries or mortalities of marine mammals that occur during commercial fishing operations to NMFS (or in the case of tribes, voluntary reports). "Injury" is defined in 50 CFR 229.2 as a wound or other physical harm. In addition, any animal that ingests fishing gear, or any animal that is released with fishing gear entangling, trailing, or perforating any part of the body is considered injured and must be reported.

9. NMFS will engage in ongoing coordination and communication with Canada's Department of Fish and Oceans with the goal of ensuring that complementary actions are taken in Canadian fisheries that affect the abundance of Chinook prey available to Southern Resident killer whales

10. NMFS, in cooperation with BIA, the USFWS, WDFW and the Puget Sound tribes, shall minimize take and monitor the number of derelict fishing nets that occur on an annual basis by:

a. Derelict Gear Reporting. Requiring all derelict gear to be reported to appropriate authorities within 24 hours of its loss.

b. Derelict Gear Accounting and Location. Recording the total number and approximate locations of nets lost (and subsequently recovered) on an annual basis.

c. Derelict Gear Prevention. The BIA, USFWS and NMFS in collaboration with the state and tribes, shall continue to conduct outreach and evaluate technologies and practices to prevent the loss of commercial fishing nets, and systems to track nets upon their loss, to better aid their retrieval and other measure necessary to prevent and track lost gear.

11. NMFS in cooperation with BIA, the USFWS, WDFW and the Puget Sound Treaty tribes, shall minimize take and monitor the number of yelloweye rockfish and bocaccio incidentally caught by fishermen targeting salmon, on an annual basis by:

a. Monitoring fisheries through fishermen interviews, fish tickets, and phone surveys, as applicable, at levels comparable to recent years.

## 2.10 Conservation Recommendations

Section 7(a)(1) of the ESA directs Federal agencies to use their authorities to further the purposes of the ESA by carrying out conservation programs for the benefit of the threatened and endangered species. Specifically, conservation recommendations are suggestions regarding discretionary measures to minimize or avoid adverse effects of a proposed actions on listed species or critical habitat or regarding the development of information (50 CFR 402.02). NMFS believes the following conservation recommendations are consistent with these obligations, and therefore should be implemented by the BIA, USFWS and NMFS in cooperation with the Puget Sound treaty tribes.

(1) As discussed in Section 2.5.1.2, preseason abundance expectations still present challenges for terminal area management for the Puyallup and Skokomish populations in maximizing harvest and achieving management objectives. Improvements in inseason management tools including inseason abundance updates would be useful in addressing

these issues and have value for fisheries beyond those in the terminal area. The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS in collaboration WDFW and the affected Puget Sound treaty tribes should explore and identify methods to update abundance inseason that would be useful for managing fisheries for these populations, particularly in terminal areas, to better achieve management objectives.

(2) The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS in collaboration with WDFW and the Puget Sound treaty tribes should continue to evaluate improvement in gear technologies and fishing techniques in treaty tribal and U.S. Fraser Panel fisheries to reduce impacts on listed species without compromising data quality used to manage fisheries.

(3) The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS in collaboration with WDFW and the Puget Sound treaty tribes, should continue to evaluate the potential selective effects of treaty tribal and U.S. Fraser Panel fishing on the size, sex composition, or age composition of salmon populations.

(4) The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS in collaboration with the WDFW and the Puget Sound treaty Tribes, should continue to collect data on steelhead populations where insufficient data exist and improve upon catch accounting for all steelhead populations as resources become available.

(5) The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS in collaboration with the WDFW, and the Puget Sound treaty tribes, should implement the recommendations for the prevention, retrieval and investigation of gear modifications of gill nets used in Puget Sound treaty tribal and U.S. Fraser Panel salmon fisheries reported in Gibson (2013).

(6) The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS in collaboration with the WDFW, and the Puget Sound treaty tribes should explore inclusion of environmental variables into preseason forecasts and use of inseason management to improve their performance and utility in management.

(7) The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS in collaboration with the WDFW, and the Puget Sound treaty tribes should work to require the use of descending devices to release incidentally encountered rockfish in salmon fisheries with barotrauma.

(8) The BIA, USFWS, and NMFS, in collaboration with the affected states and tribes, should consider a longer term fishery management plan in the future that includes protective measures that take into account the status of the whales, their condition, and fluctuations in salmon abundance using an adaptive approach.

## 2.11 Reinitiation of Consultation

This concludes formal consultation for the impacts of programs administered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs that support Puget Sound tribal salmon fisheries, salmon fishing activities authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and fisheries authorized by the U.S. Fraser Panel in 2016.

As 50 CFR 402.16 states, reinitiation of formal consultation is required where discretionary Federal agency involvement or control over the action has been retained or is authorized by law and if: (1) the amount or extent of incidental taking specified in the incidental take statement is exceeded, (2) new information reveals effects of the agency action that may affect listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not considered in this opinion, (3) the agency action is subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to the listed species or critical habitat that was not considered in this opinion, or (4) a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the action.

### 2.12 "Not Likely to Adversely Affect" Determinations

NMFS does not anticipate the proposed actions will take southern green sturgeon or southern eulachon which occur in the action area or adversely affect their critical habitat.

***Green Sturgeon***

Individuals of the southern DPS of green sturgeon are unlikely to be caught in Puget Sound salmon fisheries. Most marine area fisheries use hook-and-line gear to target pelagic feeding salmon near the surface and in mid-water areas. Net gear that is used in terminal and nearshore areas throughout the action area is fished at the surface. Green sturgeon are bottom oriented, benthic feeders. NMFS is not aware of any records or reports of green sturgeon being caught in Puget Sound salmon fisheries. Any contact of the gear with the bottom would be rare and inadvertent. Given their separation in space and differences in feeding habitats, and the nature and location of the salmon fisheries, NMFS would not expect green sturgeon to be caught in or otherwise affected by the proposed fisheries or there to be any effect on the physical or biological factors (PBFs) of the critical habitat, making any such effects discountable. The proposed salmon fisheries therefore are not likely to adversely affect green sturgeon or its designated critical habitat.

***Eulachon***

Eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) are endemic to the northeastern Pacific Ocean ranging from northern California to southwest and south-central Alaska and into the southeastern Bering Sea (Gustafson et al. 2010). Eulachon are anadromous, spawning in the lower reaches of rivers, followed by a movement to the ocean as small pelagic larvae. Although they spawn in fresh water rivers and streams, eulachon are mainly a marine fish, spending 95% of their lives in marine waters (Hay and McCarter 2000). Eulachon are a short-lived smelt (3-5 years), that averages 40g in weight and 10-30cm in length (Gustafson et al. 2010). Puget Sound lies between two of the larger eulachon spawning rivers (the Columbia and Fraser rivers) but lacks a large eulachon run of its own (Gustafson et al. 2010). Since 2011, eulachon have been found in small numbers throughout Puget Sound and in several watersheds including the Deschutes River, Dungeness River, Elwha River, Goldsborough Creek (Mason Co.), Nisqually River, and Salmon Creek (Jefferson Co.) (NMFS APPS database; https://apps.nmfs.noaa.gov/). Historically, major aboriginal subsistence fisheries for eulachon occurred from northern California into Alaska where the eulachon were eaten fresh, smoked, dried, and salted, and rendered as oil or grease (Gustafson et al. 2010). Since 1888, the states of Washington and Oregon have maintained commercial and recreational eulachon fisheries using small-mesh gillnets (i.e., $\leq$2 inches) and dipnets (Gustafson et al. 2010). Following the 2010 ESA-listing of the southern DPS of eulachon, the states of Washington and Oregon closed the commercial and recreational eulachon fisheries. In 2014, a reduced Level-I eulachon fishery in the Columbia River and select tributaries began which limits eulachon fisheries to 1% of its spawning stock biomass (Gustafson et al. 2016). Eulachon are also taken as bycatch in the pink shrimp and groundfish fisheries off of the Oregon, Washington, and California coasts (Al-Humaidhi et al. 2012). Salmon fisheries in the northern Puget Sound areas, however, use nets with larger mesh sizes (i.e., >4 inches) and hook and line gear designed to catch the much larger salmon species. The deployed gear targets pelagic feeding salmon near the surface and in mid-water areas. Thus, eulachon bycatch in salmon fisheries is extremely unlikely given these general differences in spatial distribution and gear characteristics. In fact, NMFS is unaware of any records of eulachon caught in either commercial or recreational Puget Sound salmon fisheries. Therefore, NMFS would not expect eulachon to be caught or otherwise affected by the proposed fisheries, making any such effects discountable. The proposed salmon fisheries, therefore, are not likely to adversely affect eulachon or its designated critical habitat.

***Humpback Whales* (Central American DPS, Mexico DPS)**

Humpback whales were listed as endangered under the ESCA in June 1970 (35 FR 18319, December 2, 1970), and remained on the list of threatened and endangered species after the passage of the ESA in 1973. A recovery plan for humpbacks was issued in November 1991 (NMFS 1991).

On September 8, 2016, NMFS published a final rule to divide the globally listed endangered humpback whale into 14 DPSs and listed four DPSs as endangered and one as threatened (81 FR 62259). NMFS has identified three DPSs of humpback whales that may be found off the coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California. These are the Hawaiian DPS (found predominately off Washington and southern British Columbia [SBC]) which is not listed under the ESA; the Mexico DPS (found all along the U.S. west coast), which is listed as threatened under the ESA; and the Central America DPS (found predominantly off the coasts of Oregon and California), which is listed as endangered under the ESA. Humpback whales are found in all oceans of the world and migrate from high latitude feeding grounds to low latitude calving areas. Humpbacks primarily occur near the edge of the continental slope and deep submarine canyons where upwelling concentrates zooplankton near the surface for feeding. Humpback whales feed on euphausiids and various schooling fishes, including herring, capelin, sand lance, and mackerel (Clapham 2009).

Current MMPA Stock Assessment Reports (SARs) for humpback whales on the west coast of the United States do not reflect the new ESA listings; thus, we will refer in part to the status of the populations that are found in the action area using the existing SARs (Carretta et al. 2017). The CA/OR/WA stock spends the winter primarily in coastal waters of Mexico and Central America, and the summer along the West Coast from California to British Columbia. As a result, both the endangered Central America DPS and the threatened Mexico DPS both at times travel and feed off the U.S. west coast. The Central North Pacific stock primarily spends winters in Hawaii and summers in Alaska, and its distribution may partially overlap with that of the CA/OR/WA stock off the coast of Washington and British Columbia (Clapham 2009). There is some mixing between these populations, though they are still considered distinct stocks. Seven biologically important areas for humpback whale feeding are identified by Calambokidis et al. (2015), including one in Washington.

The majority of humpback whales observed in coastal waters of Washington and British Columbia are primarily from the Hawaiian breeding population (approximately 53%), or Mexico (42%), and a few from Central American (5%) (Wade et al. 2016). Based on the presence of both listed DPSs in Washington waters (Wade et al 2016) this analysis evaluates impacts on both the Central American and Mexico DPSs of humpback whales as both are expected to occur in the action area. We have relatively limited information about humpback whale foraging habits and space use in the action area (inland marine waters of WA). In recent years, humpback whales are sighted with increasing frequency in inland waters of Washington, including Puget Sound (primarily during the fall and spring); however occurrence is still relatively uncommon.

Current estimates of abundance for the Central America DPS range from approximately 400 to 600 individuals (Bettridge et al. 2015; Wade et al. 2016). The size of this population is relatively low compared to most other North Pacific breeding populations. The population trend for the Central America DPS is unknown (Bettridge et al. 2015). The Mexico DPS, which also occurs in the action area, is estimated to be 6,000 to 7,000 from the SPLASH project (Calambokidis et al. 2008) and in the status review (Bettridge et al. 2015). The estimate for the abundance of the CA/OR/WA stock, which combines members of several different humpback whale DPSs, is 1,918 animals (Carretta et al 2017).

Humpback whales (Central America DPS, Mexican DPS) may be directly affected by the proposed action by interaction with vessels or gear or indirectly affected by reduced prey availability. Below, we describe these direct and indirect effects.

Entanglement of ESA-listed marine mammals is known to be an issue with commercial fishing gear on the U.S. west coast (Saez et al. 2013). Along the U.S. west coast, the estimated annual mortality and serious injury of the CA/OR/WA stock of humpback whales because of commercial fishery entanglements (5.3 per year), and non-fishery entanglements (0.2 per year), plus ship strikes (1.0 per year), equals 6.5 animals, which is less than the PBR allocation of 11 for U.S. waters (Carretta et al. 2017). Most data on human-caused serious injury and mortality for this population is based on opportunistic stranding and at-sea sighting data and represents a minimum count of total impacts. There is currently no estimate of the fraction of anthropogenic injuries and deaths to humpback whales that are undocumented on the U.S. west coast. In 2015 (34 entanglements) and 2016 (54 entanglements), humpback whales were observed and reported entangled across the U.S. west coast at record levels that will receive additional evaluation in upcoming SARs (NMFS WCR stranding data).

For humpback whales that may co-occur with the proposed fishery, there is a risk of becoming captured/entangled in the proposed fishing gear. Humpback whales could unknowingly swim into the gear and becoming entangled. In 2017, a humpback whale was confirmed as being entangled in fishing gear (net) in waters off the San Juan Island; however, it is not known when or where this humpback whale became entangled and what fishery the gear belonged to. The List of Fisheries for 2018 classified the WA Puget Sound region salmon drift gillnet fishery as a category II (i.e., occasional incidental mortality and serious injury of marine mammals) as identified in the Federal Register (83 FR 5349, February 7, 2018). The marine mammal species that have been observed incidentally killed or injured in the Puget Sound salmon drift gillnet fishery include dall's porpoise (*Phocoenoides dalli*), harbor porpoise (P*hocoena phocoena*), and harbor seal (*Phoca vitulina*). These observations of marine mammal take occurred during a 1994 observer effort. The overall take of marine mammals in this fishery is unlikely to have increased since then because of the reduced fishing effort (both number of participating vessels and fishing time). While there is a risk for humpback whale interactions with fishing gear, including entanglement in lines, there have been no recorded confirmed incidents of humpback whale interactions in the proposed fisheries to date. Given the historical performance of this category II fisheries that are a part of the proposed action and the relatively low co-occurrence of humpback whales and the proposed fisheries, we conclude that the likelihood of incidental capture or entanglement of humpback whales during the one year of the proposed action is extremely unlikely and therefore discountable.

The List of Fisheries for 2018 classified the Washington salmon purse seine, WA salmon reef net, and CA/OR/WA salmon troll fisheries all as a category III (i.e., III (i.e., remote likelihood of/no known incidental mortality or serious injury of marine mammals) (83 FR 5349, February 7, 2018). The prediction of future events occurring that have never occurred before, given that no incidental captures or entanglements with ESA-listed marine mammals has ever been documented, is challenging because these risks cannot be completely eliminated. At this time, we conclude that the lack of historical incidental capture or entanglements between purse seine and troll gear and humpback whales or other marine mammals, even when risks of such interactions have been and continue to remain possible, is a reflection of the low co-occurrence of the species and the fishing effort. Given the historical performance of these category III fisheries that are a part of the proposed action, we conclude that the likelihood of incidental capture or entanglement of humpback whales during the one year of the proposed action is extremely unlikely and therefore discountable.

Vessel traffic and fishing effort associated with the proposed fishery are anticipated to be similar or less than past levels in inland waters of Washington. Vessels and gear would have a short-term presence in any specific location and any disturbance from vessels would be minimal. Furthermore, the vessels involved in the activities will not target marine mammals. Therefore, it is extremely unlikely that the proposed fishing effort will result in interactions with humpback whales and the potential for effects is discountable.

The proposed fishing targets species that are not the primary prey for humpback whales and is not expected to reduce their prey. Any reduction in prey would be negligible and an extremely small percent of the total prey available to the whales in the action area and therefore insignificant.

We find that the potential adverse effects of the proposed one year of fishing on the humpback DPSs would be either discountable or insignificant and therefore the proposed fishing may affect, but is not likely to adversely affect humpback whales (Central America DPS, Mexican DPS).

# 3 MAGNUSON-STEVENS FISHERY CONSERVATION AND MANAGEMENT ACT ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT CONSULTATION

Section 305(b) of the MSA directs Federal agencies to consult with NMFS on all actions or proposed actions that may adversely affect EFH. The MSA (section 3) defines EFH as "those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity." Adverse effect means any impact that reduces quality or quantity of EFH, and may include direct or indirect physical, chemical, or biological alteration of the waters or substrate, and loss of (or injury to) benthic organisms, prey species and their habitat, and other ecosystem components, if such modifications reduce the quality or quantity of EFH. Adverse effects on EFH may result from actions occurring within EFH or outside of it and may include site-specific or EFH-wide impacts, including individual, cumulative, or synergistic consequences of actions (50 CFR 600.810). Section 305(b) also requires NMFS to recommend measures that can be taken by the action agency to conserve EFH.

This analysis is based, in part, on descriptions of EFH for Pacific coast groundfish (PFMC 2014a), coastal pelagic species (PFMC 2011), and Pacific coast salmon (PFMC 2014b) contained in the Fishery Management Plans developed by the Pacific Fishery Management Council and approved by the Secretary of Commerce. This section is NMFS' Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSA) consultation on the three federal actions considered in the above sections of the opinion (see Section 1.3).

## 3.1 **Essential Fish Habitat Affected by the Project**

The action area is described in section 2.3. It includes areas that are designated EFH for various life stages of Pacific Coast salmon, Pacific Coast groundfish, and coastal pelagic species managed by the PFMC.

Marine EFH for Chinook, coho and Puget Sound pink salmon in Washington, Oregon, and California includes all estuarine, nearshore and marine waters within the western boundary of the EEZ, 200 miles offshore. Freshwater EFH for Pacific salmon includes all those streams, lakes, ponds, wetlands, and other water bodies currently, or historically accessible to salmon in Washington, Oregon, Idaho, and California, except areas upstream of certain impassable man-made barriers, and longstanding, naturally-impassable barriers (i.e., natural waterfalls in existence for several hundred years). Designated EFH within the action area includes the major rivers and tributaries, and marine waters to the east of Cape Flattery in the hydrologic units identified for Chinook, coho salmon and Puget Sound pink salmon. In those waters, it includes the areas used by Chinook, coho and pink adults (migration, holding, spawning), eggs and alevins (rearing) and juveniles (rearing, migration). A more detailed description and identification of EFH for salmon is found in Appendix A to Amendment 18 to the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan (PFMC 2014b).

Essential fish habitat for groundfish includes all waters, substrates and associated biological communities from the mean higher high water line, or the upriver extent of saltwater intrusion in river mouths, seaward to the 3500 m depth contour plus specified areas of interest such as seamounts. A more detailed description and identification of EFH for groundfish is found in the Appendix B of Amendment 19 to the Pacific Coast Groundfish Management Plan (PFMC 2014a).

Essential fish habitat for CPS is defined based on the temperature range where they are found, and on the geographic area where they occur at any life stage. This range varies widely according to ocean temperatures. The east-west boundary of CPS EFH includes all marine and estuary waters from the coasts of California, Oregon, and Washington to the limits of the EEZ (the 200-mile limit) and above the thermocline where sea surface temperatures range between 10° and 26° centigrade. The southern boundary is the U.S./Mexico maritime boundary. The northern boundary is more changeable and is defined as the position of the 10° C isotherm, which varies seasonally and annually. In years with cold winter sea surface temperatures, the 10° C isotherm during February is around 43° N latitude offshore, and slightly further south along the coast. In August, this northern boundary moves up to Canada or Alaska. Assessment of potential adverse effects on these species EFH from the proposed actions is based, in part, on this information. A more detailed description and identification of EFH for coastal pelagic species is found in Amendment 8 to the Coastal Pelagic Species Fishery Management Plan (PFMC 2011).

## 3.2 Adverse Effects on Essential Fish Habitat

### 3.2.1 Salmon

The PFMC assessed the effects of fishing on salmon EFH and provided recommended conservation measures in Appendix A to Amendment 18 of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan (PFMC 2014b). The PFMC identified five fishing-related activities that may adversely affect EFH including: (1) fishing activities; (2) derelict gear effects; (3) harvest of prey species; (4) vessel operations; and (5) removal of salmon carcasses and their nutrients from streams. Of the five types of impact on EFH identified by the PFMC for fisheries, the concerns regarding gear-substrate interactions, removal of salmon carcasses, redd or juvenile fish disturbance and fishing vessel operation on habitat are also potential concerns for the salmon fisheries in Puget Sound. However, the PFMC recommendations for addressing these effects are already included in the proposed actions.

**Fishing Activities**

Most of the harvest related activities in Puget Sound occur from boats or along river banks, with most of the fishing activity in the marine and nearshore areas. The gear fishermen use include hook-and-line, drift and set gillnets, beach seines, and to a limited extent, purse seines. The types of salmon fishing gear that are used in Puget Sound salmon fisheries in general actively avoid contact with the substrate because of the resultant interference with fishing and potential loss of gear. Possible fishery-related impacts on riparian vegetation and habitat would occur primarily through bank fishing, movement of boats and gear to the water, and other stream side usages. The proposed fishery implementation plan includes actions that would minimize these impacts if they did occur, such as area closures. Also these effects would occur to some degree through implementation of fisheries or activities other than the Puget Sound salmon fisheries (i.e., recreational boating and marine species fisheries). Therefore, the proposed fisheries would have a negligible additional impact on the physical environment.

### Derelict Gear

When gear associated with commercial or recreational fishing breaks free, is abandoned, or becomes otherwise lost in the aquatic environment, it becomes derelict gear. In commercial fisheries, trawl nets, gillnets, long lines, purse seines, crab and lobster pots, and other material, are occasionally lost to the aquatic environment. The gear used in the proposed actions are gillnets, purse seines, beach seines and hook and line gear.

Derelict fishing gear, as with other types of marine debris, can directly affect salmon habitat and can directly affect managed species via “ghost fishing.” Ghost fishing is included here as an impact to EFH because the presence of marine debris affects the physical, chemical, or biological properties of EFH. For example, once plastics enter the water column, they contribute to the properties of the water. If debris is ingested by fish, it would likely cause harm to the individual. Another example is in the case of a lost net in a river. Once lost, the net becomes not only a potential barrier to fish passage, but also a more immediate entanglement threat to the individual.

Derelict gear can adversely affect salmon EFH directly by such means as physical harm to eelgrass beds or other estuarine benthic habitats; harm to coral and sponge habitats or rocky reefs in the marine environment; and by simply occupying space that would otherwise be available to salmon. Derelict gear also causes direct harm to salmon (and potentially prey species) by entanglement. Once derelict gear becomes a part of the aquatic environment, it affects the utility of the habitat in terms of passive use and passage to adjacent habitats. More specifically, if a derelict net is in the path of a migrating fish, that net can entangle and kill the individual fish.

Due to recent additional outreach and assessment efforts (i.e. Gibson 2013), and results of recent lost net inventories (Beattie and Adicks 2012; Beattie 2013; James 2017) it is likely that fewer nets will become derelict in the upcoming 2018/19 fishing season compared to several years and decades ago (previous estimates of derelict nets were 16 to 42 annually (NRC 2010)). In 2016, an estimated 14 nets became derelict, nine of which were removed (James 2017) In 2014, an estimated 13 nets became derelict, and 12 of them where recovered (James 2015), in 2013 an estimated 15 nets became derelict, 12 of which were recovered (Beattie 2013), and in 2012 eight nets were lost, and six were recovered (Beattie and Adicks 2012). A separate analysis from June 2012 to February 2016 a total of 77 newly lost nets were reported, and only 6 of these were reported by commercial fishermen while others were reported by a variety of people and entities (Drinkwin 2016). We do not yet have estimates of the number of nets lost in the 2017/2018 salmon fisheries. Based on this new information we estimate that a range of six to 20 gill nets may be lost in the 2018/2019 fishing season, but up to 75% of these nets would be removed within days of their loss and have little potential to damage EFH.

### Harvest of Prey Species

Prey species can be considered a component of EFH (PFMC 2014b). For Pacific salmon, commercial and recreational fisheries for many types of prey species potentially decrease the amount of prey available to Pacific salmon. Herring, sardine, anchovy, squid, smelt, groundfish, shrimp, crab, burrowing shrimp, and other species of finfish and shellfish are potential salmon prey species that are directly fished, either commercially or recreationally. The proposed actions does not include harvest of prey species and will have no adverse effect on prey species.

**Vessel Operation**

A variety of fishing and other vessels on the Pacific Coast can be found in freshwater streams, estuaries, and the marine environment within the action area. Vessel that operate under the proposed actions range in size from small single-person vessels used in streams and estuaries to mid-size commercial or recreational vessels. Section 4.2.2.29 of Appendix A to Amendment 18 of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan (PFMC 2014b) regarding Vessel Operations provides a more detailed description of the effects of vessel activity on EFH. Any impact to water quality from vessels transiting critical habitat areas on their way to the fishing grounds or while fishing would be short term and transitory in nature and minimal compared to the number of other vessels in the area. Also these activities would occur to some degree through implementation of fisheries or activities other than the Puget Sound salmon fisheries, i.e., recreational boating and marine species fisheries.

**Removal of Salmon Carcasses**

Salmon carcasses provide nutrients to stream and lake ecosystems. Spawning salmon reduce the amount of fine sediment in the gravel in the process of digging redds. Salmon fishing removes a portion of the fish whose carcasses would otherwise have contributed to providing those habitat functions.

The PFMC conservation recommendation to address the concern regarding removal of salmon carcasses was to manage for spawner escapement levels associated with MSY, implementation of management measures to prevent over-fishing and compliance with requirements of the ESA for ESA listed species. These conservation measures are basic principles of the harvest objectives used to manage salmon fisheries. Therefore, management measures to minimize the effects of salmon carcass removal on EFH are an integral component of the management of the proposed fisheries.

### 3.2.2 Groundfish

As described in Section 2.5.3.4 of this opinion, NMFS believes that the proposed actions would have the following adverse effects on the EFH of groundfish.

**Habitat Alteration**

Lost commercial fishing nets would adversely affect groundfish EFH. As described in section 2.5.3.4, most nets hang on bottom structure that is also used by rockfish and other groundfish. This structure consists of high-relief rocky substrates or boulders located on sand, mud or gravel bottoms (Good et al. 2010). Derelict nets alter habitat suitability by trapping fine sediments out of the water column. This makes a layer of soft sediment over rocky areas, changing habitat quality and suitability for benthic organisms (Good et al. 2010). Nets can also cover habitats used by groundfish for shelter and pursuit of food, rendering the habitat unavailable. Using the most common derelict net size reported by Good et al. (2010), if up to 20 nets were initially lost and five were not retrieved they would degrade approximately damage up to 35,000 square feet (0.8 acre) of habitat (assuming an average of 7,000 square feet per net) of benthic habitat.

**Reduction in Groundfish Prey and Entanglement**

Most nets hang on bottom structure that is also attractive to rockfish and other groundfish species. This structure consists of high-relief rocky substrates or boulders located on sand, mud or gravel bottoms (Good et al. 2010). The combination of complex structure and currents tend to stretch derelict nets open and suspend them within the water column, in turn making them more deadly for marine biota (Akiyama et al. 2007, Good et al. 2010) and thus result in a decrease of groundfish prey and entanglement of various species of groundfish.

#### 3.2.3 Coastal Pelagic

The proposed actions would not have an adverse effect on coastal pelagic EFH. Commercial and recreational fisheries targeting salmon would not appreciably alter habitats used by coastal pelagic species. Any derelict gear would occur in benthic habitats, not pelagic habitats.

### 3.3 Essential Fish Habitat Conservation Recommendations

Pursuant to Section 305(b)(4)(A) of the MSA, NMFS is required to provide EFH conservation recommendations to Federal agencies regarding actions which may adversely affect EFH.

NMFS is not providing any EFH conservation recommendations for salmon EFH because the proposed actions includes adequate measures to mitigate for the potential adverse effects from salmon fishing. We provide the following conservation recommendations to minimize the adverse effects to groundfish EFH; consistent with the terms and conditions described for rockfish in Section 2.9.2.2 of the opinion:

**Derelict Gear Reporting**

The BIA, USFWS and NMFS, in collaboration with the state and Puget Sound treaty tribes, should encourage commercial fishers to report derelict gear lost in marine areas within the Action Area to appropriate authorities within 24 hours of its loss.

**Derelict Gear Accounting & Locations**

The BIA, USFWS and NMFS, in collaboration with the state and Puget Sound treaty tribes, should track the total number and approximate locations of nets lost (and subsequently recovered) in marine areas within the Action Area and account for them on an annual basis.

**Derelict Gear Prevention**

The BIA, USFWS and NMFS, in collaboration with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, and Puget Sound treaty tribes, should implement the recommendations for the prevention, retrieval and investigation of gear modifications of gill nets used in Puget Sound salmon fisheries reported in Gibson (2013).

Fully implementing these EFH conservation recommendations would protect, by avoiding or minimizing the adverse effects described in section 3.2 above, approximately 0.8 acre of designated EFH for Pacific coast groundfish species.

### 3.4 Statutory Response Requirement

As required by section 305(b)(4)(B) of the MSA, BIA, USFWS and NMFS must provide a detailed response in writing to NMFS within 30 days after receiving an EFH Conservation Recommendation. Such a response must be provided at least 10 days prior to final approval of the action if the response is inconsistent with any of NMFS' EFH Conservation Recommendations unless NMFS and the Federal agency have agreed to use alternative time frames for the Federal agency response. The response must include a description of measures proposed by the agency for avoiding, mitigating, or offsetting the impact of the activity on EFH. In the case of a response that is inconsistent with the Conservation Recommendations, the Federal agency must explain its reasons for not following the recommendations, including the scientific justification for any disagreements with NMFS over the anticipated effects of the action and the measures needed to avoid, minimize, mitigate, or offset such effects (50 CFR 600.920(k)(1)).

In response to increased oversight of overall EFH program effectiveness by the Office of Management and Budget, NMFS established a quarterly reporting requirement to determine how many conservation recommendations are provided as part of each EFH consultation and how many are adopted by the action agency. Therefore, we ask that in your statutory reply to the EFH portion of this consultation, you clearly identify the number of conservation recommendations accepted.

### 3.5 Supplemental Consultation

The BIA, NMFS and USFWS must reinitiate EFH consultation with NMFS if the proposed actions is substantially revised in a way that may adversely affect EFH, or if new information becomes available that affects the basis for NMFS' EFH conservation recommendations (50 CFR 600.920(l)).

## 4. DATA QUALITY ACT DOCUMENTATION AND PRE-DISSEMINATION REVIEW

The Data Quality Act (DQA) specifies three components contributing to the quality of a document. They are utility, integrity, and objectivity. This section of the opinion addresses these DQA components, documents compliance with the DQA, and certifies that this opinion has undergone pre-dissemination review.

### 4.1 Utility

Utility principally refers to ensuring that the information contained in this consultation is helpful, serviceable, and beneficial to the intended users. The intended users of this consultation are the applicants and funding/action agencies listed on the first page. Other interested users could include the agencies, applicants, and the American public. Individual copies of this opinion were provided to the BIA, NMFS, USFWS and the applicants. This opinion will be posted on the Public Consultation Tracking System web site (https://pcts.nmfs.noaa.gov/pcts-web/homepage.pcts ). The format and naming adheres to conventional standards for style

### 4.2 Integrity

This consultation was completed on a computer system managed by NMFS in accordance with relevant information technology security policies and standards set out in Appendix III, 'Security of Automated Information Resources,' Office of Management and Budget Circular A-130; the Computer Security Act; and the Government Information Security Reform Act.

### 4.3 Objectivity

Information Product Category:  Natural Resource Plan

***Standards:*** This consultation and supporting documents are clear, concise, complete, and unbiased; and were developed using commonly accepted scientific research methods. They adhere to published standards including the NMFS ESA Consultation Handbook, ESA regulations, 50 CFR 402.01 et seq., and the MSA implementing regulations regarding EFH, 50 CFR 600.

***Best Available Information:*** This consultation and supporting documents use the best available information, as referenced in the References section. The analyses in this opinion [*and EFH consultation, if applicable*] contain more background on information sources and quality.

***Referencing:*** All supporting materials, information, data and analyses are properly referenced, consistent with standard scientific referencing style.

***Review Process:*** This consultation was drafted by NMFS staff with training in ESA [*and MSA implementation, if applicable*], and reviewed in accordance with West Coast Region ESA quality control and assurance processes.

## 5. REFERENCES


Adicks, Kyle. 2010. Memorandum regarding escapement trends in Mid-Hood Canal Chinook and hatchery production changes. Memorandum to Hood Canal Tribal Co-managers from Kyle Adicks, Anadromous Resource Policy Analyst, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington. February 3.

Adicks, K. 2016. Fisheries Biologist, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington. June 8, 2016. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, NMFS, transmitting comanagers 2016 Terminal Freshwater Fishery Performance Report: Skagit Summer/Fall, Puyallup Fall, Nisqually Fall, and Skokomish Fall Chinook Management Units. 7 p.

Al-Humaidhi, A.W., M.A. Bellman, J. Jannot, and J. Majewski. 2012. Observed and estimated total bycatch of green sturgeon and Pacific eulachon in 2002-2010 U.S. west coast fisheries. West Coast Groundfish Observer Program. National Marine Fisheries Service, NWFSC, 2725 Montlake Blvd E., Seattle, WA 98112.

Apgar-Kurtz, B. 2017. Fishery Biologist, Lummi Natural Resources, Bellingham, Washington. April 21, 2017. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, NMFS, providing a summary of the performance of the South Fork Nooksack captive brood program in 2016.

Apgar-Kurtz, B. 2018. Breena Apgar-Kurtz, Lummi Tribal Natural Resources, personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, National Marine Fisheries Service regarding 2017 Nooksack early Chinook escapement. April 24, 2018.

Appleby, A., and K. Keown. 1994. History of White River spring chinook broodstocking and captive rearing efforts. Wash. Dep. Fish Wildl., 53 p. (Available from Washington Dept. of Fish and Wildlife, 600 Capitol Way N., Olympia, WA 98501-1091.).

Akiyama, S., E. Saito, and T. Watanabe. 2007. Relationship between soak time and number of enmeshed animals in experimentally lost gill nets. Fisheries Science 73:881-888.

Au, W.W.L., J.K. Horne, and C. Jones. 2010. Basis of acoustic discrimination of Chinook salmon from other salmons by echolocating *Orcinus orca*. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 128(4): 2225-2232.

Bain, D. 1990. Examining the validity of inferences drawn from photo-identification data, with special reference to studies of the killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) in British Columbia. Report of the International Whaling Commission, Special Issue 12:93-100.

Baird, R.W. 2000. The killer whale: foraging specializations and group hunting. Pages 127-153 in J. Mann, R.C. Connor, P.L. Tyack, and H.Whitehead, editors. Cetacean societies: field studies of dolphins and whales. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, Illinois.

Barnett-Johnson, R., C. B. Grimes, C. F. Royer, and C. J. Donohoe. 2007. Identifying the contribution of wild and hatchery Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) to the ocean fishery using otolith microstructure as natural tags. Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences. 64(12): 1683-1692.

Bassett, C., B. Polagye, M. M. Holt, and J. Thomson. 2012. A vessel noise budget for Admiralty Inlet, Puget Sound, WA (USA). J. Acous. Soc. Am. 132(6): 3706-3719.

Battin, J., M. W. Wiley, M. H. Ruckelhaus, R. N. Palmer, E. Korb, K. K. Bartz, and H. Imaki. 2007. Projected impacts of climate change on salmon habitat restoration. Proceedings of the National Academy of Science. 104(16): 6720-6725.

Beattie, W. 2013. Letter describing derelict fishing nets in the Puget Sound area. On file with NMFS West Coast Region Sand Point Office.

Beattie, W. 2014. Conservation Planning Coordinator, NWIFC, Olympia, Washington. April 16, 2014. Personal communication via email with Amilee Wilson, NMFS, regarding native steelhead incidental encounters in Puget Sound treaty marine salmon and steelhead fisheries.

Beattie, W. and K. Adicks. 2012. Letter describing derelict fishing nets in the Puget Sound area. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point Office.

Beechie, T., E. Buhle, M. Ruckelshaus, A. Fullerton, and L. Holsinger. 2006. Hydrologic regime and the conservation of salmon life history diversity. *Conservation* 130(4): 560-572.

Berkeley, S. A., C. T, and S. M. Sogard. 2004. Maternal age as a determinant of larval growth and survival in a marine fish, *Sebastes melanops*. Ecology 85:1258-1264.

Bettridge, S., C.S. Baker, J. Barlow, P.J. Clapham, M. Ford, D. Gouveia, D.K. Mattila, R.M. Pace, III, P.E. Rosel, G.K. Silber, P.R. Wade. 2015. Status review of the humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) under the Endangered Species Act. NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-540, 240 pages.

Bigg, M. 1982. As assessment of killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) stocks off Vancouver Island, British Columbia. Report of the International Whaling Commission 32:655-666.

Bigg, M.A., P.F. Olesiuk, G.M. Ellis, J.K.B. Ford, and K.C. Balcomb. 1990. Social organization and genealogy of resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the coastal waters of British Columbia and Washington State. Report of the International Whaling Commission, Special Issue 12:383-398.

Bishop, S., and A. Morgan (eds.). 1996. Critical habitat issues by basin for natural Chinook salmon stocks in the coastal and Puget Sound areas of Washington State. Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission, Olympia, WA. 105pp.

Bishop, S. 2016a. Senior Fishery Biologist, NMFS WCR Sustainable Fisheries Division, Seattle, Washington. May 12, 2016. Personal communication via email with Chris James, regarding responses to questions on the 2016 Puget Sound Tribal Harvest Plan.

Bishop, S. 2016b. Memo to David Troutt, Natural Resources Director, Nisqually Tribe, and Ron Warren, Fish Program Manager, WDFW from Susan Bishop and Peter Dygert, NMFS, describing elements of a new long term management strategy and a process for completing that work. March 23, 2016.

Blain, B. 2014. The effects of barotrauma and deepwater-release mechanisms on the reproductive viability of yellwoeye rockfish in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Masters Thesis, University of Alaska Fairbanks. December 2014.

Bobko, S. J., and S. A. Berkeley. 2004. Maturity, ovarian cycle, fecundity, and age-specific parturition of black rockfish, (*Sebastes melanops*). Fishery Bulletin, U.S. 102:418-429.

Boehlert, G. W., W. H. Barss, and P. B. Lamberson. 1982. Fecundity of the widow rockfish, *Sebastes entomelas*, off the coast of Oregon. Fishery Bulletin, U.S. 80:881-884.

Bonefeld-Jørgensen, E. C., H. R. Andersen, T. H. Rasmussen, and A. M. Vinggaard. 2001. Effect of highly bioaccumulated polychlorinated biphenyl congeners on estrogen and androgen receptor activity. Toxicology 158:141–153.

Booth, D. D. Hartley, and R. Jackson. 2002. Forest cover, impervious-surface area, and the mitigation of stormwater impacts. Journal of the American Water Resources Association. 38 (3).

Bowhay, C. and R. Warren. 2016. Director, Fishery Program, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission and Assistant Director, Fish Program, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. June 1, 2016. Letter to Dr. James Unsworth (Director, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife) and Mike Grayum (Director, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission) regarding the 2016-2017 List of Agreed Fisheries (LOAF) for salmon fisheries in the ocean north of Cape Falcon, Oregon and in Puget Sound. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Bradford, A. L, D. W. Weller, A. E. Punt, Y. V. Ivashchenko YV, A. M. Burdin, G. R. VanBlaricom, and R. L. Brownell. 2012. Leaner leviathans: body condition variation in critically endangered whale population. J. Mammal. 93(1):251-266.

Brent, L. J. N, D. W. Franks, E. A. Foster, K. C. Balcomb, M. A. Cant, and D. P. Croft. 2015. Ecological knowledge, leadership, and the evolution of menopause in killer whales. Current Biology. 25: 746-750.

Burns, R. 1985. The shape and forms of Puget Sound. Published by Washington Sea Grant, and distributed by the University of Washington Press.

Busack, C.A. and K.P. Currens. 1995. Genetic Risks and Hazards in Hatchery Operations: Fundamental Concepts and Issues. American Fisheries Society Symposium 15:71-80.

Calambokidis, J, GH Steiger, C Curtice, J Harrison, MC Ferguson, E Becker, M DeAngelis, and SM Van Parijs. 2015. Biologically Important Areas for Selected Cetaceans within U.S. Waters – West Coast Region. Aquatic Mammals. Volume 41(1), pages 39 to 53. DOI 10.1578/AM.41.1.2015.39.

Carretta, J.V., K. A. Forney, E. M. Oleson, D. W. Weller, A. R. Lang, J. Baker, M. M. Muto, B. Hanson, A. J. Orr, H. Huber, M. S. Lowry, J. Barlow, J. E. Moore, D. Lynch, L. Carswell, and R. L. Brownell Jr. 2017. U.S. Pacific Marine Mammal Stock Assessments: 2016. NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-577. 414 p.

Carr, M.H. 1983. Spatial and temporal patterns of recruitment of young of the year rockfishes (genus Sebastes) into a central California kelp Forest. Masters thesis, San Francisco State University, CA 94132, 104p).

Chapman, A. 2013. ESA Coordinator, Lummi Natural Resources, Bellingham, Washington. December 30, 2013. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, NMFS, regarding projected returns from the South Fork early Chinook captive broodstock program.

Chapman, A. 2016. ESA Coordinator, Lummi Natural Resources, Bellingham, Washington. May 6, 2016. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, NMFS, regarding escapement of the South Fork early Chinook captive broodstock program in 2015.

Chasco, B., Kaplan, I., Thomas, A., Acevedo-Gutiérrez, A., Noren, D.P., Ford, M.J., Hanson, M.B., Scordino, J., Jeffries, S.J., Pearson, S.F., and others. 2017. Estimates of Chinook salmon consumption in Washington State inland waters by four marine mammal predators from 1970–2015. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. (ja). Available from http://www.nrcresearchpress.com/doi/abs/10.1139/cjfas-2016-0203.

Chasco, B.E., I.C. Kaplan, A.C. Thomas, A.Acevedo-Gutiérrez, D.P. Noren, M.J. Ford, M.B. Hanson, J.J. Scordino, S.J. Jeffries, K.N. Marshall, A.O. Shelton, C. Matkin, B.J. Burke, and E.J. Ward. 2017b. Competing tradeoffs between increasing marine mammal predation and fisheries harvest of Chinook salmon. Scientific Reports. 7:15439.

Clapham, P.J. 2009. Humpback whale *Megaptera novaeangliae*. Pages 582 to 585, in W.F. Perrin, B. Würsig, and H.G.M. Thewissen (eds.), Encyclopedia of Marine Mammals, Academic Press, San Diego, CA. 1316 pages.

Cloutier, R. N. 2011. Direct and indirect effects of marine protection: Rockfish conservation areas as a case study. Thesis submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Master of Science. Simon Fraser University.

Clutton-Brock, T.H. 1998. Reproductive success. Studies of individual variation in contrasting breeding systems. University of Chicago Press; Chicago, Illinois.

Coulson, T., T. G. Benton, P. Lundberg, S. R. X. Dall, B. E. Kendall, and J. M. Gaillard. 2006. Estimating individual contributions to population growth: evolutionary fitness in ecological time. Proceedings of the Royal Society of London, Series B: Biological Sciences 273: 547 - 555.

Crawford, Bruce. 1979. Origin and history of the trout brood stocks of the Washington Department of Game. Washington Dept. of Game. 21p.

Daan, S., C. Deerenberg and C. Dijkstra. 1996. Increased daily work precipitates natural death in the kestrel. The Journal of Animal Ecology 65(5): 539 - 544.

Dapp, D. and A. Dufault. 2018. Derek Dapp, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, and Aaron Dufault, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, National Marine Fisheries Service regarding the adjustment factor for the Area 7 marine sport fishery. April 7, 2018.

Darnerud, P. O. 2003. Toxic effects of brominated flame retardants in man and in wildlife. Environ. Int. 29:841–853.

Darnerud, P. O. 2008. Brominated flame retardants as possible endocrine disrupters. Int. J. Androl. 31:152–160.

Deagle, B.E., D.J. Tollit, S.N. Jarman, M.A. Hindell, A.W. Trites, and N.J. Gales. 2005. Molecular scatology as a tool to study diet: analysis of prey DNA in scats from captive Steller sea lions. Mol. Ecol. 14:1831-1842.

de Boer, J., K. de Boer, and J. P. Boon. 2000. Toxic effects of brominated flame retardants in man and wildlife. Environ. Int. 29:841–853.

de Guise, S., M. Levin, E. Gebhard, L. Jasperse et al. 2017. Changes in immune functions in bottlenose dolphins in the northern Gulf of Mexico associated with the Deepwater Horizon oil spill. Endang. Species Res. 33:291-303. doi:10.3354/esr00814.

de Swart, R. L., P. S. Ross, J. G. Vos, and A.Osterhaus. 1996. Impaired immunity in habour seals (*Phoca vitulina*) exposed to bioaccumulated environmental contaminants: Review of long-term feeding study. Environ. Health Perspect. 104:823–828.

Dierauf, L. A. and F. M. D. Gulland. 2001. CRC Handbook of Marine Mammal Medicine. 2nd Edition. CRC Press, Boca Raton , FL.

Diewert, R.E., D.A. Nagtegaal, and K. Hein. 2005. A comparison of the results of the 1998 Georgia Strait Creel Survey with an Independent Observer Program. Canadian Manuscript of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 2716. 39 p.

Dennis, M. 2017. Biologist, National Marine Fisheries Service. Lacey, Washington. April 12, 2017. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, Sustainable Fisheries Division NMFS WCR, regarding estimated take of listed Puget Sound Chinook salmon and steelhead, and Puget Sound rockfish in scientific research.

Dennis, M. 2018. Biologist, National Marine Fisheries Service. Lacey, Washington. March 14, 2018. Personal communication via email with Molly Gorman, contractor Sustainable Fisheries Division NMFS WCR, regarding estimated take of listed Puget Sound Chinook salmon and steelhead, and Puget Sound rockfish in scientific research.

DFO (Department of Fish and Oceans). 2010. Population Assessment Pacific Harbour Seal (*Phoca vitulina richardsi).* DFO Can. Sci. Advis. Sec. Sci. Advis. Rep. 2009/011.

DFO. 2011. Pacific region integrated fisheries management plan – groundfish. February 21, 2011 to February 20, 2013. Updated: February 16, 2011, Version 1.0.

Drake J.S., E.A. Berntson, J.M. Cope, R.G. Gustafson, E.E. Holmes, P.S. Levin, N. Tolimieri, R.S. Waples, S.M. Sogard, and G.D. Williams. 2010. Status review of five rockfish species in Puget Sound, Washington: boccaccio (*Sebastes paucispinis*), canary rockfish (*S. pinniger*), yelloweye rockfish (*S. ruberrimus*), greenstriped rockfish (*S. elongatus*), and redstripe rockfish (*S. proriger*). U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-108, 234 pages.

Drinkwin, J. 2016. Derelict fishing gear program progress and updates March 21, 2016. Northwest Straits Foundation. Powerpoint presentation on file with NMFS Sand Point Office, 7600 Sand Point Way, NE 98115.

Durban, J., H. Fearnbach, D. Ellifrit, and K. Balcomb. 2009. Size and Body Condition of Southern Resident Killer Whales. Contract report to National Marine Fisheries Service, Order No. AB133F08SE4742, February 2009.

Durban, J. W., H. Fearnbach, L. Barrett-Lennard, M. Groskreutz, W. Perryman, K. Balcomb, D. Ellifrit, M. Malleson, J. Cogan, J. Ford, and J. Towers. 2017. Photogrammetry and Body Condition. Availability of Prey for Southern Resident Killer Whales. Technical Workshop Proceedings. November 15-17, 2017.

Eisenhardt, E. 2001. Effect of the San Juan Islands Marine Preserves on demographic patterns of nearshore rockyreef fish. Master of Science Thesis, University of Washington, Seattle. 171 p.

Eisenhardt, E. 2002. A marine preserve network in San Juan Channel: Is it working for nearshore rocky reef fish? In: Puget Sound Research 2001. Puget Sound Action Team, Olympia, WA.

EDPU. 2005. Elwha-Dungeness Watershed Plan, Water Resources Inventory Area 18 (WRIA 18) and Sequim Bay in West WRIA 17. Published by Clallam County. May 2005. Volume 1: Chapters 1-3 and 15 appendices; Volume 2: Appendix 3-E.

Ellinigs, C. 2017. Salmon Recovery Program Manager, Nisqually Natural Resources, Yelm, Washington. March 15, 2017. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, NMFS, regarding development of long term management framework for Nisqually Chinook. Attachments included.

Erickson, A. W. 1978. Population studies of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the Pacific Northwest: a radio-marking and tracking study of killer whales. U.S. Marine Mammal Commission, Washington, D.C.

Fagen, W.F. and E.E. Holmes. 2006. Quantifying the extinction vortex. Ecology Letters 9:51-60.

Fearnbach, H., J. W. Durban, D. K. Ellifrit and K. C. Balcomb III. 2018. Using aerial photogrammetry to detect changes in body condition in endangered Southern Resident killer whales. Endangered Species Research.

Feely, R. A., S. Alin, J. Newton, C. Sabine, M. Warner, A. Devol, C. Krembs, and C. Maloy. 2010. The combined effects of ocean acidification, mixing, and respiration on pH and carbon saturation in an urbanized estuary. Estuarine, Coastal, and Shelf Science. 88:442-449.

Ferrara, G.A., T.M. Mongillo, L.M. Barre. 2017. Reducing disturbance from vessels to Southern Resident killer whales: Assessing the effectiveness of the 2011 federal regulations in advancing recovery goals. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-OPR-58, 76 p.

Field, J. C. and S. Ralston. 2005. Spatial variability in rockfish (*Sebastes* spp.) recruitment events in the California Current System. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences. 62:2199-2210.

FishBase. 2010. Life-history of bocaccio. Accessed May 20, 2010. www.fishbase.org.

Fisher, R., S. M. Sogard, and S. A. Berkeley. 2007. Trade-offs between size and energy reserves reflect alternative strategies for optimizing larval survival potential in rockfish. Marine Ecology Progress Series 344: 257-270.

Fonnum, F., E. Mariussen, and T. Reistad. 2006. Molecular mechanisms involved in the toxic effects of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) and brominated flame retardants (BFRs). J. Toxicol. Environ. Health A 69:21–35.

Ford, J.K.B., G.M. Ellis, L.G. Barrett-Lennard, A.B. Morton, R.S. Palm, and K.C. Balcomb. 1998. Dietary specialization in two sympatric population of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in coastal British Columbia and adjacent waters. Canadian Journal of Zoology 76:1456-1471.

Ford, J. K. B. 2000. Killer whales: the natural history and genealogy of *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia and Washington State. Vancouver, British Columbia, UBC Press, 2nd Edition.

Ford, J.K.B., G.M. Ellis, and P.F. Olesiuk. 2005. Linking prey and population dynamics: did food limitation cause recent declines of 'resident' killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in British Columbia? Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Nanaimo, British Columbia.

Ford, J.K.B. and G.M. Ellis. 2006. Selective foraging by fish-eating killer whales *Orcinus orca* in British Columbia. Marine Ecology Progress Series 316:185-199.

Ford, J.K.B., Wright, B.M., Ellis, G.M., and Candy, J.R. 2009. Chinook salmon predation by resident killer whales: seasonal and regional selectivity, stock identity of prey, and consumption rates. Fisheries and Oceans Canada (DFO), Nanaimo, BC.

Ford, M. J., M. B. Hanson, J. Hempelmann, K. L. Ayres, C. K. Emmons, G. S. Schorr, R. W. Baird, K. C. Balcomb, S. K. Wasser, K. M. Parsons, K. Balcomb-Bartok. 2011. Inferred Paternity and Male Reproductive Success in a Killer Whale (*Orcinus orca*) Population. Journal of Heredity. Volume 102 (Issue 5), pages 537 to 553.

Ford, M. J., editor. 2011. Status Review Update for Pacific salmon and steelhead listed under the Endangered Species Act: Pacific Northwest. U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-113. 307 p.

Ford, M. 2015. Results of NOAA BRT review of new genetics information, memo from the NWFSC to PRD, December 9, 2015.

Ford, M. J., J. Hempelmann, M. B. Hanson, K. L. Ayres, R. W. Baird, C. K. Emmons, J. I.

Lundin, G. S. Schorr, S. K. Wasser, and L. K. Park. 2016. Estimation of a killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) population's diet using sequencing analysis of DNA from feces. PLoS ONE. 11(1):e0144956. Doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0144956.

Fowler, A. 2018. Andrew Fowler, Fish Biologist, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, La Conner, WA. May 2, 2018. Personal communication with Molly Gorman and Susan Bishop, NMFS, regarding estimated steelhead harvest for 2018 in the Skagit steelhead fishery, with excel harvest spreadsheet attachment.

Franks, D. W., S. Nattrass, L. J. N. Brent, H. Whitehead, A. D. Foote, S. Mazzi, J. K. B. Ford, K. C. Balcomb, M. A. Cant, and D. P. Croft. 2016. The significance of postreproductive lifespans in killer whales: a comment on Robeck et al. DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/jmammal/gyw021.

Fresh, K. L. 1997. The role of competition and predation in the decline of Pacific salmon and steelhead *in* Pacific salmon and their ecosystems, status and future options. D.J. Stouder, D.A. Bisson, and R.J. Naiman, editors. Chapman and Hall, New York. 245-275.

Fuss, H.J., and C. Ashbrook. 1995. Hatchery operation plans and performance summaries. Volume I (2). Puget Sound. Annual Report. Washington Department of Fish Wild., Assessment and Develop. Div., Olympia. (Available from Washington Dept. of Fish and Wildlife, 600 Capital Way N., Olympia, WA 98501-1091.

Garcia, T. 1998. Letter from Terry Garcia, Assistant Secretary for Oceans and Atmosphere, to Ted Strong, Executive Director, Columbia Inter-Tribal Fish Commission, July 21, 1998.

Garret, D. and Bosworth, A. 2018. Relative abundance and diet of piscivorous fishes in the Lake Washington shipping canal during late spring and early summer. From 2018 LOAF.

Gamel, C.M., R.W. Davis, J.H.M. David, M.A. Meyer and E. Brandon. 2005. Reproductive energetics and female attendance patterns of Cape fur seals (*Arctocephalus pusillus pusillus*) during early lactation. American Midland Naturalist 153(1): 152-170.

Gaydos, J.K., and S. Raverty. 2007. Killer Whale Stranding Response, August 2007 Final Report. Report under UC Davis Agreement No. C 05-00581 V, August 2007.

Geraci, J. R., and D. J. St. Aubin. 1990. Sea mammals and oil: Confronting the risks. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Gibson, C. 2013. Preventing the loss of gillnets in Puget Sound salmon fisheries. Prepared by the Northwest Straits Commission with the Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. August 2013. http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/publications/protected_species/other/rockfish/puget_sound_derelict_gill_net_prevention_report.pdf.

Gilpin, M. E., and M. E. Soulé. 1986. Minimum viable populations: Processes of species extinction. Conservation biology: the science of scarcity and diversity. 19-34.

Good, T.P., June, J.A., Etnier, M. A., and G. Broadhurst. 2010. Derelict fishing nets in Puget

Sound and the Northwest Straits: Patterns and threats to marine fauna. Marine Pollution Bulletin. 60(2010): 39-50.

Gordon, J., and A. Moscrop. 1996. Underwater noise pollution and its significance for whales and dolphins. Pages 281-319 in M.P. Simmonds and J.D. Hutchinson, editors. The conservation of whales and dolphins: science and practice. John Wiley and Sons, Chichester, United Kingdom.

Gray, C. 2016. Fisheries Biologist, Skokomish Natural Resources, Shelton, WA. April, 2016. Personal communication with Susan Bishop, NMFS WCR Sustainable Fisheries Division, regarding inseason update exploration for the Skokomish River.

Grayum, M. and P. Anderson. 2014. Directors, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission and Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. July 21, 2014. Letter to Bob Turner (Regional Assistant Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division) describing harvest management objectives for Puget Sound Chinook for the 2014-2015 season. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Grayum, M. and J. Unsworth. 2015. Directors, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission and Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. April 28, 2015. Letter to Bob Turner (Regional Assistant Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division) describing harvest management objectives for Puget Sound Chinook for the 2015-2016 season. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Guenther, T. J., R. W. Baird, R. L. Bates, P. M. Willis, R. L. Hahn, and S. G. Wischniowski. 1995. Strandings and fishing gear entanglements of cetaceans on the west coast of Canada in 1994. Paper SC/47/O6 presented to the International Whaling Commission, May 1995 (unpublished). 7 pp.

Gustafson, R.G., M.J. Ford, D. Teel, and J.S. Drake. 2010. Status review of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) in Washington, Oregon, and California. U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-105, 360 p.

Gustafson, R., Y.-W. Lee, E. Ward, K. Somers, V. Tuttle, and J. Jannot. 2016. Status review update of eulachon (*Thaleichthys pacificus*) listed under the Endangered Species Act: southern distinct population segment. 25 March 2016 Report to National Marine Fisheries Service – West Coast Region from Northwest Fisheries Science Center, 2725 Montlake Blvd. E., Seattle, WA 98112.

Haggarty, D. 2013. Rockfish conservation areas in B.C: Our current state of knowledge. Prepared for the David Suzuki Foundation and Gordon and Betty Moore Foundation.

Halderson, L. and L.J. Richards. 1987. Habitat use and young of the year copper rockfish ( ) in British Columbia. In Proc. In. Rockfish Symp., Anchorage, Alaska, p. 129-141. Alaska Sea grant Rep. 87-2, Fairbanks 99701.

Hamilton, M. 2008. Evaluation of management systems for KSn fisheries and potential management application to British Columbia's inshore rockfish fishery. Simon Fraser University.

Hamilton, T. J., A. Holcombe, M. Tresguerres. 2014. CO2-induced ocean acidification increases anxiety in Rockfish via alteration of GABAA receptor functioning. Proceedings of the Royal Society of Biological Sciences. 281 no. 1775 20132509.

Hannah, R. W., and S. A. Jones. 2007. Effectiveness of bycatch reduction devices (BRDs) in the ocean shrimp (*Pandalus jordani*) trawl fishery. Fisheries Research 85:217-225.

Hannah, R.W., and K.M. Matteson. 2007. Behavior of nine species of Pacific rockfish after hook-and line capture, recompression, and release. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 136: 24-33.

Hannah, R.W, a P.S. Rankin, and M. T.O. Blume. 2014. The divergent effect of capture depth associated barotrauma on post-recompression survival of canary rockfish (*Sebastes pinniger*) and yelloweye rockfish (*S. ruberrimus*).

Hanson, M. B., R. W. Baird, J. K. B. Ford, J. Hempelmann-Halos, D. M. Van Doornik, J. R. Candy, C. K. Emmons, G. S. Schorr, B. Gisborne, K. L. Ayres, S. K. Wasser, K. C. Balcomb, K. Balcomb-Bartok, J. G. Sneva, and M. J. Ford. 2010. Species and stock identification of prey consumed by endangered southern resident killer whales in their summer range. Endang.Spec. Res. 11: 69-82.

Hanson, M. B., and C. K. Emmons. 2010. Annual Residency Patterns of Southern Resident Killer Whales in the Inland Waters of Washington and British Columbia. Revised Draft - 30 October 10. 11p.

Hanson, M. B., C. K. Emmons, and E. J. Ward. 2013. Assessing the coastal occurrence of endangered killer whales using autonomous passive acoustic recorders. The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America. 134(5): 3486–3495.

Hard, J. J., J. M. Myers, M. J. Ford, R. G. Cope, G. R. Pess, R. S. Waples, G. A. Winans, B. A. Berejikian, F. W. Waknitz, P. B. Adams, P. A. Bisson, D. E. Campton, and R. R. Reisenbichler. 2007. Status review of Puget Sound steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-81, 137p.

Harvey, C.J. 2005. Effects of El Nino events on energy demand and egg production of rockfish (*Scorpaenidae: Sebastes*): a bioenergetics approach. Fishery Bulletin. 103: 71-83.

Hatchery Scientific Review Group (HSRG). 2000. Scientific framework for artificial propagation of salmon and steelhead. Puget Sound and Coastal Washington hatchery reform project. Long Live the Kings. Seattle, Washington. 65p.

HSRG. 2002. Hatchery reform recommendations (Eastern Straits, South Sound, Stillaguamish/Snohomish regions). Puget Sound and Coastal Washington hatchery reform project. Long Live the Kings. Seattle, Washington. 163p.

HSRG. 2009. Columbia River hatchery reform system wide report. 278p.

HSRG. 2015. Annual Report to Congress on the Science of Hatcheries, 2015: A report on the application of up-to-date science in the management of salmon and steelhead hatcheries in the Pacific Northwest. July 2015. 42 p.

Hauser, D.D.W., M.G. Logsdon, E.E. Holmes, G.R. VanBlaricom, R.W. Osborne. 2007. Summer distribution patterns of southern resident killer whales Orcinus orca: core areas and spatial segregation of social groups. Marine Ecology Progress Series 351:301-310.

Hay, D. E., and P. B. McCarter. 2000. Status of the eulachon *Thaleichthys pacificus* in Canada. Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Canadian Stock Assessment Secretariat, Research Document 2000-145. Ottawa, Ontario.

Hayden-Spear, J. 2006. Nearshore habitat associations of young-of-year copper (*Sebastes caurinus)* and quillback (*S. maliger)* rockfish in the San Juan Channel, Washington.

Healey, M. C., & Heard, W. R. (1984). Inter-and intra-population variation in the fecundity of chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) and its relevance to life history theory. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*, *41*, 1–8.

Healey, M.C. 1991. Life History of Chinook Salmon (Oncorhynchus tshawytscha) Pages 313-393 in C. Groot and L. Margolis, editors. Pacific Salmon Life Histories, UBC Press, University of British Columbia, Vancouver.

Henry, K. 2018. Kendall Henry, Fish and Wildlife Biologist, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington. April 17, 2018 and April 27, 2018. Personal communication via email with Molly Gorman, NMFS contractor, regarding incidental catch of steelhead in non-tribal fisheries and surveying of steelhead for marks in non-tribal fisheries.

Hilborn, R., T. P. Quinn, D. E. Schindler, and D. E. Rogers. 2003. Biocomplexity and fisheries sustainability. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences. Volume 100, pages 6,564 to 6,568.

Hilborn, R., S. P. Cox, F. M. D. Gulland, D. G. Hankin, N. T. Hobbs, D. E. Schindler, A. W. Trites. 2012. The effects of salmon fisheries on Southern Resident killer whales: Final report of the Independent Science Panel. Prepared with the assistance of D. R. Marmorek and A. W. Hall, ESSA Technologies Ltd., Vancouver, BC. National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle, WA, and Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver, BC.

Hixon, M. A., Johnson, D. W., & Sogard, S. M. (2014). BOFFFFs: On the importance of conserving old-growth age structure in fishery populations. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, *71*, 2171–2185. https:// doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst200.

HCSMP (Hood Canal Salmon Management Plan). 1985. U.S. v. Wash. Civil 9213, Ph. I (Proc. 83-8). Order Re: Hood Canal Management Plan (1986).

Hochachka, W.M. 2006. Unequal lifetime reproductive success, and its implication for small isolated populations. Pages: 155-173. In: Biology of small populations: the song sparrows of Mandarte Island. Edited by J.N.M. Smith, A.B. Marr, L.F. Keller and P.

Arcese. Oxford University Press; Oxford, United Kingdom.
Holt, M.M. 2008. Sound exposure and Southern Resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*): A review of current knowledge and data gaps. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC-89, U.S. Department of Commerce, Seattle, Washington.
Holt, M. M., D. P. Noren, R. C. Dunkin, and T. M. Williams. 2015. Vocal performance affects metabolic rate in dolphins: implications for animals communicating in noisy environments. J. Exp. Biol. 218:1647–1654.
Holt, M. M., M. B. Hanson, D. A. Giles, C. K. Emmons, and J. T. Hogan. 2017. Noise levels received by endangered killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) before and after vessel regulations. Endanger. Spec. Res. 34:15-26.

HCSMP (Hood Canal Salmon Management Plan). 1985. U.S. v. Wash. Civil 9213, Ph. I (Proc. 83-8). Order Re: Hood Canal Management Plan (1986).

Houghton, Juliana, Marla M. Holt, Deborah A. Giles, M. Bradley Hanson, Candice K. Emmons, Jeffrey T. Hogan, Trevor A. Branch, and Glenn R. VanBlaricom. The Relationship between Vessel Traffic and Noise Levels Received by Killer Whales (Orcinus orca). *PloS one* 10, no. 12 (2015): e0140119.

Houghton, J. 2014. The relationship between vessel traffic and noise levels received by killer whales and an evaluation of compliance with vessel regulations. Master's Thesis. University of Washington, Seattle. 103 pp.

Hoyt, E. 2001. Whale watching 2001: worldwide tourism numbers, expenditures, and expanding socioeconomic benefits. International Fund for Animal Welfare, Yarmouth, Massachusetts.

ISAB (Independent Science Advisory Board). 2007. Climate change impacts on Columbia River Basin fish and wildlife. Report ISAB 2007-2. Northwest Power and Conservation Council, Portland, Oregon. 146p http://www.nwcouncil.org/library/isab/isab2007-2.htm

Jacobsen, J.K. 1986. The behavior of *Orcinus orca* in the Johnstone Strait, British Columbia. In: Behavioral Biology of Killer Whales (ed. by J. Lockard & B. Kirkevold), pp. 135-185. Alan R. Liss Inc., New York.
James, C. 2015. Letter to Dan Tonnes, NMFS Protected Resources Division, describing derelict fishing nets in the Puget Sound area. April 23, 2015.

James, C. 2016. Chris James, Conservation Planning Biologist, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission, Olympia, Washington. May 5, 2016. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, NMFS, regarding responses to questions concerning the 2016 Puget Sound Tribal Chinook Harvest Management Plan.

James, C. 2017. 2016 reported loss of salmon fishing gear. Electronic letter from Chris James (Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission) to Dan Tonnes (National Marine Fisheries Service). Sent May 10, 2017.

James, C. 2018a. Chinook Salmon Harvest Performance Report for Skokomish and Puyallup River Chinook Salmon: 2011-2014 Fishing Years. Received via email from Chris James, Conservation Planning Biologist, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. January 26, 2018. 57 p.

James, C. 2018b. Chris James, Conservation Planning Biologist, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. April 18,2018. Personal communication via phone with Molly Gorman, NMFS contractor, regarding steelhead assessment for marks in treaty fisheries.

James, C. 2018c. Chris James, Conservation Planning Biologist, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. April 23, 2018. Personal communication via phone with Susan Bishop, NMFS, regarding projected steelhead harvest for coming fishing season.

James and Dufault 2018: Six page Preliminary 2017 Puget Sound Chinook Escapement and Catch Estimates. Chris James and Aaron Dufault, May 6, 2018. Emailed to Susan Bishop.

Jarvela-Rosenberger, A.L., M. MacDuffee, A.G.J. Rosenberger, and P.S. Ross. 2017. Oil spills and marine mammals in British Columbia, Canada: Development and application of a risk-based conceptual framework. Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol. 73:131-153.

Jarvis, E.T., and C.G. Lowe. 2008. The effects of barotrauma on the catch-and-release survival of southern California nearshore and shelf rockfish (Scorpaenidae, *Sebastes* spp.). Canadian Journal of Aquatic and Fishery Sciences 65: 1286-1296.

Jeffries, S. 2011. Trends in other Chinook salmon predators. Presentation to Southern Resident Killer Whale Workshop. September 22, 2011. Power Point presentation.

Jeffries, S. J., H. Huber, J. Calambokidis, and J. Laake. 2003. Trends and Status of Harbor Seals in Washington State. Journal of Wildlife Management. 67(1): 208-219.

Joblon, M. J., M. A. Pokra, B. Morse, C. T. Harry, K. S. Rose, S. M. Sharp, M. E. Niemeyer, K. M. Patchett, W. B. Sharp, and M. J. Moore. 2014. Body condition scoring system for delphinids based on short-beaked common dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*). J Mar Anin Ecol 7(2):5-13.

Jones, R. 2006. Updates to May 28, 2004, Salmonid Hatchery Inventory and Effects Evaluation Report. Memo to the file. 2 pp + attachment.

Jones, R. 2015. 2015 5-Year Review - Listing Status under the Endangered Species Act for Hatchery Programs Associated with 28 Salmon Evolutionarily Significant Units and Steelhead Distinct Population Segments. Memorandum from Rob Jones, SFD NMFS WCR, to Chris Yates, PRD NMFS WCR. September 28, 2015. 54 p.

Jones, R. 2016. Salmon Policy Analyst, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission, Olympia, Washington. June 16, 2016. Personal communication via email with Susan Bishop, NMFS, confirming co-manager agreement referenced in the co-manager June 13, 2016 letter, particularly on the plans for Skokomish and Nisqually, are the same as the plans referenced in Mike Grayum's May 25, 2016 letter to Bob Turner.

Jording, J. 2010. Fish and Wildlife Biologist, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. March 25, 2010. Personal communication with Amilee Wilson, NMFS NWR Sustainable Fisheries Division, regarding steelhead encounters in Puget Sound commercial salmon fisheries.

Kellar, N. M., T. R. Speakman, C. R. Smith, S. M. Lane, B. C. Balmer, M. L. Trego, K. N. Catelani, M. N. Robbins, C. D. Allen, R. S. Wells, E. S. Zolman, T. K. Rowles, L. H. Schwacke. 2017. Low reproductive success rates of common bottlenose dolphins Tursiops truncatus in the northern Gulf of Mexico following the Deepwater Horizon disaster (2010-2015). Endangered Species Research. 33: 143-158. doi:10.334/esr00775.

Krahn, M.M., P.R. Wade, S.T. Kalinowski, M.E. Dahlheim, B.L. Taylor, M.B. Hanson, G.M. Ylitalo, R.B. Angliss, J.E. Stein, and R.S. Waples. 2002. Status review of Southern Resident killer whales (Orcinus orca) under the Endangered Species Act, U.S. Dept. of Commerce, NOAA Tech. Memo., NMFS-NWFSC- 54, 133p.

Krahn, M.M., M.J. Ford, W.F. Perrin, P.R. Wade, R.B. Angliss, M.B. Hanson, B.L. Taylor, G.M. Ylitalo, M.E. Dahlheim, J.E. Stein, and R.S. Waples. 2004. 2004 status review of Southern Resident killer whales (*Orincus orca*) under the Endangered Species Act, U.S. Dept. of Commerce, NOAA Tech. Memo., NMFS-NWFSC-62, 73p.

Krahn, M.M., M.B. Hanson, R.W. Baird, R.H. Boyer, D.G. Burrows, C.K. Emmons, J.K.B. Ford, L.L. Jones, D.P. Noren, P.S. Ross, G.S. Schorr, and T.K. Collier. 2007. Persistent organic pollutants and stable isotopes in biopsy samples (2004/2006) from Southern Resident killer whales. Marine Pollution Bulletin 54:1903-1911.

Krahn, M.M., M.B. Hanson, G.S. Schorr, C.K. Emmons, D.G. Burrows, J.L. Bolton, R.W. Baird, and Gina Ylitalo. 2009. Effects of age, sex and reproductive status on persistent organic pollutant concentrations in “Southern Resident” killer whales. Marine Pollution Bulletin 58:1522-1529.

Kraig, E. 2017. Eric Kraig, Fish and Wildlife Biologist, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. April 2017. Personal communication with Bob Leland WDFW, regarding steelhead encounters in Puget Sound recreational salmon fisheries.

Lachmuth, C. L., L. G. Barrett-Lennard, D. Q. Steyn, and W. K. Milsom. 2011. Estimation of southern resident killer whale exposure to exhaust emissions from whale-watching vessels and potential adverse health effects and toxicity thresholds. Mar. Pollut. Bull. 62: 792-805. doi:10.1016/j.marpolbul.2011.01.002.

Lacy, R. C., R. Williams, E. Ashe, K. C. Balcomb III, L. J. N. Brent, C. W. Clark, D. P. Croft, D. A. Giles, M. MacDuffee, and P. C. Paquet. 2017. Evaluating anthropogenic threats to endangered killer whales to inform effective recovery plans. Scientific Reports. 7:14119. doi:10.1038/s41598-017-0.

Landahl, J. T., L. L. Johnson, J. E. Stein, T. K. Collier, and U. Varanasi. 1997. Approaches for Determining Effects of Pollution on Fish Populations of Puget Sound. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 126: 519-535.

Levin, P.S. and Williams, J.G. 2002. Interspecific effects of artificially propagated fish: An additional conservation risk for salmon. Conservation Biology 16: 1581-1587.

Legler, J., and A. Brouwer. 2003. Are brominated flame retardants endocrine disruptors? Environ. Int. 29:879–885.

Legler, J. 2008. New insights into the endocrine disrupting effects of brominated flame retardants. Chemosphere 73:216–222.

Leland, R. 2010. Robert Leland, Fish and Wildlife Biologist, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. April 1, 2010. Personal communication with Amilee Wilson, NMFS NWR Salmon Management Division, regarding steelhead encounters in Puget Sound recreational salmon fisheries.

Leland, R. 2018. Fisheries Biologist, NMFS, Lacey, WA. April 27, 2018. Personal communication via email with Molly Gorman, NMFS contractor, regarding steelhead marine abundance estimates with Excel spreadsheet attachment.

LLTK (Long Live The Kings). 2015. Why focus on the Salish Sea? Salish Sea Marine Survival Project. Long Live The Kings and Pacific Salmon Fund: http://marinesurvivalproject.com/the-project/why/. Accessed March 5, 2015.

Love, M.S., M. Carr, and L. Haldorson. 1991. The ecology of substrate-associated juveniles of the genus *Sebastes*. Env. Bio. Fish. 79: 533-545.

Love, M.S., M. M. Yoklavich, and L. Thorsteinson. 2002. The rockfishes of the Northeast Pacific. University of California Press, Berkeley, California.

Lummi Nation. 2015. Skookum Creek Hatchery South Fork Early Chinook Program. Draft Hatchery and Genetic Management Plan (HGMP). November 25, 2015. 67p.

Lundin, J. I., R. L. Dills, G. M. Ylitalo, M. B. Hanson, C. K. Emmons, G. S. Schorr, J. Ahmad, J. A. Hempelmann, K. M. Parsons, and S. K. Wasser. 2015. Persistent organic pollutant determination in killer whale scat samples: Optimization of a gas chromatography/mass spectrometry method and application to field samples. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol. DOI 10.1007/s00244-015-0218-8.

Lundin, J. I., G. M. Ylitalo, R. K. Booth, B. Anulacion, J. A. Hempelmann, K. M. Parsons, D. A. Giles, E. A. Seely, M. B. Hanson, C. K. Emmons, and S. K. Wasser. 2016. Modulation in persistent organic pollutant concentration and profile by prey availability and reproductive status in Southern Resident killer whale scat samples. Environ. Sci. Technol. doi: 10.1021/acs.est6b00825.

Lundin, J. I., G. M. Ylitalo, D. A. Giles, E. A. Seely, B. F. Anulacion, D. T. Boyd, J. A.

Hempelmann, K. M. Parsons, R. K. Booth, and S. K. Wasser. In review. Oil spill risk in the inland waters and Southern Resident killer whale vulnerability: Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon baseline data in scat samples.

Lusseau, D. and L. Bejder. 2007. The Long-term Consequences of Short-term Responses to Disturbance Experience from Whalewatching Impact Assessment. Int. J. Comp. Psych. 20: 228-236.

Lusseau, D., D. E. Bain, R. Williams, and J. C. Smith. 2009. Vessel traffic disrupts the foraging behavior of southern resident killer whales *Orcinus orca.* Endangered Species Research. 6: 211-221.

Mantua, N., Nathan, I. Tohver, and A. Hamlet. 2009. Impacts of climate change on key aspects of freshwater salmon habitat in Washington State. *In*: Washington Climate Change Impacts Assessment: Evaluating Washington's future in a changing climate. Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington. Available at: http://cses.washington.edu/db/pdf/wacciach6salmon649.pdf

Mantua, N., I. Tohver, and A. Hamlet. 2010. Climate change impacts on streamflow extremes and summertime stream temperature and their possible consequences for freshwater salmon habitat in Washington State. Climate Change 102:187-223.

Marshall, A. 1999. Genetic analyses of 1998 Hood Canal area Chinook samples. Memorandum to Distribution List. May 4, 1999. 6 p.

Marshall, A. 2000. Genetic analyses of 1999 Hood Canal area Chinook samples. Memorandum to Distribution List. May 31, 2000. 10 p.

Marshall, A. R. 2013. Fish and Wildlife Biologist, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington. February 14, 2013. Personal communication with Amilee Wilson, NMFS, regarding Puget Sound natural-origin steelhead escapement from the Salmonid Stock Inventory (SaSI) online reports.

Marshall, A. 2014. Anne Marshall, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, personal communication via email with Amilee Wilson, National Marine Fisheries Service regarding escapement and catch estimates for Puget Sound steelhead. April 16, 2014.

Marshall, A. 2018. Anne Marshall, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, personal communication via email with Molly Gorman, contractor National Marine Fisheries Service regarding escapement and catch estimates for Puget Sound steelhead. April 4, 2018.

Matkin, C. 1994. An observer's guide to the killer whales of Prince William Sound. Prince William Sound Books, Valdez, Alaska.

Matkin, C.O., E.L. Saulitis, G. M. Ellis, P. Olesiuk, S.D. Rice. 2008. Ongoing population-level impacts on killer whales *Orcinus orca* following the 'Exxon Valdez' oil spill in Prince William Sound, Alaska. Marine Ecology Progress Series. 356: 269-281.

Matkin, C. O., M. J. Moore, and F. M. D. Gulland. 2017. Review of Recent Research on

Southern Resident Killer Whales (SRKW) to Detect Evidence of Poor Body Condition in the Population. Report from The Killer Whale Health Assessment Workshop, March 6 and 7, 2017.

Matthews, K.R. 1989. A comparative study of habitat use by young-of-the year, subadult, and adult rockfishes on four habitat types in Central Puget Sound. Fishery Bulletin, U.S. 88-223-239.

Mauger,G.S., J.H. Casola, H.A. Morgan, R.L. Strauch, B. Jones, B. Curry, T.M. Busch Isaksen, L.Whitely Binder, M.B. Krosby, and A.K. Snover. 2015. *State of Knowledge: Climate Change in Puget Sound.* Report prepared for the Puget Sound Partnership and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington, Seattle. doi:10.7915/CIG93777D https://cig.uw.edu/resources/special-reports/ps-sok/

May, C.L., J.R. Koseff, L.V. Lucas, J.E. Cloern and D.H. Schoellhamer. 2003. Effects of spatial and temporal variability of turbidity on phytoplankton blooms, Marine Ecology Progress Series 254 (2003), pp. 111–128.

McCullough, D. 1999 . A Review and Synthesis of Effects of Alterations to the Water Temperature Regime on Freshwater Life Stages of Salmonids, with Special Reference to Chinook Salmon. Columbia Intertribal Fisheries Commission, Portland, OR. Prepared for the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Region 10. Published as EPA 910-R-99-010.

McElhany, P., M. H. Ruckelshaus, M. J. Ford, T. C. Wainwright. 2000. Viable salmonid populations and the recovery of evolutionarily significant units. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, NOAA Tech. Memo., NMFS-NWFSC-42, 156p.

McKenna, M.F., S.M. Wiggins, and J.A. Hildebrand. 2013. Relationships Between Container Ship Underwater Noise Levels and Ship Design, Operational and Oceanographic Conditions. Sci. Rep. 3:1-10. DOI: 10.1038/srep01760.

Melbourne, B. A., and A. Hastings. 2008. Extinction risk depends strongly on factors contributing to stochasticity. Nature. 454(7200): 100-103.

Miller, B.S., and S.F. Borton. 1980. Geographical distribution of Puget Sound fishes: Maps and data source sheets. University of Washington Fisheries Research Institute, 3 vols.

Miller, A. W, A. C. Reynolds, C. Sobrino, G. F. Riedel. 2009. Shellfish Face Uncertain Future in High CO2 World: Influence of Acidification on Oyster Larvae Calcification and Growth in Estuaries. PLoS ONE, 4:5 e5661.

Mongillo, T.M., G.M. Ylitalo, L.D. Rhodes, S.M. O'Neill, D.P. Noren, M.B. Hanson. 2016. Exposure to a mixture of toxic chemicals: Implications to the health of endangered Southern Resident killer whales. U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-X

Moore, M., B. Berejikian, F. Goetz, T. Quinn, S. Hodgson, E. Connor, and A. Berger. 2014.

Early marine survival of steelhead smolts in Puget Sound. Salish Sea Ecosystem Conference. May 1, 2014; Paper 199: http://cedar.wwu.edu/ssec/2014ssec/Day2/199. Accessed March 5, 2015.

Moscrip, A.L. and D.R. Montgomery. 1997. Urbanization Flood, Frequency and Salmon Abundance in Puget Lowland Streams. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 33 (1997) (6), pp. 1289–1297.

Moser, H. G., R. L. Charter, W. Watson, D. A. Ambrose, J. L. Butler, J. Charter, and E. M. Sandknop. 2000. Abundance and distribution of rockfish (*Sebastes*) larvae in the southern California Bight in relation to environmental conditions and fishery exploitation. Calif. Coop. Ocean. Fish. Investig. Rep. 41:132–147.

Mote, P. W. and E. P. Salathé. 2009. Future climate in the Pacific Northwest. In: *Washington Climate Change Impacts Assessment: Evaluating Washington's future in a changing climate*. Climate Impacts Group, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington. Available at: http://www.cses.washington.edu/db/pdf/wacciach1scenarios642.pdf.

Moulton, L.L. and B.S. Miller. 1987. Characterization of Puget Sound marine fishes: survey of available data. Fisheries Research Institute, School of Fisheries, University of Washington. FRI-UW 8716.

MIT (Muckleshoot Indian Tribe). 2016. Muckleshoot Indian Tribe 2016 Warmwater Test Fishery Proposal. Muckleshoot Indian Tribe. Auburn, Washington. March 26, 2016. 2 p.

Myers, J. M., R. G. Kope, G. J. Bryant, D. Teel, L. J. Lierheimer, T. C. Wainwright, W. S. Grant, F. W. Waknitz, K. Neely, S. T. Lindley, and R. S. Waples. 1998. Status Review of Chinook Salmon from Washington, Idaho, Oregon, and California, U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-35, 443p.

Naish, K.A., J.E. Taylor, III, P.S. Levin, T.P. Quinn, J.R. Winton, D. Huppert, and R. Hilborn. 2007. An evaluation of the effects of conservation and fishery enhancement hatcheries on wild populations of salmon. Advances in Marine Biology 53: 61-194.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 1996. Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation – Biological Opinion. The Fishery Management Plan for commercial and recreational salmon fisheries off the coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California of the Pacific Fishery Management Council. March 8, 1996.

NMFS. 1999. Endangered Species Act – Section 7 Consultation – Supplemental Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement. The Pacific Coast Salmon Plan and Amendment 13 to the Plan. NMFS, Protected Resources Division. April 28, 1999. 39 p.

NMFS. 2000a. Endangered Species Act - Reinitiated Section 7 Consultation - Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement. Effects of Pacific Coast Salmon Plan on California Central Valley spring-run Chinook, and California coastal Chinook salmon. NMFS, Protected Resources Division. April 28, 2000. 31 p.

NMFS. 2000b. A risk assessment procedure for evaluating harvest mortality of Pacific salmonids. NMFS, Northwest Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division. May 30, 2000. 33 p.

NMFS. 2000c. Guidelines for Electrofishing Waters Containing Salmonids Listed Under the Endangered Species Act. NMFS Northwest and Southwest Offices of the Protected Resources Division. June 2000. 5 p.

NMFS. 2001a. Determination Memorandum: Summer Chum Salmon Conservation Initiative - An Implementation Plan to Recover Summer Chum in the Hood Canal and Strait of Juan de Fuca - Harvest Management Component. April 27, 2001.

NMFS. 2001b. Endangered Species Act - Reinitiated Section 7 Consultation Biological Opinion and Incidental Take Statement - Effects of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan and U.S. Fraser Panel fisheries on Upper Willamette River Chinook, Lower Columbia River Chinook, Lower Columbia River chum. NMFS, Protected Resources Division. April 30, 2001. 55 p.

NMFS. 2004a. Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7 Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation. Effects of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan and U.S. Fraser Panel fisheries on the Puget Sound Chinook and Lower Columbia River Chinook Salmon Evolutionarily Significant Units. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Region. 89 p.

NMFS. 2004b. NOAA Fisheries' Approach to Making Determinations Pursuant to the Endangered Species Act about the Effects of Harvest Actions on Listed Pacific Salmon and Steelhead. NMFS, Northwest Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division. November 16, 2004. 13 p.

NMFS. 2004c. Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Resource Management Plan Final Environmental Impact Statement. NMFS Northwest Region with Assistance from the Puget Sound Treaty Tribes and Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. December 2004. 2 volumes.

NMFS. 2004d. Salmonid Hatchery Inventory and Effects Evaluation Report, an evaluation of the effects of artificial propagation on the status and likelihood of extinction of west coast salmon and steelhead under the Federal Endangered Species Act. NMFS-NWR/SWR Technical Memorandum. June.

NMFS. 2005a. Chart Assessment for the Puget Sound Chinook Salmon ESU. Appendix A of the Final Assessment of NOAA Fisheries' Critical Habitat Analytical Review Teams for 12 Evolutionarily Significant Units of West Coast Salmon and Steelhead. Appendix A. NMFS Northwest Protected Resources Division 1201 NE Lloyd Blvd., Suite 1100, Portland, Oregon 97232-1274. August 2005. 55 p.

NMFS. 2005b. Evaluation of and Recommended Determination on a Resource Management Plan (RMP), Pursuant to the Salmon and Steelhead 4(d) Rule. Puget Sound Comprehensive Chinook Management Plan: Harvest Management Component. NMFS, Northwest Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division. January 27, 2005. 99 p.

NMFS. 2005c. A Joint Tribal and State Puget Sound Chinook salmon harvest Resource

Management Plan (RMP) submitted under Limit 6 of a section 4(d) Rule of the Endangered Species Act (ESA) - Decision Memorandum. Memo from S. Freese to D. Robert Lohn. NMFS NW Region. March 4, 2005.

NMFS. 2005d. Memorandum to the Record. From Rodney R. McInnis. Subject: Endangered Species Section 7 Consultation on the Effects of Ocean Salmon Fisheries on California Coastal Chinook Salmon: Performance of the Klamath Ocean Harvest Model in 2004 and Implementation of the Reasonable and Prudent Alternative of the April 28, 2000, Biological Opinion. June 13, 2005. 14 p.

NMFS. 2006a. Biological Opinion on the effects of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan and U.S. Fraser Panel Fisheries on the Lower Columbia River Coho and Lower Columbia River Chinook Evolutionarily Significant Units Listed Under the Endangered Species Act and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation. NMFS, Northwest Region. April 28, 2008. 120 p.

NMFS. 2006b. Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation-Biological Opinion and Section 10 Statement of Findings and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation. Washington State Forest Practices Habitat Conservation Plan. NMFS, Northwest Region. June 5, 2006. 335 p.

NMFS. 2006c. Final supplement to the Shared Strategy's Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan. NMFS, Northwest Region. November 17, 2006. 43 p.

NMFS. 2008a. Endangered Species Act - Section 7(a)(2) Consultation Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation. Consultation on Treaty Indian and Non-Indian Fisheries in the Columbia River Basin subject to the 2008-2017 *U.S. v. Oregon* Management Agreement. NMFS, Portland, Oregon. F/NWR/2008/02406. May 5, 2008. 685p.

NMFS. 2008b. Endangered Species Act – Section 7 Consultation Biological Opinion And Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation on EPA's Proposed Approval of Revised Washington Water Quality Standards for Designated Uses, Temperature, Dissolved Oxygen, and Other Revisions. National Marine Fisheries Service Northwest Region. February 5, 2008. 133 p.

NMFS. 2008c. Endangered Species Act – Section 7 Consultation Final Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation. Implementation of the National Flood Insurance Program in the State of Washington Phase One Document – Puget Sound Region. NMFS, Northwest Region. September 22, 2008. 226 p.

NMFS. 2008d. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Consultation Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation on the Approval of Revised Regimes under the Pacific Salmon Treaty and the Deferral of Management to Alaska of Certain Fisheries Included in those Regimes. NMFS, Northwest Region. December 22, 2008. 373 p.

NMFS. 2008e. Recovery Plan for Southern Resident Killer Whales (Orcinus orca). NMFS.

Northwest Region, Seattle, Washington.

NMFS. 2010a. Biological opinion on the effects of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan and U.S. Fraser Panel fisheries in 2010 and 2011 on the Lower Columbia River Chinook Evolutionarily Significant Unit and the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Rockfish Distinct Population Segments listed under the Endangered Species Act and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation. NMFS, Northwest Region. April 30, 2010. 150 p.

NMFS. 2010b. Unpublished data on Puget Sound steelhead harvest rates from 2001/2002 to 2006/2007 time period. National Marine Fisheries Service, Sustainable Fisheries Division. Seattle, Washington.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2010c. Final Environmental Assessment for New Regulations to Protect Killer Whales from Vessel Effects in Inland Waters of Washington. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Region. November 2010.

NMFS. 2011a. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation - National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) Evaluation of the 2010-2014 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Resource Management Plan under Limit 6 of the 4(d) Rule, Impacts of Programs Administered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs that Support Puget Sound Tribal Salmon Fisheries, Salmon Fishing Activities Authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service in Puget Sound, NMFS' Issuance of Regulations to Give Effect to In-season Orders of the Fraser River Panel. NMFS, Northwest Region. F/NWR/2010/0605. May 27, 2011. 220 p.

NMFS. 2011b. Evaluation of and recommended determination on a Resource Management Plan (RMP), pursuant to the salmon and steelhead 4(d) Rule-Comprehensive Management Plan for Puget Sound Chinook: Harvest Management Component. NMFS, Northwest Region. May 27, 2011. 244 p.

NMFS. 2011c. Final Environmental Assessment for New Regulations to Protect Killer Whales from Vessel Effects in Inland Waters of Washington. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Region. November 2010.

NMFS. 2012a. Designation of critical habitat for Lower Columbia River coho salmon and Puget Sound steelhead draft biological report. NMFS, Northwest Region. Portland, Oregon. November 2012. 26 p.

NMFS. 2012b. Designation of critical habitat for Lower Columbia River coho salmon and Puget Sound steelhead draft section 4(b)(2) report. NMFS, Northwest Region. Portland, Oregon. November 2012. 99 p.

NMFS. 2012c. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation - Effects of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan on the Lower Columbia River Chinook Evolutionarily Significant Unit. NMFS, Northwest Region. April 26, 2012. 128 p.

NMFS. 2012d. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation - Consultation on the Issuance of Four ESA Section l0(a)(1)(A) Scientific Research Permits and One ESA Section l0(a)(1 )(B) permit affecting Salmon, Steelhead, Rockfish, and Eulachon in the Pacific Northwest. NMFS Consultation Number: 20l2/F/NWRJ2012101984. NMFS, Northwest Region. October 2, 2012. 125 p.

NMFS. 2013a. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation - Washington State Department of Transportation Preservation, Improvement, and Maintenance Activities. NMFS Consultation Number: 2012/00293. NMFS Northwest Region. January 2, 2013.

NMFS. 2013b. ESA Recovery Plan for Lower Columbia River Coho Salmon, Lower Columbia River Chinook Salmon, Columbia River Chum Salmon, and Lower Columbia River Steelhead. NMFS. July 12, 2013.

NMFS. 2014a. Endangered Species Act Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation – Impacts of Programs Administered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs that Support Puget Sound Tribal Salmon Fisheries, Salmon Fishing Activities Authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and Fisheries Authorized by the U.S. Fraser Panel in 2014. NMFS, West Coast Region. F/WCR-2014-578. May 1, 2014. 156 p.

NMFS. 2014b. Draft environmental impact statement on two joint state and tribal resource management plans for Puget Sound salmon and steelhead hatchery programs. West Coast Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division. Lacey, WA

NMFS. 2014c. Endangered Species Act Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation – Impacts of Programs Administered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs that Support Puget Sound Tribal Salmon Fisheries, Salmon Fishing Activities Authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and Fisheries Authorized by the U.S. Fraser Panel in 2014. NMFS, West Coast Region. F/WCR-2014-578. May 1, 2014. 156 p.

NMFS. 2015a. Endangered Species Act Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation – Effects of the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan on the Lower Columbia River Coho Evolutionarily Significant Unit Listed Under the Endangered Species Act. NMFS, West Coast Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division. WCR-2015-2026. April 9, 2015. 66 p.

NMFS. 2015b. Endangered Species Act Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation – Impacts of Programs Administered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs that Support Puget Sound Tribal Salmon Fisheries, Salmon Fishing Activities Authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and Fisheries Authorized by the U.S. Fraser Panel in 2015. NMFS, West Coast Region. F/WCR-2015-2433. May 7, 2015. 174 p.

NMFS. 2015c. Workshop to assess causes of decreased survival and reproduction in Southern Resident killer whales: Priorities report. December 2015.

NMFS. 2016a. Endangered Species Act Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation – Impacts of the Role of the BIA with Respect to the Management, Enforcement, and Monitoring of Puget Sound Tribal Salmon Fisheries, Salmon Fishing Activities Authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and Fisheries Authorized by the U.S. Fraser Panel in 2016. NMFS, West Coast Region. F/WCR-2016-4914. June 24, 2016. 196 p.

NMFS. 2016b. 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Yelloweye rockfish (*Sebastes ruberrimus*), canary rockfish (*Sebastes pinniger*), and boaccio (*Sebastes paucispinis*) of the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin. Office of Protected Resources, Seattle, Washington April 2016.

NMFS 2016c. Final environmental impact statement to analyze the impacts of NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service proposed 4(d) determination under limit 6 for five early winter steelhead hatchery programs in Puget Sound. Sustainable Fisheries Division. Lacey, WA. 192 pages, plus appendices.

NMFS. 2016d. Endangered Species Act - Section 7 Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation for Three Hatchery and Genetic Management Plans for Early Winter Steelhead in the Dungeness, Nooksack, and Stillaguamish River basins under Limit 6 of the Endangered Species Act Section 4(d) Rule. NMFS Consultation Number: WCR-2015-2024.

NMFS. 2016e. Draft Rockfish Recovery Plan: Puget Sound / Georgia Basin yelloweye rockfish (*Sebastes ruberrimus*) and bocaccio (*Sebastes paucispinis*). National Marine Fisheries Service. Seattle, WA. June 2016.

NMFS. 2016f. Southern Resident Killer Whales (Orcinus orca) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. December 2016. NMFS, West Coast Region, Seattle, Washington. 74p

NMFS 2017a. 2016 5-Year Review: Summary & Evaluation of Puget Sound Chinook Salmon Hood Canal Summer-run Chum Salmon Puget Sound Steelhead. NMFS, West Coast Region. April 6, 2017. 88 p.

NMFS. 2017b. Unpublished data on Puget Sound steelhead harvest rates from 2008/2009 to 2015/2016 time period. National Marine Fisheries Service, Sustainable Fisheries Division. Seattle, Washington.

NMFS 2017c. Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation – Consultation on the implementation of the area 2A (U.S.West Coast) halibut catch sharing plan for 2017. NMFS, West Coast Region. F/WCR-2017-6480. March 17, 2017. 218 p.

NMFS. 2017d. Endangered Species Act - Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response. Impacts of the Role of the BIA Under its Authority to Assist with the Development of the 2017-2018 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan, Salmon Fishing Activities Authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and Fisheries Authorized by the U.S. Fraser Panel in 2017. NMFS West Coast Region. NMFS Consultation Number: F/WCR-2017-6766. May 3, 2017. 201 p.

NMFS. 2017e. Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation. National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) Evaluation of Six Hatchery and Genetic Management Plans for Snohomish River basin Salmon under Limit 6 of the Endangered Species Act Section 4(d) Rule. NMFS West Coast Region. NMFS Consultation Number: NWR-2013-9699.

NMFS. 2017f. Rockfish recovery plan for Puget Sound/Georgia Basin Yelloweye Rockfish (Sebastes ruberrimus) and Bocaccio (Sebastes paucispinis) Prepared by Office of Protected Resources, West Coast Regional Office, National Marine Fisheries Service. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. October 13, 2017.

NMFS. 2017g. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation. NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service's implementation of the Mitchell Act Final Environmental Impact Statement preferred alternative and administration of Mitchell Act hatchery funding. January 15, 2017. NMFS Consultation No.: WCR-2014-697. 535p.

NMFS. 2017h. Final environmental impact statement to analyze impacts of NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service Proposed 4(d) determination under limit 6 for five early winter steelhead hatchery programs in Puget Sound. Document available at http://www.westcoast.fisheries.noaa.gov/hatcheries/pshatcheries/ps_ews_final.html.

NMFS. 2018a. Endangered Species Act Section (ESA) 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response. ESA Section 4(d), Limit 6, determination for the Skagit River steelhead fishery Resource Management Plan (RMP), as submitted by the Sauk-Suiattle Indian Tribe, Swinomish Indian Tribal Community, Upper Skagit Indian Tribe, Skagit River System Cooperative, and the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (WDFW). April 11, 2018. NMFS Consultation No.: WCR-2017-7053. 110p.

NMFS. 2018b. National Marine Fisheries Service Endandgered Species Act (ESA) Section 7(a)(2) Biological Opinion and Manguson-Stevens Act Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Consultation. Consultation on the implementation of the Area 2A (U.S. West Coast) Pacific halibut catch sharing plan. March 2018. NMFS Consultation No.: WCR-2017-8426.

NMFS. In Press. An Updated Literature Review Examining the Impacts of Tourism on Marine Mammals over the Last Fifteen Years (2000-2015) to Inform Research and Management Programs. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southeast Region, St. Petersburg, Florida. NMFS-SERO-X.

Newton, J. and K. Van Voorhis. 2002. Seasonal Patterns and Controlling Factors of Primary

Production in Puget Sound's Central Basin and Possession Sound. Publication # 02-03-059.

Nichol, D. G., and E. K. Pikitch. 1994. Reproduction of darkblotched rockfish off the Oregon coast. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 123(4): 469-481.

Nickelson, T.E., Solazzi, M.F., and S.L. Johnson. 1986. Use of hatchery coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) presmolts to rebuild wild populations in Oregon coastal streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 43: 2443-2449.

NCSMP. 2011. Nisqually Chinook Stock Management Plan. January 2011. 81 p.

Nisqually Watershed Council. 2011. Website with information and documentation for the Nisqually River Chinook Stock Management Plan. Available at http://nisquallyriver.org/home/chinookplan/

Nisqually Chinook Workgroup. 2017. Stock Management Plan for Nisqually Fall Chinook Recovery. December 2017. 105 p.

Noren D.P., Rea L., Loughlin T. 2009. A model to predict fasting capacities and utilization of body energy stores in weaned Steller sea lions (*Eumetopias jubatus*) during periods of reduced prey availability. Canadian Journal of Zoology 87:852-864.

Noren, D. P., A. H.Johnson, D. Rehder, and A. Larson. 2009a. Close approaches by vessels elicit surface active displays by Southern Resident killer whales. Endangered Species Research. 8:179-192.

Noren, D.P. 2011. Estimated field metabolic rates and prey requirements of resident killer whales. Marine Mammal Science 27(1): 60-77.

Noren, D. P., R. C. Dunkin, T. M. Williams, and M. M. Holt. 2012. Energetic coast of behaviors performed in response to vessel disturbance: one link the in population consequences of acoustic disturbance model. *In*: Anthony Hawkins and Arthur N. Popper, Eds. The Effects of Noise on Aquatic Life, pp. 427–430.

Noren D.P., M.M. Holt, R.C. Dunkin, and T.M. Williams. 2013. The metabolic cost of communicative sound production in bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*). J. Exp. Biol. 216:1624–1629. Pashin and Bakhitova 1979

Noren, D. P. and D. D. W. Hauser. 2016. Surface-Based Observation Can Be Used to Assess Behavior and Fine-Scale Habitat Use by an Endangered Killer Whale (*Orcinus orca*) Population. Aquatic Mammals. Volume 42 (Issue 2), pages 168 to 183.

Norman, S.A., C.E. Bowlby, M.S. Brancato, J. Calambokidis, D. Duffield, P.J. Gearin, T.A. Gornall, M.E. Gosho, B. Hanson, J. Hodder, S.J. Jeffries, B. Lagerquist, D.M. Lanbourn, B. Mate, B. Norberg, R.W. Osborne, J.A. Rash, S. Riemer, and J. Scordino. 2004. Cetacean strandings in Oregon and Washington between 1930 and 2002. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 6: 87-99.

NFWF. 2015. 2015 Killer Whale Research and Conservation Program Grant Slate. National Fish and Wildlife Foundation. http://www.nfwf.org/killerwhales/Documents/killerwhalegrants15-1027.pdf

NRC (National Research Council). 2003. Ocean noise and marine mammals. National Academy Press, Washington, D.C.

NRC (Natural Resource Consultants). 2007. Derelict fishing gear priority ranking project. Prepared for the Northwest Straights Initiative.

NRC. 2008. Rates of marine species mortality caused by derelict fishing nets in Puget Sound, Washington. Prepared for the Northwest Straits Initiative.

National Research Council. 2008. Tackling marine debris in the 21st century. Committe on the effectiveness of internaiton and national measures to prevent and reduce marine debris and its impacts. Ocean Studies Board, Division of Earth and Life Studies. National Research Council, of the National Academies, The Nation Academies Press, Washington, D.C., www.nap.edu.

NRC. 2010. Rockfish within derelict gear. Electronic communication from Jeff June to Dan Tonnes. Sent February 8, 2010.

NRC. 2014. Estimates of remaining derelict fishing gear in the Puget Sound. Electronic communication between Kyle Antonelis (NRC) and Dan Tonnes (NOAA) April 4, 2014.

Northwest Straits Initiative. 2014. Derelict fishing gear removal data in the Puget Sound. Available at http://www.derelictgear.org/. Accessed on January 2014.

NWFSC (Northwest Fisheries Science Center). 2015. Status review update for Pacific salmon and steelhead listed under the Endangered Species Act: Pacific Northwest.

O'Connor, S., R. Campbell, H. Cortez, and T. Knowles. 2009. Whale Watching Worldwide: Tourism numbers, expenditures and expanding economic benefits, a special report from the International Fund for Animal Welfare. Economists at Large, Yarmouth, MA.

Ohlberger, J., E.J. Ward, D.E. Schindler, and B. Lewis. 2018. Demographic changes in Chinook salmon across the Northeast Pacific Ocean. Fish and Fisheries. 2018;1-14.

Olander, D. 1991. Northwest Coastal Fishing Guide. Frank Amato Publications, Portland, Oregon.

Olesiuk, P. F., M. A. Bigg, and G. M. Ellis. 1990. Life history and population dynamics of resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in the coastal waters of British Columbia and Washington State. Pages 209-244 in International Whaling Commission, Individual Recognition of Cetaceans: Use of Photo-Identification and Other Techniques to Estimate Population Parameters (Special Issue 12), incorporating the proceedings of the symposium and workshop on individual recognition and the estimation of cetacean population parameters.

Olesiuk, P. F., G. M. Ellis, and J. K. B. Ford. 2005. Life history and population dynamics of northern resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) in British Columbia (pages 1-75). Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat.

Olson, J. 2017. Southern Resident Killer Whale Sighting Compilation 1948-2016. Final Program Report: SRKW Sighting Compilation 13th Edition. May 25, 2017. Contract No. RA133F-12-CQ-0057.

O'Neill, S.M. and J.E. West. 2009. Marine Distribution, Life History Traits, and the Accumulation of Polychlorinated Biphenyls in Chinook Salmon from Puget Sound, Washington. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 138: 616-632.

O'Neill, S.M., G. M. Ylitalo, and J. E. West. 2014. Energy content of Pacific salmon as prey of northern and southern resident killer whales. Endanger. Species Res. 25:265–281.

Orr J.W., M.A. Brown, and D.C. Baker. 2000. Guide to rockfishes (Scorpaenidae) of the genera Sebastes, Sebastolobus, and Abelosebastes of the northeast Pacific Ocean, Second Edition. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-AFSC.

Osborne, R.W. 1999. A historical ecology of Salish Sea "resident" killer whales (*Orcinus orca*):with implications for management. Doctoral dissertation. University of Victoria,Victoria, British Columbia.

Pacific Salmon Commission - Chinook Technical Committee Annual Report. 2016.

PFMC (Pacific Fishery Management Council) 2008. Groundfish Management Team (GMT) report on the development of a discard mortality matrix for ocean and estuary recreational fisheries. MS Report 15pp.

PFMC. 2011. Coastal Pelagic Species Fishery Management Plan As Amended Through Amendment 13, PFMC. Portland, OR. September 2011. 146 p. Available at: http://www.pcouncil.org/coastal-pelagic-species/fishery-management-plan-and-amendments/.

PFMC. 2014a. Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan for the California, Oregon, and Washington Groundfish Fishery, PFMC. Portland, OR. May 2014. 146 p. Available at: http://www.pcouncil.org/groundfish/fishery-management-plan/.

PFMC. 2014b. Pacific Coast Salmon Fishery Management Plan for Commercial and Recreational Salmon Fisheries off the Coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California as Amended through Amendment 18, PFMC. Portland, OR. 91 p. Available at: http://www.pcouncil.org/salmon/fishery-management-plan/current-management-plan/.

PFMC. 2014c. Groundfish Management Team (GMT) report on proposed discard mortality for cowcod, canary, and yelloweye rockfish released using descending devices in the recreational fishery. Supplemental GMT Report 2.

PFMC. 2017. Preseason Report I: Stock Abundance Analysis and Environmental Assessment Part 1 for 2017 Ocean Salmon Fishery Regulations. (Document prepared for the Council and its advisory entities.). Pacific Fishery Management Council, 7700 NE

Ambassador Place, Suite 101, Portland, Oregon 97220-1384.

Pacunski, R., Palsson, W. and G. Greene. 2013. Estimating fish abundance and community composition on rocky habitats in the San Juan Islands using a small remotely operated vehicle. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Fish Program Fish Management Division.

Palsson, W.A. 1998. Monitoring the response of rockfishes to protected areas. Pages 64-73. In: Marine Harvest Refugia for West Coast Rockfish: A Workshop, M. Yoklavich ed., NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-255, 159 p.

Palsson W. A. 2004. The development of criteria for establishing and monitoring no-take refuges for rockfishes and other rocky habitat fishes in Puget Sound. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Palsson, W. Fishery Biologist, WDFW, Olympia, WA. Personal communication to Marc Romano. 2009, NMFS NWR regarding bycatch of eulachon in Puget Sound commercial pink shrimp trawl fisheries.

Palsson, W.A. and R.E. Pacunski. 1995. The response of rocky reef fishes to harvest refugia in Puget Sound. Pages 224-234, In: Puget Sound Research '95, Volume 1, Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, Olympia, WA. 1038 p.

Palsson, W. A., T.-S. Tsou, G. G. Barbman, R. M. Buckley, J. E. West, M. L. Mills, Y. W. Cheng, and R. E. Pacunski. 2009. The biology and assessment of rockfishes in Puget Sound. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia WA.

Parker, S. J., H. I. McElderry, P. S. Rankin, and R. W. Hannah. 2006. Buoyancy Regulation and Barotrauma in Two Species of Nearshore Rockfish. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 135:1213-1223.

Pearcy, W., and N. Mantua. 1999. Changing ocean conditions and their effects on steelhead. University of Washington. Seattle, Washington. 13 p.

Pettis H. M., R. M. Rolland, P. K. Hamilton, S. Brault, A. R. Knowlton, S. D. Kraus. 2004. Visual health assessment of North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) using photographs. Can J Zool 82:8-19.

Phinney, C and B. Patten. 2018. Chris Phinney, Puyallup Tribal Fisheries Department, and Bill Patten, Northwest Fisheries Commission personal communication with Susan Bishop, National Marine Fisheries Service regarding correction to model inputs for the Puyallup River treaty fishery. April 6, 2018.

Pietsch, T.W. and J.W. Orr. 2015. Fishes of the Salish Sea: a compilation and distributional analysis. NOAA Professional Paper NMFS 18, 106 p. doe:10.7755/PP.18

Pitcher, K. W., P. F. Olesiuk, R. F. Brown, M. S. Lowry, S. J. Jeffries, J. L. Sease, W. L. Perryman, C. E. Stinchcomb, and L. F. Lowry. 2007. Abundance and distribution of the eastern North Pacific Steller sea lion (*Eumetopias jubatus* ) population. Fish. Bull. 107:102-115.

Pribyl A. L., C. B. Schreck, M. L. Kent and S. J. Parker. 2009. The differential response to decompression in three species of nearshore Pacific rockfish. North American Journal of Fisheries Management. Volume 29, pages 1479–1486.

Pribyl A.L., M.L. Kent, S.J. Parker and C.B. Schreck. 2011. The response to forced decompression in six species of Pacific rockfish. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 140: 374–383.

Puget Sound Domain Team. 2010. Puget Sound Chinook Salmon Population Recovery Approach (PRA) - NMFS Northwest Region Approach for Distinguishing Among Individual Puget Sound Chinook Salmon ESU Populations and Watersheds for ESA Consultation and Recovery Planning Purposes. NMFS Northwest Region. November 30, 2010. 19 p.+ appendices.

PSIT and WDFW. 2010a. Comprehensive Management Plan for Puget Sound Chinook: Harvest Management Component. April 12, 2010. 230 p.

PSIT and WDFW. 2010b. Draft Puget Sound Steelhead Harvest Management Plan. Available from Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. January 7, 2010. 224p.

PSIT and WDFW. 2013. Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Performance Assessment 2003– 2010. July 2013. 111 p.

PSTT and WDFW (Puget Sound Treaty Tribes and Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 2004. Resource management plan - Puget Sound hatchery strategies for steelhead, coho salmon, chum salmon, sockeye salmon and pink salmon. March 31, 2004. Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. Lacey, WA. 194 p.

Puget Sound Action Team. 2007. State of the Sound 2007. Puget Sound Action Team, Olympia, WA. Publication No. PSAT:07-01.

Puget Sound Partnership. 2010. 2009 state of the sound. A report on ecosystem status and a performance management system to tract action agenda implementation.

Puget Sound Partnership. 2016. The 2016 Action Agenda for Puget Sound. Olympia, Washington. 220 pages. www.psp.wa.gov

PSSTRT. (Puget Sound Steelhead Technical Recovery Team). 2013a. Identifying historical populations of steelhead within the Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. Final Review Draft. 149 p.Puget Sound Action Team. 2007. State of the Sound 2007. Puget Sound Action Team, Olympia, WA. Publication No. PSAT:07-01.

PSSTRT. 2013b. Viability Criteria for Puget Sound Steelhead. Final Review Draft. 373 p.

Ralston, S. 1998. The status of federally managed rockfish on the U.S. West Coast. Pages 6-16 in M Yoklavich, editor. Marine harvest refugia for West Coast rockfish: a workshop. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-255.

Ralston, S. 2002. West Coast Groundfish Harvest Policy. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 22:249-250, 2002.

Reddy, M. L., J. S. Reif, A. Bachand, and S. H. Ridgway. 2001. Opportunities for using Navy marine mammals to explore associations between organochlorine contaminants and unfavorable effects on reproduction. Sci. Total Environ. 274:171–182.

Redhorse, D. 2014. Acting Northwest Regional Director, Bureau of Indian Affairs. March 25, 2014. Letter to Will Stelle (Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region) amending request for consultation dated March 7, 2014. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Reijnders, P. J. 1986. Reproductive failure in common seals feeding on fish from polluted coastal waters. Nature 324:456–457.

Rice, C. A. 2007. Evaluating the biological condition of Puget Sound. Ph.D. University of Washington, School of Aquatic and Fisheries Sciences. 270 pp.

Richardson, W.J., C.R. Greene, Jr., C.I. Malme, and D.H. Thomson. 1995. Marine mammals and noise. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Ries, J.B., A.L. Cohen, D.C. McCorkle. 2009. Marine calcifiers exhibit mixed responses to CO2-induced ocean acidification. Geology, 37, 12:1131-1134.

Robeck, T.R., K. Willis, M. R. Scarpuzzi, and J.K. O'Brien. 2015. Comparisons of life-history parameters between free-ranging and captive killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) populations for application toward species management. J. Mammal. 96(5): 1055-1070.

Romano, T.A., M. J. Keogh, C. Kelly, P. Feng, L. Berk, C. E. Schlundt, D. A. Carder, and J. J. Finneran. 2003. Anthropogenic sound and marine mammal health: measures of the nervous and immune systems before and after intense sound exposure. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 61:1124-1134.

Rose, G. 2018. Gordon Rose, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission, personal communication with Susan Bishop, National Marine Fisheries Service regarding fishing schedule and associated harvest rate information for Skokomish Chinook and coho fisheries. April 4, 2018.

Rosenberger, A.L.J., M. MacDuffee, A.G.J. Rosenberger, and P.S. Ross. 2017. Oil spills and marine mammals in British Columbia, Canada: Development and application of a risk-based conceptual framework. Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol. 73:131-153.

Rosenthal, R.J., L. Haldorson, L.J. Field, V. Moran-O'Connell, M.G. LaRiviere, J. Underwood, and M.C. Murphy. 1982. Inshore and shallow offshore bottomfish resources in the southeastern Gulf of Alaska. Alaska Coastal Research and University of Alaska, Juneau. 166 p.

Ross, P.S., G.M. Ellis, M.G. Ikonomou, L.G. Barrett-Lennard, and R.F. Addison. 2000. High PCB concentrations in free-ranging Pacific killer whales, Orcinus orca: effects of age, sex, and dietary preference. Marine Pollution Bulletin 40(6):504-515.

Ruckelshaus, M. H., K. Currens, R. Fuerstenberg, W. Graeber, K. Rawson, N. Sands, and J. Scott. 2002. Ruckelshaus, M. H., K. Currens, R. Fuerstenberg, W. Graeber, K. Rawson, N. Sands, and J. Scott, to Usha Varanasi. Planning ranges and preliminary guidelines for the delisting and recovery of the Puget Sound Chinook salmon Evolutionarily Significant Unit. 19. April 30, 2002 Available at: http://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/trt/puget_docs/trtpopesu.pdf.

Ruckelshaus, M. H., K.P. Currens, W.H. Graeber, R.R. Fuerstenberg, K. Rawson, N.J. Sands, and J. B. Scott. 2006. Independent populations of Chinook salmon in Puget Sound. U. S. D. Commerce. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-78, 125 p.

Saez, L.E., D. Lawson, M.L. DeAngelis, E. Petras, S. Wilkin, and C. Fahy. 2013. Understanding the co-occurrence of large whales and commercial fixed gear fisheries off the west coast of the United States. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Regional Office. Technical Memorandum. NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWR-044.

Sanga, R. 2015. US EPA Region 10 Sediment Cleanup Summary. Presentation at Sediment Management Annual Review Meeting (SMARM) 2015, May 6, Seattle, WA. http://www.nws.usace.army.mil/Portals/27/docs/civilworks/dredging/SMARM%202015/Sanga-EPA%20SMARM%20presentation-15.pdf

Sauk-Suiattle Indian Tribe, Swinomish Indian Tribal Community, Upper Skagit Indian Tribe, Skagit River System Cooperative, and WDFW. 2016. Skagit River Steelhead Fishery Resource Management Plan. November 18, 2016.

Sawchuk, J. H. 2012. Angling for insight: Examining the recreational community's knowledge, perceptions, practices, and preferences to inform rockfish recovery planning in Puget Sound, Washington. Master's Thesis, University of Washington, School of Marine and Environmental Affairs.

Sawchuk J.H., A.H. Beaudreau, D. Tonnes, and D. Fluharty. 2015. Using stakeholder engagement to inform endangered species management and improve conservation. Marine Policy 54:98-107.

Schaefer, K.M. 1996. Spawn time, frequency, and batch fecundity of yellowfin tuna (Thunnus albacares) near Clipperton Attoll in the eastern Pacific Ocean. Fisheries Bulletin 94: 98-112.

Schwacke, L. H., E. O. Voit, L. J. Hansen, R. S. Wells, G. B. Mitchum, A. A. Hohn, and P. A. Fair. 2002. Probabilistic risk assessment of reproductive effects of polychlorinated biphenyls on bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) from the southeast United States coast. Environ. Toxicol. Chem. 21:2752–2764.

Schwacke, L.H., C.R. Smith, F.I. Townsend, R.S. Wells, L.B. Hart, B.C. Balmer, T.K. Collier, S. De Guise, M.M. Fry, L.J. Guillette, Jr., S.V. Lamb, S.M. Lane, W.E. McFee, N.J. Place, M.C. Tumlin, G.M. Ylitalo, E.S. Zolman, and T.K. Rowles. 2013. Health of common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in Barataria Bay, Louisiana, following the *Deepwater Horizon* Oil spill. Environ. Sci. Technol. 48:93-

103.

Schaffler. J., Harvest Biologist, Muckleshoot Tribal Natural Resources. Personal communication to Susan Bishop (NMFS), regarding results of spawner/recruit analysis for White River spring Chinook. February 24, 2017.

Schroeder, D. and M. Love. 2002. Recreational fishing and marine fish populations in California. CalCOFI Rep. Volume 43. Pages 182-190.

Scientific and Statistical Committee. 2000. Pacific Fisheries Management Council Scientific and Statistical Committee statement on default maximum sustainable yield fishing rate within the harvest rate policy. Supplemental SSC Report D. 13. (2). June 2000.

Seely, E. 2015. Final 2015 Soundwatch Program Annual Contract Report. Soundwatch Public Otreach/Boater Education Project. Contract No. RA-133F-12-CQ-0057.

Seely, E. 2016. Final 2016 Soundwatch Program Annual Contract Report. Sounwatch Public Outreach/Boater Education Project. Contract No. RA-133F-12-CQ-0057.

Senigaglia V., F. Christiansen, L. Bejder, D. Gendron, D. Lundquist, D. P. Noren, A. Schaffar, J. C. Smith, R. Williams, E. Martinez, K. Stockin, D. Lusseau. 2016. Meta-analyses of whale-watching impact studies: comparisons of cetacean responses to disturbance. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 542:251–263.

Shaffer, J. A. Doty, D.C., Buckley, R.M., and J. E. West. 1995. Crustacean community composition and trophic use of the drift vegetation habitat by juvenile splitnose rockfish *Sebastes diploproa.* Marine Ecology Progress Series. Vol. 123, pp 13-21. 1995.

Shaw, B. 2015. Acting Northwest Regional Director, Bureau of Indian Affairs. May 1, 2015. Letter to Will Stelle (Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region) requesting consultation on revisions to the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan for 2015-2016 Puget Sound fishing season. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Shaw, B. 2016. Acting Northwest Regional Director, Bureau of Indian Affairs. June 3, 2016. Letter to Will Stelle (Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region) requesting consultation on for Puget Sound salmon fisheries based on co-manager agreed revisions to the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan for 2016-2017 Chinook fisheries in Puget Sound. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Shaw, B. 2018. Acting Northwest Regional Director, Bureau of Indian Affairs. April 16, 2018. Letter to Barry Thom (Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region) requesting consultation on the 2018-2019 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Siegle M.R., E.B. Taylor, K.M. Miller, R.E. Withler, and K.L. Yamanaka. 2013. Subtle population genetic structure in yelloweye rockfish (Sebastes ruberrimus) is consistent with a major oceanographic division in British Columbia, Canada. PLoS ONE, 8.

Skokomish Indian Tribe (SIT) and WDFW. 2010. Recovery Plan for Skokomish River Chinook Salmon. August 2010. 208 p. + appendices.

Skokomish Indian Tribe and Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (SIT and WDFW). 2017. Recovery Plan for Skokomish River Chinook Salmon 2017 Update, June 2017.

Smith, C.J., and B. Sele. 1995. Stock assessment. In C.J. Smith and P. Wampler (eds.), Dungeness River Chinook Salmon Rebuilding Project Progress Report 1992-1993, p. 4-14. (Available from WDFW, 600 Capitol Way N., Olympia, WA 98501-1091.)

Smith, J.L., A. Bailey, J. White and J. Udelhoven. 2012. Marine protected areas in Washington – a gap analysis to characterize protection. The Nature Conservancy. Seattle, WA. 28 pp.

Sogard, S. M., S. A. Berkeley, and R. Fisher. 2008. Maternal effects in rockfishes *Sebastes* spp.: a comparison among species. Marine Ecology Progress Series 360: 227-236.

Speaks. 2014. Northwest Regional Director, Bureau of Indian Affairs. March 7, 2014. Letter to Will Stelle (Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region) requesting consultation. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Speaks, S. 2017. Northwest Regional Director, Bureau of Indian Affairs. April 21, 2017. Letter to Barry Thom (Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region) requesting consultation on for Puget Sound salmon fisheries based on co-manager agreed revisions to the 2010 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Management Plan for 2017-2018 Chinook fisheries in Puget Sound. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Spence, B.C., G.A. Lomnicky, R.M. Hughes, and R.P. Novitzki. 1996. An ecosystem approach to salmonid conservation. TR-4501-96-6057. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp., Corvallis, Oregon. Available online at: http://www.nwr.noaa.gov/1habcon/habweb/habguide/ManTech/front.htm.

SSPS (Shared Strategy of Puget Sound). 2005. Snohomish Watershed Profile. WRIA 17. In Volume II of the Shared Strategy for Puget Sound. Plan adopted by the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) January 19, 2007. Submitted by the Shared Strategy Development Committee. Shared Strategy for Puget Sound. Seattle, Washington. June 2005. 12 p.

SSPS. 2007. Puget Sound Salmon Recovery Plan. S. S. f. P. Sound. January, 2007. 2 Volumes.

Stanley, R.D., M. McAllister, and P. Starr. 2012. Updated stock assessment for bocaccio (*Sebastes paucispinis*) in British Columbia waters for 2012. DFO Canadian Scientific Advisory Secretariat Research Document 2012/109. 73 pages.

Studebaker, R.S., Cox, K.N., and T. J. Mulligan. 2009. Recent and historical spatial distributions of juvenile rockfish species in rocky intertidal tide pools, with emphasis on black rockfish. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 138:645-651, 2009.

Subramanian, A., S. Tanabe, R. Tatsukawa, S. Saito, and N. Miyazaki. 1987. Reduction in the testosterone levels by PCBs and DDE in Dall's porpoises of Northwestern North Pacific. Mar. Pollut. Bull. 18:643–646.

Supplemental Groundfish Management Team Report. 2014. Groundfish management team report on proposed discard mortality on for cowcod, canary rockfish, and yelloweye rockfish released using descending devices in the recreational fishery. Agenda Item D.3.b, March 2014.

Tagal, M., K. C. Massee, N. Ashton, R. Campbell, P. P1esha, and M. B. Rust. 2002. Larval development of yelloweye rockfish, *Sebastes ruberrimus*. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Northwest Fisheries Science Center.

Thom, B. 2017 Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region. March 3, 2017. Letter to Herb Pollard (Chair, Pacific Fisheries Management Council) providing guidance on ESA-listed species affected by Council fisheries dated March 3, 2017. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Thom, B. 2018. Letter from Barry Thom, NMFS West Coast Regional Administrator, to Phil Anderson, Chair, Pacific Fisheries Management Council, regarding guidance on management of the 2018 ocean salmon fishing season. March 6, 2018. 18 p.

Tolimieri, N. and P. S. Levin. 2005. The roles of fishing and climate in the population dynamics of bocaccio rockfish. Ecological Applications 15:458-468.

Tonnes, D., M. Bhuthimethee, J. Sawchuk, N. Tolimieri, K. Andrews, and K. Nichols. 2016. Yelloweye rockfish (Sebastes ruberrimus), canary rockfish (Sebastes pinniger), and bocaccio (Sebastes paucispinis) of the Puget Sound/Georgia Basin: 5-Year Review, Summary and Evaluation. National Marine Fisheries Service. 131 pages.

Tribble, V. 2017. Fish Program ESA Response, WDFW. Personal communication to Susan Bishop (NMFS), including as attachment the proposed study Monitoring Piscivorous Fish Populations in Lake Washington and in the Lake Washington Shipping Canal (April 10, 2017). April 11, 2017.

Trites, A.W. and C.P. Donnelly. 2003. The decline of Steller sea lions *Eumetopias jubatus* in Alaska: a review of the nutritional stress hypothesis. Mammal Rev. 33(1): 3-28.

Trites, AW and Rosen, DAS (eds). 2018. Availability of Prey for Southern Resident Killer Whales. Technical Workshop Proceedings. November 15–17, 2017. Marine Mammal Research Unit, Institute for the Oceans and Fisheries, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, B.C., 64 pages

Troutt, D. 2016a. Letter from David Troutt, Nisqually Natural Resources Director to Susan Bishop, Senior Fishery Biologist, NMFS, regarding proposed management approach for 2016. February 29, 2016.

Troutt, D. 2016b. Personnel communication from David Troutt. Nisqually Tribal Natural Resources Director, February 26, 2016. Meeting with Nisqually Tribal, WDFW and NOAA Fisheries staff and policy representatives, regarding the strategic approach to Nisqually management in 2016.

Turner, R. 2016a. Joint State/Tribal Hatchery and Genetic Management Plans Submitted by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, with the Jamestown S 'Klallam Tribe, Lummi Nation, Nooksack Tribe, Stillaguamish Tribe, and Tulalip Tribes for Dungeness River, Nooksack River, and Stillaguamish River Hatchery Early Winter Steelhead, Under Limit 6 of the Endangered Species Act 4(d) Rule (50 CFR 223.203(6)) (65 FR 42422, July 10, 2000) - DECISION MEMORANDUM. Memo from R. Turner, SFD Assistant Regional Administrator, NMFS WCR to William W. Stelle, Jr., Regional Administrator, NMFS WCR. April 15, 2016.

Turner, R. 2016b. Joint State/Tribal Hatchery and Genetic Management Plans Submitted by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife with the Tulalip Tribes for Snohomish River Basin Hatchery Early Winter Steelhead, Under Limit 6 of the Endangered Species Act 4(d) Rule (50 CFR 223.203(6)) (65 FR 42422, July 10, 2000)- DECISION MEMORANDUM. Memo from R. Turner, SFD Assistant Regional Administrator, NMFS WCR to William W. Stelle, Jr., Regional Administrator, NMFS WCR. April 15, 2016

Turner, R. 2016c. Letter from Robert Turner, ARA to David Troutt, Nisqually Tribal Natural Resources Director, regarding proposed Nisqually management approach for 2016. March 7, 2016.

Tynan, T. 2010. Personnel communication from Tim Tynan, Fishery Biologist, NMFS, Lacey, WA. April 13, 2010, with Susan Bishop, Fishery Biologist, NMFS NWR, regarding status of new Chinook supplementation programs in the South Forks of the Nooksack and Stillaguamish Rivers.

Unsworth, J. and M. Grayum. 2016. Directors, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. June 14, 2015. Letter to Bob Turner (Regional Assistant Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division) describing harvest management objectives for Puget Sound Chinook for the 2016-2017 season. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Unsworth, J. and J. Parker. 2017. Directors, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. April 21, 2017. Letter to Barry Thom (Regional Administrator, NMFS West Coast Region, Sustainable Fisheries Division) including a summary and enclosures that are the basis for the 2017-2018 Puget Sound Chinook Harvest Plan for Puget Sound Chinook. On file with NMFS West Coast Region, Sand Point office.

Van Cleve, F.B., G. Bargmann, M. Culver, and the MPA Work Group. 2009. Marine Protected Areas in Washington: Recommendations of the Marine Protected Areas Work Group to the Washington State Legislature. Washington Department of Fish

Veirs, S., V. Veirs, and J. D. Wood. 2016. Ship noise extends to frequencies used for echolocation by endangered killer whales. PeerJ. DOI 10.7717/peerj.1657

Veldhoen, N., M.G. Ikonomou, C. Dubetz, N. MacPherson, T. Sampson, B.C. Kelly, and C.C. Helbing. 2010. Gene expression profiling and environmental contaminant assessment of migrating Pacific salmon in the Fraser River watershed of British Columbia. Aquatic Toxicology 97(3):212-225.

Vélez-Espino, L.A., J.K.B. Ford, H.A. Araujo, G. Ellis, C.K. Parken, and K.C. Balcomb. 2014. Comparative demography and viability of northeastern Pacific resident killer whale populations at risk. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 3084: v + 58 p.

Venn-Watson S, Colegrove KM, Litz J, Kinsel M, Terio K, Saliki J, et al. 2015. Adrenal Gland and Lung Lesions in Gulf of Mexico Common Bottlenose Dolphins (Tursiops truncatus) Found Dead following the Deepwater Horizon Oil Spill. PLoS ONE 10(5): e0126538. doi:10.1371/journal. pone.0126538

Viberg, H., A. Fredriksson, and P. Eriksson. 2003. Neonatal exposure to polybrominated diphenyl ether (PBDE-153) disrupts spontaneous behaviour, impairs learning and memory, and decreases hippocampal cholinergic receptors in adult mice. Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol. 192:95–106.

Viberg, H., N. Johansson, A. Fredriksson, J. Eriksson, G. Marsh, and P. Eriksson. 2006. Neonatal exposure to higher brominated diphenyl ethers, hepta-, octa-, or nonabromodiphenyl ether, impairs spontaneous behavior and learning and memory functions of adult mice. Toxicol. Sci. 92:211–218.

Wade, P.R., T. J. Quinn II, J. Barlow, C. S. Baker, A. M. Burdin, J. Calambokidis, P. J. Clapham, E. Falcone, J. K. B. Ford, C. M. Gabriele, R. Leduc, D. K. Mattila, L. Rojas-Bracho, J. Straley, B. L. Taylor, J. Urbán R., D. Weller, B. H. Witteveen, and M. Yamaguchi. 2016. Estimates of abundance and migratory destination for North Pacific humpback whales in both summer feeding areas and winter mating and calving areas. Paper SC/66b/IA21 submitted to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission, June 2016, Bled, Slovenia.

Wallace, J.R. 2007. Update to the status of yelloweye rockfish (*Sebastes ruberrimus*) off the U.S. West Coast in 2007, Pacific Fishery Management Council, Portland, OR.

Walters, C., and A.M. Parma. 1996. Fixed exploitation rate strategies for coping with effects of climate change. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences. 53:148-158. Scientific and Statistical Committee, 2000. Statement on default maximum sustainable yield fishing rate within the harvest rate policy. Supplemental SSC Report D. 13.(2) June 2000.

Ward, L., P. Crain, B. Freymond, M. McHenry, D. Morrill, G. Pess, R. Peters, J.A. Shaffer, B. Winter, and B. Wunderlich. 2008. Elwha River Fish Restoration Plan–Developed pursuant to the Elwha River Ecosystem and Fisheries Restoration Act, Public Law 102-495. U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-90, 168 p.

Ward, E., Holmes, E.E., and Balcomb, K.C. 2009. Quantifying the effects of prey abundance on killer whale reproduction. Journal of Applied Ecology **46**: 632–640. doi:

10.1111/j.1365-2664.2009.01647.x.

Ward, E.J., M.J. Ford, R.G. Kope, J.K.B. Ford, L.A. Velez-Espino, C.K. Parken, L.W. LaVoy, M.B. Hanson, and K.C. Balcomb. 2013. Estimating the impacts of Chinook salmon abundance and prey removal by ocean fishing on Southern Resident killer whale population dynamics. U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-123.

Warheit, K. I. 2014. Measuring reproductive interaction between hatchery-origin and wild steelhead (Oncorhynchus mykiss) from northern Puget Sound populations potentially affected by segregated hatchery programs. Unpublished final report. October 10, 2014. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington. 92p.

Washington, P. 1977. Recreationally important marine fishes of Puget Sound, Washington. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Northwest and Alaska Fisheries Center.

Washington, P. M., R. Gowan, and D. H. Ito. 1978. A biological report on eight species of rockfish (*Sebastes* spp.) from Puget Sound, Washington. Northwest and Alaska Fisheries Center Processed Report, National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle.

Wasser, S. K., J. I. Lundin, K. Ayers, E. Seely, D. Giles, K. Balcomb, J. Hempelmann, K. Parsons, R. Booth. 2017. Population growth is limited by nutritional impacts on pregnancy success in endangered Southern Resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). PLoS ONE 12(6): e0179824. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal. pone.0179824.

WDOE (Washington Department of Ecology). 2017. Spill Prevention Preparedness and Response Program 2017-2019. Publication 17-08-018. 29 pp.

WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 2010. Draft narratives of Puget Sound Fisheries. Unpublished document, on file with the National Marine Fisheries Service, Sandpoint Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

WDFW. 2011. Unpublished catch data 2003 – 2009. On file with the National Marine Fisheries Service, Sandpoint Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

WDFW. 2012. Application for an Individual Incidental Take Permit under the Endangered Species Act of 1973, March 2012. Prepared for the National Marine Fisheries Service by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

WDFW. 2014a. North/Middle Fork Nooksack Native Chinook Hatchery Restoration Program. Draft Hatchery and Genetic Management Plan (HGMP). September 23, 2014. 46 p.

WDFW. 2014b. Personal communication, via email to Dan Tonnes (NMFS) from Robert Pacunski (WDFW), regarding WDFW estimates of catch from recreational anglers in Puget Sound for 2003 – 2011, January 7, 2014.

WDFW. 2015. Personal communication, via email to Dan Tonnes (NMFS) from Eric Kraig (WDFW), regarding WDFW estimates of catch from recreational anglers in Puget

Sound. March 17, 2015. Unpublished rockfish bycatch data, on file with the National Marine Fisheries Service, Sandpoint Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115.

WDFW. 2016. Personal communication, via email to Dan Tonnes (NMFS) from Eric Kraig (WDFW), regarding WDFW estimates of catch from recreational anglers in Puget Sound. March 8, 2016.

WDFW. 2017. Personal communication, via email to Dan Tonnes (NMFS) from Eric Kraig (WDFW), regarding WDFW estimates of catch from recreational anglers in Puget Sound. March 8, 2017.

WDFW. 2017b. Draft conservation plan for reducing the impact of selected fisheries on ESA listed species in Puget Sound, with an emphasis on bocaccio and yelloweye rockfish. Prepared for the National Marine Fisheries Service by the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

WDFW. 2018. Personal communication, via email to Dan Tonnes (NMFS) from Eric Kraig (WDFW), regarding WDFW estimates of catch from recreational anglers in Puget Sound. April 9, 2018.

WDFW and PSIT. 2016. 2014/2015 Puget Sound Steelhead Harvest Management Plan Report. Chris James (Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission) and Robert Leland (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (eds). March 2016. 10p.

WDFW and PSIT. 2017. 2015/2016 Puget Sound Steelhead Harvest Management Plan Report. Chris James (Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission) and Robert Leland (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (eds). March 2017. 10p

WDFW and PSIT. 2018. 2016/2017 Puget Sound Steelhead Harvest Management Plan Report. Chris James (Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission) and Robert Leland (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (eds). February 2018. 10p.

WDFW and PSTIT (WDFW and the Puget Sound Treaty Indian Tribes). 2005. Comprehensive Management Plan for Puget Sound Chinook-Harvest Management Component Annual Postseason Report. 2004-2005 fishing season. June 28, 2005. 115 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2006. 2005-2006 Chinook Management Report. W. Beattie (NWIFC) and B. Sanford (WDFW)(*eds*). March 2006. 114 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2007. 2006-2007 Chinook Management Report. W. Beattie (NWIFC) and B. Sanford (WDFW)(*eds*). March 2007. 56 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2008. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2007-2008 fishing season. August 2008. 52 p.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2009. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2008-2009 fishing season. May 11, 2009. 59 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2011. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2010-2011 fishing season. June 3, 2011. 61 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2012. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2011-2012 fishing season. Revised October 3, 2012. 63 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2013. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2012-2013 fishing season. June 11, 2013. 65 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2014. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2013-2014 fishing season. June 2014. 78 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2015. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2014-2015 fishing season. December 2015. 75 p. + Appendices.

WDFW and PSTIT. 2016. Puget Sound Chinook Comprehensive Harvest Management Plan annual report covering the 2015-2016 fishing season. November 2016. 76 p. + Appendices.

Weis, L.J. 2004. The effects of San Juan County, Washington, marine protected areas on larval rockfish production. A thesis submitted in partial fulfillment ofthe requirements for the degree ofMaster of Science, University of Washington.

West, J., S. O'Neill, G. Lippert, and S. Quinnell. 2001. Toxic contaminants in marine and anadromous fishes from Puget Sound, Washington: Results of the Puget Sound Ambient Monitoring Program Fish Component, 1989-1999. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, WA. http://dfw.wa.gov/publications/01026/wdfw01026.pdf.

Wiles, G. J. 2004. Washington State Status Report for the Killer Whale. March 2004. WDFW, Olympia, Washington. 120p.

Williams, R., D. Lusseau and P. S. Hammonda. 2006. Estimating relative energetic costs of human disturbance to killer whales (*Orcinus orca*). Biol. Cons. 133:301–311.

Williams G. D., Levin P. S., and Palsson W. A. 2010a. Rockfish in Puget Sound: An ecological history of exploitation. Marine Policy, 34, 1010–1020. doi:10.1016/j.marpol.2010.02.008

Williams, R., E. Ashe, and D. Lusseau. 2010b. Killer whale activity budgets under no-boat, kayak-only and power-boat conditions. Contract via Herrera Consulting, Seattle, Washington. 29 pp.

Williams, R., C. W. Clark, D. Ponirakis, and E. Ashe. 2014. Acoustic Quality of Critical Habitats for Three Threatened Whale Populations. Anim. Conserv. 17:174–185.

Wood, H. L., J. I. Spicer, and S. Widdicombe. 2008. Ocean acidification may increase calcification rates, but at cost. Proc. R. Soc. B 275, pages 1767-1773.

Yamanaka, K.L., and A.R. Kronlund. 1997. Inshore rockfish stock assessment for the west coast of Canada in 1996 and recommended yields for 1997. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 2175.

Yamanaka K.L., and L.C. Lacko. 2001. Inshore Rockfish (Seb. ruberrimus, S. malinger, S. cauinus, S. melanops, S. nigrocinctus, and S. nebulosus). Stock assessment for the west coast of Canada and recommendation for management. SSC 2000.

Yamanaka, K. L. and G. Logan. 2010. Developing British Columbia's Inshore Rockfish Conservation Strategy. Marine and Coastal Fisheries: Dynamics, Management and Ecosystem Science. Volume 2, pages 28–46.

Ylitalo, G. M., J. E. Stein, T. Horn, L. L. Johnson, K. L. Tilbury, A. J. Hall, T. Rowles, D. Greig, L. J. Lowenstine, and F. M. Gulland. 2005. The role of organochlorines in cancer-associated mortality in California sea lions (*Zalophus californianus*). Mar. Pollut. Bull. 50:30–39.

Zamon, J.E., T.J. Guy, K. Balcomb, and D. Ellifrit. 2007. Winter observations of Southern Resident killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) near the Columbia River Plume during the 2005 Spring Chinook Salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) spawning migration. Northwest Naturalist 88:193-198.

Ziccardi, M.H., S.M.Wilkin, T.K. Rowles, and S. Johnson. 2015. Pinniped and Cetacean Oil Spill Response Guidelines. U.S. Dept. of Commer., NOAA. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-OPR-52, 138p.

# Appendix A

## Viable Risk Assessment Procedure

## Viability Risk Assessment Procedure

NMFS analyzes the effects of harvest actions on populations using quantitative analyses where possible and more qualitative considerations where necessary. The Viable Risk Assessment Procedure (VRAP) is an example of a quantitative risk assessment method that was developed by NMFS and applied primarily for analyzing harvest impacts on Puget Sound and Lower Columbia River tule Chinook. VRAP provides estimates of population-specific exploitation rates (called Rebuilding Exploitation Rates or RERs) that are designed to be consistent with ESA-related survival and recovery requirements. Proposed fisheries are then evaluated, in part, by comparing the RERs to rates that can be anticipated as a result of the proposed harvest plan. Where impacts of the proposed plan are less than or equal to the RERs, NMFS considers the harvest plan to present a low risk to that population (the context and basis of NMFS' conclusions related to RERs is discussed in more detail below). The results of this comparison, together with more qualitative considerations for populations where RERs cannot be calculated, are then used in making the jeopardy determination for the ESU as a whole. A brief summary of VRAP and how it is used to estimate an RER is provided below. For a more detailed explanation see NMFS (2000) and NMFS (2004).

The Viable Risk Assessment Procedure:

- quantifies the risk to survival and recovery of individual populations compared with a zero harvest scenario;
- accounts for total fishing mortality throughout the migratory range of the ESU;
- explicitly incorporates management, data, and environmental uncertainty; and
- isolates the effect of harvest from mortality that occurs in the habitat and hatchery sectors.

The result of applying the VRAP to an individual population is an RER which is the highest allowable ("ceiling") exploitation rate that satisfies specified risk criteria related to survival and recovery. Calculation of RERs depend on the selection of two abundance-related reference points (referred to as critical and rebuilding escapement thresholds (CET and RET[34]4)), and two risk criteria that define the probability that a population will fall below the CET and exceed the RET. Considerations for selecting the risk criteria and thresholds are discussed briefly here and in more detail in NMFS 2000.

The selection of risk criteria for analytical purposes is essentially a policy decision. For jeopardy determinations, the standard is to not "…reduce appreciably the likelihood of survival and recovery …" (50 CFR 402.2). In this context, NMFS used guidance from earlier biological opinions to guide the selection of risk criteria for VRAP. NMFS' 1995 biological opinion on the operation of the Columbia River hydropower system (NMFS 1995) considered the biological requirements for Snake River spring/summer Chinook to be met if there was a high likelihood, relative to the historic likelihood, that a majority of populations were above lower threshold levels[35]5 and a moderate to high likelihood that a majority of populations would achieve their

---

[34]4 Also referred to in previous opinions as the Upper Escapement Threshold.

[35]5 The Biological Requirements Work Group defined these as levels below which uncertainties about processes or

recovery levels in a specified amount of time. High likelihood was considered to be a 70% or greater probability, and a moderate-to-high likelihood was considered to be a 50% or greater probability (NMFS 1995). The Cumulative Risk Initiative (CRI) has used a standard of 5% probability of absolute extinction in evaluating the risks of management actions to Columbia River ESUs. The different standards of risk, i.e., 50% vs. 5%, were based primarily on the thresholds that the standard was measured against. The CRI threshold is one of absolute extinction, i.e., 1 spawning adult in a brood cycle. The Biological Requirements Work Group (BRWG 1994) threshold is based on a point of potential population destabilization, i.e., 150-300 adult spawners, but well above what would be considered extinction. In fact, several of the populations considered by the BRWG had fallen below their thresholds at some point and rebounded, or persisted at lower levels. Since the consequences to a species of the CRI threshold are much greater than the consequences of the BRWG thresholds, the CRI standard of risk should be much higher (5%). Scientists commonly define high likelihood to be $\geq$95%. For example, tests of significance typically set the acceptable probability of making a Type I error at 5%. The basis of the VRAP critical threshold is more similar to the BRWG lower threshold in that it represents a point of potential population destabilization. However, given the uncertainties in the data, especially when projected over a long period of time, and the different risk to populations represented by the two thresholds, we chose a conservative approach both for falling below the critical threshold, i.e., 5%, and exceeding the recovery threshold, i.e., 80%.

The risk criteria were chosen within the context of the jeopardy standard. They measure the effect of the proposed actions against the baseline condition, and require that the proposed actions not result in a significant negative effect on the status of the species over the conditions that already exist. We determined that the risk criteria consistent with the jeopardy standard would be that: (1) the percentage of escapements below the critical threshold differs no more than 5% from that under baseline conditions; *and* (2) the viable threshold must be met 80% of the time, *or* the percentage of escapements less than the viable threshold differs no more than 10% from that under baseline conditions. Said another way, these criteria seek to identify an exploitation rate that will not appreciably increase the number of times a population will fall below the critical threshold and also not appreciably reduce the prospects of achieving recovery. For example, if under baseline conditions, the population never fell below the critical threshold, escapements must meet or exceed the critical threshold 95% of the time under the proposed harvest regime.

As described above, VRAP uses critical escapement and rebuilding escapement thresholds as benchmarks for calculating the RERs. Both thresholds represent natural-origin spawners. The CET represents a boundary below which uncertainties about population dynamics increase substantially. In cases where sufficient stock-specific information is available, we can use the population dynamics relationship to define this point. Otherwise, we use alternative population-specific data, or general literature-based guidance. NMFS has provided some guidance on the range of critical thresholds in its document, *Viable Salmonid Populations* (McElhaney et al.

---

population enumerations are likely to become significant, and below which qualitative changes in processes are likely to occur (BRWG 1994). They accounted for genetic risk, and some sources of demographic and environmental risk.

2000). The VSP guidance suggests that effective population sizes of less than 500 to 5,000 per generation, or 125 to 1,250 per annual escapement, are at increased risk. For the Lower Columbia River tule analyses, we generally used CETs corresponding to the Willamette/Lower Columbia River TRT's quasi-extinction thresholds (QET): 50/year for four years for 'small' populations, 150/year for four years for medium populations, and 250/year for four years for large populations (McElhany et al. 2000).

The RET may represent a higher abundance level that would generally indicate recovery or a point beyond which ESA type protections are no longer required. The RET could also be an estimate of the spawners needed to achieve maximum sustainable yield or for maximum recruits, or some other designation. It is important to recognize, though, that the RET is not an escapement goal but rather a threshold level that is expected to be exceeded most of the time ($\geq$ 80%). It should also be noted that, should the productivity and/or capacity conditions for the population improve, the RET should be changed to reflect the change in conditions.
There is often some confusion about the relationship between rebuilding escapement thresholds used in the VRAP analysis, and abundance related recovery goals. The RET are generally significantly less than recovery goals that are specified in recovery plans. VRAP seeks to analyze a population in its existing habitat given current conditions. As the productivity and capacity of the habitat improves, the VRAP analysis will be adjusted to reflect those changes. Thus the RET serves as a step in the progression to recovery, which will occur as the contributions from recovery action across all sectors are realized.

There are two phases to the VRAP process for determining an RER for a population. The first, or model fitting phase, involves using data from the target population itself, or a representative indicator population, to fit a spawner-recruit relationship representing the performance of the population over the time period analyzed. Population performance is modeled as:

$$R = f(S, \mathbf{e}),$$

> where S is the number of fish spawning in a single return year, R is the number of adult equivalent recruits,[36]6 and **e** is a vector of environmental, density-independent indicators of annual survival.

Several data sets are necessary for this: a time series of natural spawning escapement, a time series of total recruitment by cohort, and time series for the environmental correlates of survival. In addition, one must assume a functional form for $f$, the spawner-recruit relationship. Given the data, one can numerically estimate the parameters of the assumed spawner-recruit relationship to complete the model fitting phase.

The data are fitted using three different models for the spawner recruit relationship: the Ricker (Ricker 1975), Beverton-Holt (Ricker 1975), and Hockey stick (Barrowman and Meyers 2000).

[36]6 Equivalently, this could be termed "potential spawners" because it represents the number of fish that would return to spawn absent harvest-related mortality.

The simple forms of these models can be augmented by the inclusion of environmental variables correlated with brood year survival. The VRAP is therefore flexible in that it facilitates comparison of results depending on assumptions between production functions and any of a wide range of possible environmental co-variates. Equations for the three models are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| $R = (aSe^{-bS})(M^c e^{dF})$ | [Ricker] |
| $R = (S/[bS + a])(M^c e^{dF})$ | [Beverton-Holt] |
| $R = (\min[aS, b])(M^c e^{dF})$ | [hockey stick] |

In the above, M is the index of marine survival and F is the freshwater correlate.

The second, or projection phase, of the analysis involves using the fitted model in a Monte Carlo simulation to project the probability distribution of the near-term future performance of the population assuming that current conditions of productivity continue. Besides the fitted values of the parameters of the spawner-recruit relationships, one needs estimates of the probability distributions of the variables driving the population dynamics, including the process error (including first order autocorrelation) of the spawner-recruit relationship itself and each of the environmental correlates.[37]7 Also, since fishing-related mortality is modeled in the projection phase, one must estimate the distribution of the deviation of actual fishing-related mortality from the intended ceiling. This is termed "management error" and its distribution, as well as the others, is estimated from available recent data.

For each of a stepped series of exploitation rates the population is repeatedly projected for 25 years. From the simulation results we computed the fraction of years in all runs where the escapement is less than the critical escapement threshold and the fraction of runs for which the final year's escapement is greater than the rebuilding escapement threshold. Exploitation rates for which the first fraction is less than 5% and the second fraction is greater than 80% (or 10% from baseline) satisfies the identified risk criteria are thus used to define the population specific ceiling exploitation rates for harvest management.

Finally, the population-specific RERs must be made compatible with the exploitation rates generated from the FRAM model for use in fishery management planning. The VRAP and the FRAM model were developed for different purposes and are therefore based on different data sources and use different approaches to estimate exploitation rates. The VRAP uses long-term population intensive data to derive a RER for a single population. The FRAM uses fishery intensive data to estimate the effects of southern U.S. West Coast fishing regimes across the management units (populations or groups of populations) present in those fisheries. Because the

[37]7 Actual environmental conditions may vary from the modeled 25-year projections due to such things as climate change, restoration actions, development, etc. However, it is difficult to anticipate exactly how conditions might be different for a specific population which is the focus of the VRAP analysis. Incorporation of the observed uncertainty in each of the key parameters in the VRAP analysis, the use of high probabilities related to abundance thresholds and periodic revision of the RERs on a shorter time frame (e.g., 5-10 years) in the event that conditions have changes serve to mitigate this concern.

FRAM model is used for preseason planning and to manage fisheries, it is necessary to ensure that the RERs derived from VRAP are consistent with the management unit exploitation rates that we estimated by the FRAM model. To make them compatible, the RERs derived from VRAP are converted to FRAM-based RERs using linear or log-transform regressions between the exploitation rate estimates from the population specific data and post season exploitation rate estimates derived from FRAM.

## Literature Cited

Barrowman, N. J. and R. A. Meyers. 2000. Still more spawner-recruit curves: the hockey stick and its generalizations. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57: 665-676.

Battin, J., M.W. Wiley, M. H. Ruckelshaus, R. N. Palmer, E. Korb, K.K. Bartz, and H. Imaki. 2007. Projected impacts of climate change on salmon habitat restoration. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 104(16): 6720-6725.

Biological Requirements Workgroup (BRWG). 1994. Analytical methods for determining requirements of listed Snake River salmon relative to survival and recovery. Progress Report, October 13, 1994. 129 pp. + Appendices. Available from: National Marine Fisheries Service, Environmental and Technical Services Division, 525 N. E. Oregon St., Portland, Oregon 97232-2734.

Bishop, Susan. 2008. Pessimistic scenario for PST analysis based on marine survival evaluation. Memorandum describing use of marine survival rates in the development of a low abundance scenario to analyze the 2008 Pacific Salmon Treaty agreement. Communication to Larrie LaVoy, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, from Susan Bishop, National Marine Fisheries Service. July 1.

CTC (Chinook Technical Committee). 2009. 2009 Annual Report of the Exploitation Rate Analysis and Model Calibration (TC Chinook (09) – 3). Pacific Salmon Commission. Vancouver, British Columbia. December 22.

LaVoy, Larrie. 2008. Puget Sound AEQ Chinook abundances from FRAM validation runs to represent "pessimistic" scenario in PST evaluation. Memorandum describing use of patterns in FRAM abundance in the development of a low abundance scenario to analyze the 2008 Pacific Salmon Treaty agreement. Communication to Susan Bishop, National Marine Fisheries Service, from Larrie LaVoy. June 23.

McElhany, P., M. H. Ruckelshaus, M. J. Ford, and T. C. Wainwright. 2000. Viable salmonid populations and the recovery of evolutionarily significant units. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, NOAA Tech. Memo., NMFS-NWFSC-42, 156 pp.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 1995. Endangered Species Act - Section 7 Consultation Biological Opinion for reinitiation of consultation of 1994-1998 operation of the Federal Columbia River Power System and juvenile transportation program in 1995 and future years. NMFS, Portland, Oregon.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2000. A risk assessment procedure for evaluating harvest mortality of Pacific salmonids. National Marine Fisheries Service, Sustainable Fisheries Division, Northwest Region. May 30. 33pp.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2004. Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7 Consultation and Magnuson-Stevens Act essential fish habitat consultation titled Effects of Programs Administered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs supporting tribal salmon fisheries management in Puget Sound and Puget Sound salmon fishing activities authorized by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Services during the 2004 fishing season. 87 pp.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2005. Evaluation of and Recommended Determination on a Resource Management Plan (RMP), Pursuant to the Salmon and Steelhead 4(d) Rule. Puget Sound Comprehensive Chinook Management Plan: Harvest Management Component. National Marine Fisheries Service, Sustainable Fisheries Division, Northwest Region. January 27. 99 pp.

NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2008. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Consultation Biological Opinion and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Consultation on the Approval of Revised Regimes under the Pacific Salmon Treaty and the Deferral of Management to Alaska of Certain Fisheries Included in those Regimes. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest Region. December 22. 373 pp.

PFMC (Pacific Fishery Management Council) and MEW (Model Evaluation Workgroup). 2008. Chinook Fishery Regulation Assessment Model (FRAM) Base Data Development v. 3.0 (Auxiliary Report to FRAM Technical Documentation). October. Available online: http://www.pcouncil.org/salmon/salfram/Chinook_FRAM_Base_Data_Final_1008.pdf

Ricker, W.E. 1975. Computation and interpretation of biological statistics of fish populations. Bulletin of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 191:280-296.

Ford, M. J., editor. 2011. Status Review Update for Pacific salmon and steelhead listed under the Endangered Species Act: Pacific Northwest. U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-113. 281p.

Hard, J. J., J. M. Myers, M. J. Ford, R. G. Cope, G. R. Pess, R. S. Waples, G. A. Winans, B. A. Berejikian, F. W. Waknitz, P. B. Adams, P. A. Bisson, D. E. Campton, and R. R. Reisenbichler. 2007. Status review of Puget Sound steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). U.S. Dept. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-81, 137p.

HSRG. 2009. Columbia River hatchery reform system wide report. 278p.

MIT. 2016. Muckleshoot Indian Tribe 2016 Warmwater Test Fishery Proposal. Muckleshoot Indian Tribe. Auburn, Washington. March 26, 2016. 2 p.

NWFSC. 2015. 2015 status review update for Pacific salmon and steelhead listed under the Endangered Species Act: Pacific Northwest. Northwest Fisheries Science Center.

National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle Washington. 357 p.

PSSTRT. 2013a. Puget Sound Steelhead Technical Recovery Team. 2013. Viability Criteria for Puget Sound Steelhead. Final Review Draft. N. F. S. Center. Seattle, Washington, 373 p.

PSSTRT. 2013b. Puget Sound Steelhead Technical Recovery Team. Identifying historical populations of steelhead within the Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. Final Review Draft. . N. F. S. Center. Seattle, Washington, 149 p.

Tabor, R. A., M. T. Celedonia, F. Meija, R. M. Piaskowski, D. L. Low, B. Footen, and L. Park. 2004. Predation of juvenile chinook salmon by predatory fishes in three areas of the Lake Washington Basin. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Western Washington Fish and Wildlife Office, Lacey, Washington.

Tabor, R. A., B. A. Footen, K. L. Fresh, M. T. Celedonia, F. Mejia, D. L. Low, and L. Park. 2007. Smallmouth bass and largemouth bass predation on juvenile Chinook salmon and other salmonids in the Lake Washington Basin. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 27:1174-1188.

Van Will, P., and B. Patton. 2015. Pieter Van Will (CDFO) and Bill Patton (NWIFC). Juan de Fuca Strait Chum Salmon Sampling program. Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission. Lacey, Washington. November 22, 2015.

Warren, R., and C. Bowhay. 2016. Letter from Ron Warren, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and Craig Bowhay, Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission, to Amilee Wilson, National Marine Fisheries Service, regarding co-manager incidental steelhead impacts in 2016-17 Puget Sound fisheries. June 15, 2016. 2 p.

WDFW. 2016. Efficiency of Removing Smallmouth Bass, Laregemouth Bass, and Northern Pikeminnow in the Lake Washington Shipping Canal. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. February 2016. 4 p. .

WDFW, and PSIT. 2016. 2014/2015 Puget Sound Steelhead Harvest Management Report. Chris James (Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission) and Robert Leland (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife) (eds). March 2016. 10 p.